

SWINTON'S SCHOOL
HISTORY OF THE
UNITED STATES



★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★
NEW YORK CINCINNATI CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

LIBRARY

BUREAU OF EDUCATION

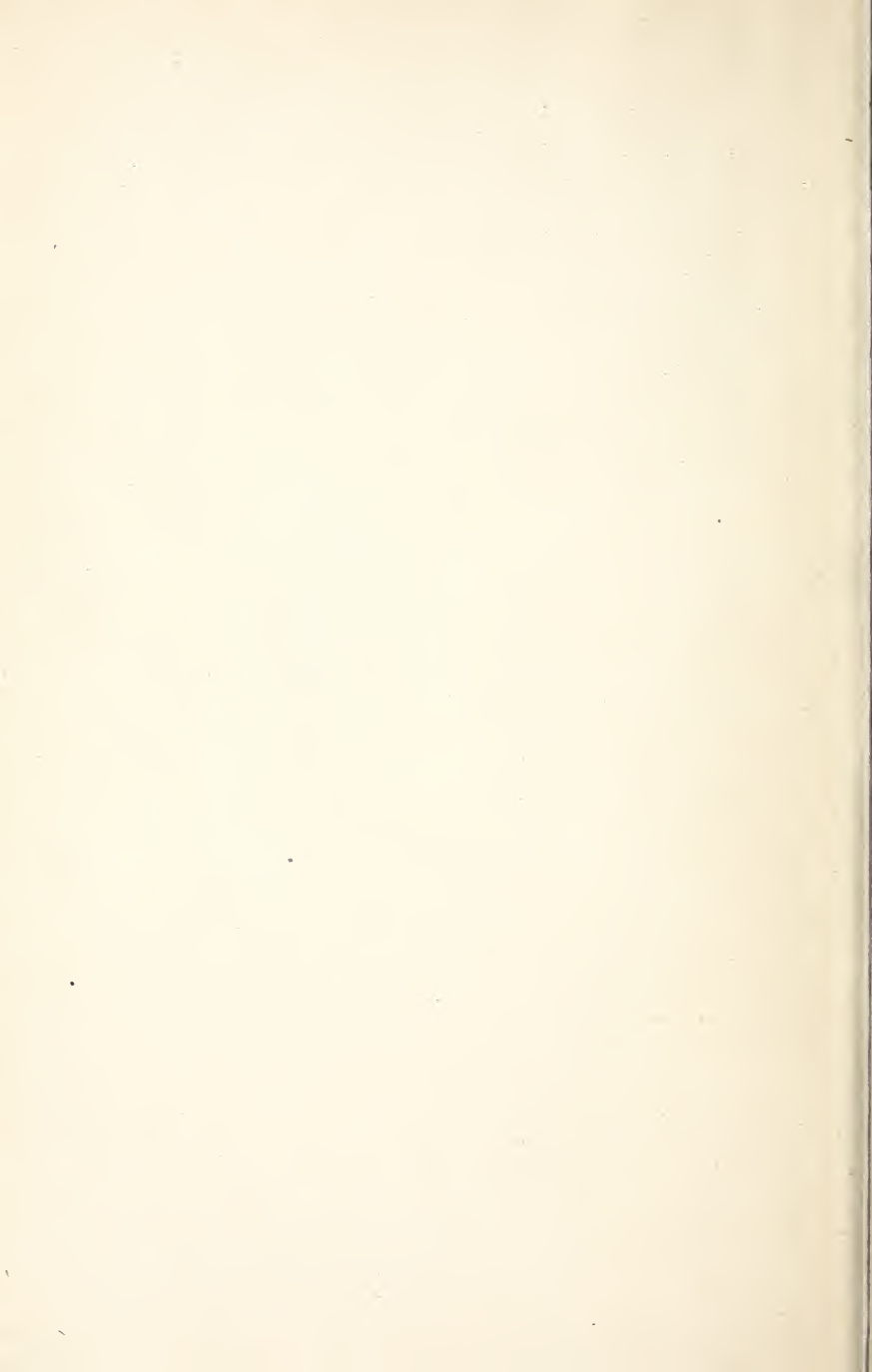


LT

E 178

.1
.599

1893





A

SCHOOL HISTORY

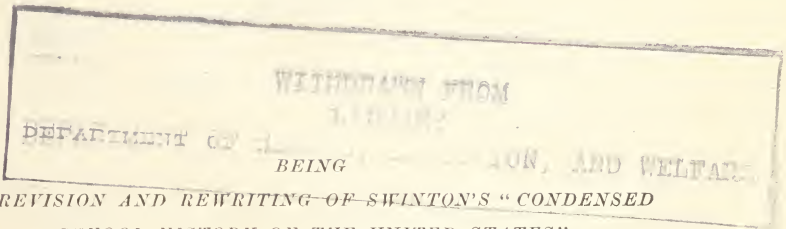
OF THE

UNITED STATES



BY WILLIAM SWINTON

AUTHOR OF "HISTORY OF THE ARMY OF THE POTOMAC," "OUTLINES OF THE WORLD'S HISTORY," "FIRST LESSONS IN OUR COUNTRY'S HISTORY"



2646342

NEW YORK ·· CINCINNATI ·· CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

LT
E178
.1
.599
1893

COPYRIGHT, 1871,
BY WILLIAM SWINTON

COPYRIGHT, 1893,
BY AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Transferred from the Library
of Congress under Sec. 59,
Copyright Act of March 4, 1909.

Printed at
The Eclectic Press
Cincinnati, U. S. A.

AUTHOR'S PREFACE

THIS History of the United States has been prepared in order to meet the views of that large and increasing class of teachers who are aiming at definite results in this study. It has grown out of a need deeply felt by the author during many years' occupation in class-room recitation.

This manual is designed as a working book, and hence discards both the high-flown narrative style and the meaningless details of the majority of school histories. The text will derive its interest from the lucid presentation of the subject-matter, — in itself deeply interesting.

The technical points of novelty and superiority which the author thinks he may fairly claim as the justification of this manual will be evident to all practical teachers. Some of these points are : —

1. A plan of clear and concise paragraphing, by which the gist of each paragraph is readily apprehended by the pupil.

2. A total absence of involved, inverted, or in anywise rhetorical sentences, and the use, in lieu thereof, of the direct, concise, and recitable construction.

3. A new method of Topical Reviews. On this point the author refers the teacher to an examination of the Reviews themselves. The difference between the present and the old method of reviewing — which does no more than print a string of review questions, referring to preceding pages for the piecemeal answers — must be obvious. Judicious teachers

know that pupils, in order to have a really available knowledge of the facts of history, require that these facts should be grouped and reiterated and turned over in a variety of ways. To accomplish this end, thus imparting a comprehensive knowledge of events and the connections of events, is the purpose of the method of reviewing adopted in this manual.

4. The separation of the history of the Northwestern, Southwestern, and Pacific States from its entanglement in the history of the Administrations. The history of these great states thus receives a degree of attention that is more nearly adequate than heretofore.

5. The separation of the leading facts of American Progress from their entanglement in the history of the Administrations, and their presentation in a section by themselves.

WILLIAM SWINTON.

PUBLISHERS' NOTE

THIS book has for twenty years received the approval of the Teaching Profession in all sections of our country, and has had a class-room use as widespread as it was well deserved. It seems every way fit, in view of the recent and lamented death of Professor William Swinton, to offer to the public, in a new and more worthy dress, his well-known School History.

For this department of literary labor, Professor Swinton was endowed with high and peculiar gifts. His view was comprehensive, and his temper, judicial; he was tireless and

profound in historical research; and, with a fine sense of perspective, he knew how to throw non-essentials into the background of his picture. With the period of the Civil War, a time so big with incidents and issues, he had all the familiarity of a personal onlooker and eager student.

The work of revision and readjustment of this manual has been conducted under the supervision of our Editorial Department. The closest scrutiny of comparative criticism could discover in all the text but few defects.

The revisers have thought well to add an introductory chapter on Prehistoric America, and a chapter giving some account of the settlement and growth of the Three Colonial Centers, — Boston, New York, and Philadelphia. These, however, are narrative in style, and are intended to be read for information rather than studied as set lessons. Notes have been supplied in many places where it seemed that the interest or value of fact or scene might be increased by some side light. Most of the maps are new, and the illustrations have been drawn and engraved expressly for this work.

April, 1893.

LIST OF MAPS



	PAGE
Ancient Geography of the United States	12
The World as known in the 15th Century	27
Copy of Cabot's Map	33
De Soto's Route	39
The Carolina Coast	45
Early Grants in America	47
Map to illustrate Discoveries	50
John Smith's Map of New England	62
Boston and Vicinity	67
Narragansett Fort and Swamp	69
Narragansett Bay	77
Settlements in New England	82
Siege of Louisburg	119
The War in Pennsylvania	123
Lake Champlain and Vicinity	125
Quebec in 1759	128
Boston in Early Times	133
New Amsterdam	140
First Map of Philadelphia	144
Battle of Bunker Hill	160
Retreat up the Hudson	166
Operations in New Jersey	167
Operations in Pennsylvania	171
Burgoyne's Route	173
Siege of Yorktown	188
Vicinity of Detroit	210
Operations in the West	212
Operations near Niagara	215
Battle of Plattsburg	215
Operations about Washington	216
Battle of New Orleans	217
Map to illustrate the Mexican War	230
Civil War— Eastern Operations	250
Civil War — Western Operations	256

COLORED MAPS

	FOLLOWING PAGE
Colonies at the Time of the French and Indian War	120
Colonies at the Time of the Revolution	158
States in Secession during the Civil War	246
Acquisition and Distribution of Territory	306

CONTENTS



	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	11
PERIODS OF AMERICAN HISTORY	24
PERIOD I.—DISCOVERIES: 1492-1607	
COLUMBUS, CABOT, AND AMERICUS	25
SPANISH DISCOVERIES	35
FRENCH DISCOVERIES	41
ENGLISH AND DUTCH DISCOVERIES	43
TOPICAL REVIEW	49
PERIOD II.—HISTORY OF THE COLONIES: 1607-1775	
VIRGINIA	53
NEW ENGLAND	62
Massachusetts	62
Connecticut	71
Rhode Island	76
New Hampshire	79
Maine and Vermont	81
NEW YORK	83
NEW JERSEY	89
PENNSYLVANIA	92
DELAWARE	96
MARYLAND	97
NORTH CAROLINA	100
SOUTH CAROLINA	103
GEORGIA	106
TOPICAL REVIEW	108

	PAGE
THE FRENCH WARS	113
King William's War	115
Queen Anne's War	117
French Possessions in the West	118
King George's War	119
French and Indian War	120
TOPICAL REVIEW	129
THE THREE COLONIAL CENTERS	131
Boston	131
New York	137
Philadelphia	144

PERIOD III.—THE REVOLUTION: 1765-1789

THE REVOLUTION	148
Causes of the Revolution	148
Campaign of 1775	158
Campaigns of 1776	163
Double Campaign of 1777	169
Campaigns of 1778-1780	175
Campaign in the Carolinas	181
The Final Campaign	185
TOPICAL REVIEW	191

PERIOD IV.—THE CONSTITUTIONAL PERIOD: 1789

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION	197
JOHN ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION	200
JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION	202
MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION	207
War of 1812	208
MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION	219
JOHN QUINCY ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION	221
JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION	222
VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION	225

	PAGE
HARRISON AND TYLER'S ADMINISTRATION	226
POLK'S ADMINISTRATION	228
The Mexican War	229
TAYLOR AND FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATION	234
PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION	235
BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION	237
TOPICAL REVIEW	238
THE WAR OF SECESSION — LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION	240
Causes of the War	240
Lincoln's Inauguration	246
Campaigns of 1861	249
Campaigns of 1862	255
Campaigns of 1863	267
Campaigns of 1864	273
The Final Campaign	280
TOPICAL REVIEW	283
JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION	288
GRANT'S ADMINISTRATION	292
HAYES'S ADMINISTRATION	295
GARFIELD AND ARTHUR'S ADMINISTRATION	297
CLEVELAND'S FIRST ADMINISTRATION	299
HARRISON'S ADMINISTRATION	302
CLEVELAND'S SECOND ADMINISTRATION	304
THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY AND GULF STATES	306
Ohio	308
Indiana	310
Illinois	311
Michigan	312
Iowa	313
Wisconsin	314
Minnesota	314
Kansas	315
Nebraska	316

	PAGE
THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY AND GULF STATES (<i>continued</i>)	
South Dakota and North Dakota	317
Kentucky	319
Tennessee	321
Louisiana	321
Mississippi	322
Alabama	323
Missouri	324
Arkansas	325
Texas	326
Florida	327
TOPICAL REVIEW	328
THE PACIFIC STATES	330
California	331
Oregon	334
Nevada	336
Colorado	337
Washington	338
Montana	338
Idaho	339
Wyoming	340
TOPICAL REVIEW	340
A CENTURY OF PROGRESS	342
CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES	351
DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE	367
AREAS, SETTLEMENT, AND ADMISSION OF STATES	372

INTRODUCTION



To be read :

TURN over to page 306 of this book, and there you will find a map of the country we live in. You have seen other such maps in your geographies, or on the wall of the school-room, or, better still, on the globes which represent in miniature the vast revolving ball which we call the Earth.

Our country, the **United States of America**, is, as you know, the living-place of many millions of people such as you meet in the street and see about you in this class-room.

Now, three hundred years ago hardly any white men dwelt here, and **four hundred years ago**, not one. Yet this country of ours was then, and had for thousands of years been, just the same country that it is to-day. Here were the same mountains, plateaus, and lowlands; the same rivers, lakes, and shores.

If you were to take from the map the boundary lines and the names that are printed on it, there would be left an accurate sketch of the land that our European-forefathers discovered and settled a few centuries ago. The country is the same; the inhabitants are not the same. Great plains and river-basins that were once a wilderness are now densely peopled by the descendants of these hardy first-comers. Before the steady westward march of our higher race the scanty population of **savages** has been pressed backward and ever further back to the lands that are still unsettled.

A change something like this is going on in our own day in another quarter of the world. Not many years ago, a great part of Africa was unknown to civilized men — a blank upon the map. But missionaries and explorers have since then traversed and mapped the equatorial wilderness, and now the railway follows its river courses, and the steamboat stirs the waters of African lakes.

Many of you who read these pages will live to see this other great region, hitherto the habitat of wild beasts and wild men, transformed into a busy commonwealth not unlike our own.



ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY OF OUR COUNTRY

The natural geography of Africa will not be changed, but the landscape will be a little different. Forests must disappear from the lowlands, cities will spring up along the great rivers, and villages will everywhere dot the plains.

And so it has been with America. If we could look down, as with the eye of a bird, and see our country as it was before Americus was born, and presently with another glance survey the same scene as it is to-day, we should then understand, as

no description will enable us to do, what great things have happened in the interval.

In a thousand valleys, once thickly wooded, the pioneer's axe has let in the sunlight on fields of waving grain. River and lake that had for ages been the still mirrors of the sky are now troubled highways of travel and trade. The mountain stream is held back at every leap to turn the miller's wheel. The smoke curling upward from the wood-fire of the savage is replaced by the clouding vapors of the factory chimney. The outlines of the two pictures are the same; they are only filled in differently.

Who were the people that lived here before the Europeans came? How did they look? What were their customs, manners, and modes of life?

The first human inhabitants of the Western Hemisphere, so far as we know, were all members of the **Indian race**. The white discoverers of America found these people in great numbers, and possessed of considerable civilization, in the countries that lie to the south of us. They were also very numerous in the islands of the West Indian archipelago; but in what is now the United States they were few in number, and for the most part, mere savages.

In **appearance** these natives were of a swarthy, brown complexion, with high cheek-bones, black eyes, and straight black hair. They had the same features and the same general look as their descendants have in our own day. Some of you have seen Indians in traveling shows, and if you live in the Far West, the sight of them may be a familiar one.

In comparison with the white settlers the Indians were somewhat inferior in stature and in strength, but their powers of endurance were very great.

Their **dress** was made from skins which they cured and

softened by a long process of kneading and smoking them. On their feet they wore shoes of deerskin, which they called moccasins. They used no head covering either in winter or in summer. The women wore their hair long. The men were beardless.

The Indian's **house** was a cone-shaped tent, or "wigwam." It was rudely built of saplings stuck in the ground in a circle and bound together at the top. This framework was covered with hides, or bark, or rough woven mats, and the whole gave some poor shelter from the elements. In the larger villages, where neighborly help came into play, better dwellings were sometimes constructed of logs patched with clay, and having thick roofings of bark and hemlock boughs. Both wigwam and hut had openings above to let out the smoke from the wood-fire that was always smoldering on the floor of beaten earth.

The smaller wandering bands of Indians lived by **hunting and fishing**. The village tribes raised, in the open spaces, small crops of "Indian corn," besides beans and squashes and tobacco. From the corn and beans, when newly gathered, the women made succotash. We get both the name and the dish from the Indians. The dried corn was rubbed by hand, between two stones, into a coarse meal, and this was stored away against the winter's dearth. To keep from starving was the one great care of these savages. Tribe warred against tribe in never-ending disputes about their hunting-grounds. Hungry bands of warriors preyed upon weaker or less watchful neighbors.

The Indians had scarcely any of those **mechanical appliances** and material comforts which everywhere mark the growth of civilization. Their principal **weapons** were hatchets, and bows and arrows. The hatchet, or tomahawk, was of stone; the arrows were tipped with flint. They had tobacco pipes

made of clay, often beautifully carved. They knew how to string tiny shells together and to weave them in patterns like bead-work. This "**wampum**," as they named it, was used as a sort of money, and sometimes to keep record of important bargains and treaties. It was the Indian that invented the **snow-shoe**, a device which his civilized successors have not been able to improve upon. He had boats, sometimes thirty feet long, made by hollowing out great tree-trunks with fire. Others, smaller and light enough to be carried on the shoulder, were built of cedar strips and braces, bound together with thongs, and covered with birch bark. Both of these were driven through the water by paddles, the boatman standing, the better to do his work.

Equally rude were the Indian's other **utensils**. His fish-hook was of bone. Sometimes he fished with a coarse net woven of the fibers of hemp. He had woven baskets, too, for the storage of corn; and heavy woodenware and earthen vessels for the uses of his kitchen.

All of the drudgery of Indian life fell to the lot of the **women**. They wove the mats and baskets. They made the moccasins, the leggings, and all other apparel. They worked the wampum. They dressed and cooked the food. It was they that dug up the ground with shells and sharpened sticks, planted and reaped the corn, and ground it into meal. In the frequent and painful migrations from one hunting-ground to another, the squaw carried the household burdens. The Indian mother contrived for her babe a quaint receptacle, half box, half bag, made of wood and deerskin. This she could sling over her shoulders on the march, or lean it against a tree while busied with her tasks.

In **character** the American Indian was courageous, patient, grateful for benefits; crafty, cruel, remorseless in revenge.

He believed in a life after death, and endowed with thoughts and feelings like his own all nature around him — animals and trees, torrents, tempests, and the stars.

The people of this race now living in the United States are in great part civilized or half civilized. The more progressive



INDIAN SQUAW AND PAPOOSE

tribes are settled in Indian Territory. There they have farm-lands of their own, and in the towns are churches and schools, and even newspapers. The still savage tribes are camped on “reservations” in remoter parts of the country.

Far away to the southwest, in Arizona and New Mexico, the Indians were of another type. The Spaniards, who were the first invaders of that remote region, found the natives living together, sometimes by hundreds, sometimes by thousands, in communities which they called **pueblos**, the Spanish word for “villages.” This is hardly the name that we should give to their strange abodes. They had built for themselves out of sun-dried clay, or stone, or both, huge unshapely piles of houses, one above another, as seen in the picture on page 17.

Each story was enough smaller than the one below it to leave a platform on all sides, and this was reached from below by means of ladders. In times of danger the ladders were drawn up, and the whole structure became a citadel of defense. The *pueblo* was usually built upon an eminence; sometimes on ledges in the cliffs where it was quite inaccessible to hostile approach. Once numerous and thriving, these villages are now mostly tenantless and in ruins.

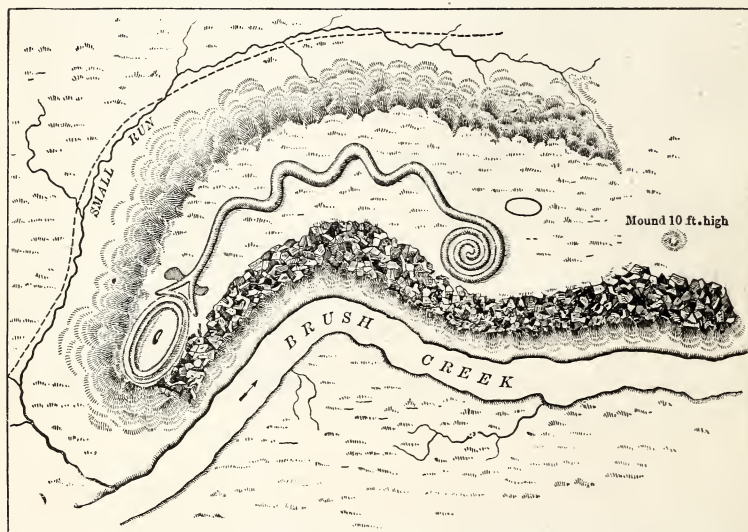


ANCIENT PUEBLO

Among the surviving descendants of this peculiar people are the **Zuñi Indians**, whose village stands on the river of the same name in New Mexico. They have for centuries practiced many of the simpler arts. They raise cotton, and weave it into cloth. They work in metals, making implements and ornaments of copper and bronze. Their vegetable gardens are

well tended, and some village Indians raise cattle, horses, and sheep. In striking contrast with other American natives, the members of those communities seem to have been peaceful in disposition and pursuits. They were probably nearer kinsmen to the Indian nations of ancient Mexico and Peru than to the savages of the North and East.

Such were the people who lived in this country when the white man first came. Of the history of their race in earlier times nothing is known. We do know, however, that in some parts of America, especially in the region of our Central States, an Indian people once lived who were much more civilized than the tribes that came after them.



SERPENT MOUND IN OHIO

Settlers of the Mississippi and Ohio valleys were not long in discovering that certain peculiar irregularities in the level of the ground—embankments, terraces, and **mounds**—are

something more than mere freaks of nature. It was observed that some of the mounds are exactly square, others circular, others eight-sided. It was found that in some places they are arranged in rows, and that the distance from mound to mound is precisely the same throughout the series. Here and there are elevations, raised only a few feet above the general level, but covering many acres, that are laid out to represent the shapes of animals. Deer-mounds, bear-mounds, and serpent-mounds may easily be traced.

It is plain to be seen that all these are some sort of earth-work due to the labors of man. By whom they were heaped up we do not know; for what purposes, we can only conjecture. It is usual to speak of the people that made them as the **Mound Builders**.

Many of their mounds have been dug into. Some have small inner chambers, in which are found tools, masks, and quaint figures, wrought of copper; pieces of ornamented pottery; odd trinkets carved from soapstone; large pearls blackened by fire; and pieces of bone on which outlines of animals are engraved. Very many human skulls have also been unearthed.

These mounds are especially numerous in and near Chillicothe, Newark, and Marietta in the state of Ohio. It is supposed that those of greatest size were erected for purposes of defense. On the tops of these artificial hillocks the charred wood of ancient



INDIAN POTTERY

fires is found. These were perhaps signal-fires, or fires of sacrifice, or it may be that the dwellings of this strange people crowned the mound-tops, and that these ashes mark the sites of household fires. All is surmise. The race itself has vanished, leaving almost as few memorials as have the millions that preceded them. For

— “all that tread
The globe are but a handful to the tribes
That slumber in its bosom.”

Four hundred years ago, as we have said, no white men lived here. This must be reckoned somewhat strange, for most of the nations of Europe dwelt in regions bordered and indented by the sea. From the earliest times the Mediterranean had been the nursery of seamen, and the merchant ships of Venice, Genoa, and Marseilles were counted by thousands. Many a harbor of the West sent out its little fleet to the deep-sea fisheries. The Danes and other Northmen had for centuries been famed and dreaded for their marauding voyages. All these Europeans were able to build ships that, though small by comparison with those of modern days, were yet thoroughly stanch and seaworthy.

It seems remarkable that to such men this great continent, lying but a few weeks' sail to the west, should have remained so long unknown. We should rather have expected that, either by accident or in the spirit of adventure, some fishing-vessel or some sea-rover would in time have reached these shores; and this is just what happened a little less than a thousand years ago.

You may have read in tales of the sea about the **Norsemen** (or Northmen, as we should call them) of early times in Europe. These people were the ancestors of the Danes, Swedes, and Norwegians of the present day. Dwelling as they did in sea-

girt lands, where Nature was cheerless and niggardly of gifts, the seafaring life must have worn for them an aspect peculiarly enticing.

Now if you will look at Iceland as it is shown upon a globe, or on a globular map, you will see that this island is not very far distant from the Scandinavian peninsula, and lies directly in the course of ships sailing westward from that land. And so it befell that ten centuries ago Iceland was colonized by the Northmen. Then by further quest Greenland also was discovered. You have learned in your geographies that Greenland and Iceland are to this day possessions of the Danes.

The descendants of these Northmen have long claimed, on the authority of ancient writings which have been preserved, that these hardy and restless navigators pushed still further on, and sailing to the south and west visited the shores of what is now the United States. Some writers of history have believed their account, others have refused to credit it, and still others have thought it doubtful. However, recent study of records and weighing of testimony, show that the voyages were made just as they are described in the Norse legends, or *sagas*, as they are styled.

One of these *sagas* says that in the year 1000 "King Olaf then sent Leif Ericsson to Greenland to proclaim Christianity. Leif sailed that summer to Greenland. On this same voyage he found Vinland." Another record reads: "From Greenland to the southward lies Helluland, then Markland; thence it is not far to Vinland."

Now these *sagas* were written two or three centuries after the voyages were made, and this is one of the reasons why some historians have questioned the truth of the story. But earlier documents have been examined which prove that the existence of the American mainland was well known in Green-

land and Iceland long before the *sagas* which touch upon this subject were penned. An Icelander named Ari, writing in the year 1110, says of a certain sea-captain, "Marsson was driven out of his course at sea to Whitemen's Land; it lies in the sea near *Vinland*."



NORSE VOYAGERS ATTACKED BY INDIANS

According to another legend, at one time a party of Northmen exploring the shores of *Vinland* encountered natives who attacked them and drove them to their galley. These natives were called by the Northmen *Skraelings* and were probably none other than the North American Indians.

The country that these mariners chanced upon and called **Vinland** was a sunny land where wild grapes grew in profusion. Varying conjectures have fixed upon Nova Scotia, or New England, and even upon Virginia, as the scene of these earliest visits of Europeans to our coast. Such conjectures, though interesting, have no more value than had the voyages themselves. The Norsemen planted no settlements here that might have influenced the course of history, nor had they any idea of the real significance of their discovery. Printing had not been invented, and in those days news, traveling slowly, soon lost itself in obscure tradition.

We are now to learn of those later comers, who founded prosperous colonies, and in time peopled our great country. We are apt to think of these men as strangers to us, — as far-away beings whose doings had little or no relation to our present life. But if we think a little about it, we shall see that they were members, as it were, of our own families. From them, and those who followed in their steps, many of us are descended. They were our grandparents only some ten or twelve removes back. The story of what they did, and of what has happened here since they came, is the History of the United States.

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES



PERIODS OF AMERICAN HISTORY

We are about to study the **history** of our country, the Republic of the United States.

We must learn about the people who first settled here, how they lived, and what hardships they endured. We shall learn of their relations with the Indians and their struggles among themselves, of the doings of their children and descendants, of their progress in the arts and sciences, of the union of the colonies and the achievement of their independence, of the acquisition of new territory and the formation of new states, of the struggle over slavery, of the growth of the constitution under which we are governed, and of all things else which have tended to develop in our country the conditions which we find to-day.

It will be convenient to consider the history as divided into four periods: —

I. **The Period of Discovery and Exploration**, extending from the discovery of America by Columbus, in 1492, to the establishment of the early English colonies, 1607–20.

II. **The Colonial Period**, from the date of the early colonial settlements to the breaking out of the American Revolution, 1775.

III. **The Revolutionary Period**, from the contest over the Stamp Act and the breaking out of the Revolution, through the seven years' war and the era of the Confederation to the organization of the government under the Federal Constitution, 1789.

IV. **The Constitutional Period**, from the organization of the government under the Constitution to the present time.

PERIOD I

DISCOVERIES, 1492-1607

COLUMBUS, CABOT, AND AMERICUS

1. On the 3d of August, 1492, three small vessels sailed out of the harbor of Palos,¹ a seaport town in Spain.



SETTING SAIL FROM PALOS

2. On the deck of one of them, named the *Santa Maria*,² stood a white-haired man, fifty-six years old.

This man was **Christopher Columbus**, sailing on that wonderful voyage which resulted in the discovery of the "New World"; that is, **America**.

3. Columbus had not the least idea when he sailed on this voyage that there was such a continent as America. He did not start with the thought of finding a New World. The discovery of America was an accident. The design with which he *did* sail was to find a passage by sea from Europe to Eastern Asia, called **India**.

¹ Pronounced *pä'lōs*.

² *mä rē'ä*.

4. Columbus wished to find a passage by sea to India because the traders of Italy, who carried on a great deal of commerce with India, were obliged to go from Europe by the Mediterranean, the Red Sea, and then overland, by caravans, which was a very troublesome and expensive way of carrying their goods. A cheaper and easier route was very much wanted.

5. It may be asked why they did not sail around Africa, and reach India in that way. The reason was because at that time no vessel had ever passed around the Cape of Good Hope; the shape of Africa was not then known; and people were not aware that it was possible to go from Europe to India by water.¹

6. The known world, at the time Columbus was born, four hundred and fifty years ago, is represented by the unshaded part of the sketch on the next page. If we compare it with the map of the world as we now know it, we shall see:—

1. That geography four hundred years ago knew nothing whatever of North and South America or of Australia.

2. That of Africa all that was known was a narrow strip along its northern border.

3. That Eastern Asia — then called India and Cathay — was practically unknown to Europeans.

7. Columbus, who was born in the seafaring city of Genoa, in Italy, and had been a sailor from boyhood, became convinced, when



DA GAMA

¹ Africa was first circumnavigated by Vasco da Gama, a Portuguese, in 1497-8. The route this voyager pursued is shown in the sketch on page 27. He found the long sought sea-route to India, but this

important discovery was not appreciated at that time, because it was believed that Columbus had found a shorter way to the same lands.

he was about forty years old, that the common notion that the earth was flat was false. He believed the earth was a globe, and that by sailing *westward* from Europe across the Atlantic, he would come round to Eastern Asia.¹



THE WORLD AS KNOWN BEFORE COLUMBUS

¹ Columbus was not the first man who believed the earth to be round; but he was the first to make practical use of the belief by boldly acting upon it. In common with other well-informed men of his day, Columbus knew that some of the ancients had declared their conviction that our earth is a great globe. One of these, Eratosthenes, a Greek, who lived two thousand years ago, had said, "If the extent of the Atlantic Ocean were not an obstacle, we might easily pass by sea from Iberia [Spain] to India, still keeping in the same parallel; but it is quite possible that in the temperate zone there may be *two or more habitable lands*." Columbus inherited—he did not originate—the idea that the earth is round; and America is simply one of the "habitable lands" of the Greek astronomer's happy conjecture.

He therefore tried for several years to persuade some of the commercial nations of Europe to fit out an expedition to see if he was right.

He applied to Italy and Portugal, but these governments rejected his plan as an idle dream.

8. At last, after long waiting, the government of Spain agreed to make him admiral of a small fleet which should try the adventurous voyage.¹ The sovereigns of Spain at this time were **Ferdinand** and **Isabella**.

What persuaded Queen Isabella to go to the expense of fitting out a fleet for Columbus was the idea that it would be a great thing for Spain to be mistress of the rich countries of Eastern Asia, and also that the discovery of these new realms might be the means of spreading the Christian faith there.



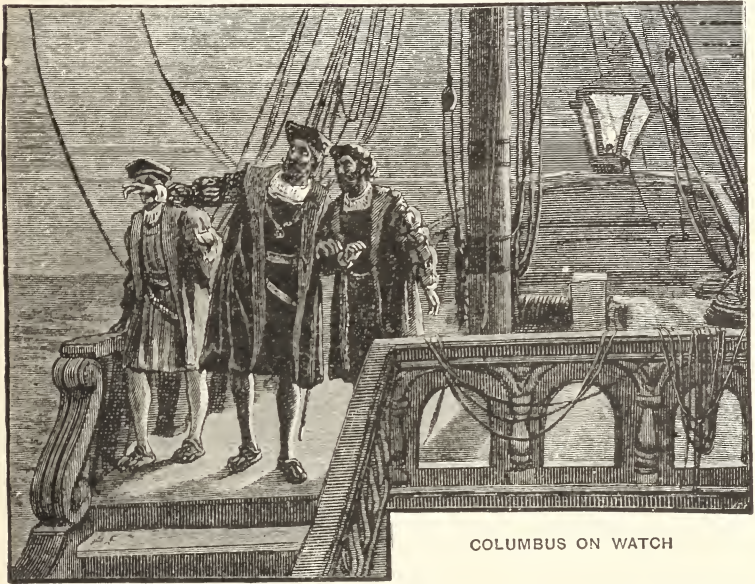
QUEEN ISABELLA

9. Columbus set sail from **Palos** on the 3d of August, and in a few days the little fleet reached one of the Canary Islands. No event of importance had happened except that the *Pinta*, one of his vessels,

¹ Among those who lent their influence to promote the design of Columbus was Cardinal Mendoza. To him Columbus was indebted for an interview with King Ferdinand. A conference of astronomers and other learned men, mostly ecclesiastics, was summoned to meet at Salamanca to hear and examine the reasons by which Columbus supported his project. At this meeting neither the eloquence nor the arguments of the future discoverer sufficed to prevent an adverse decision. The majority of his hearers reported to the Court that the scheme was vain and impracticable. Some recent writers think that these events took place as late as the year 1491. If so, it would seem that the conference of Salamanca could not have been altogether fruitless, for the plans of Columbus received the royal sanction in April of the very next year. (See frontispiece.)

unshipped her rudder. This obliged Columbus to delay some time at these islands.

On the 6th of September he set sail again, and struck boldly out to sea.



COLUMBUS ON WATCH

From this date the fleet, during thirty-five days, sailed westward over the trackless waste of unknown waters.¹

The sailors became desperate and had resolved to throw Columbus overboard; but fortunately at about two o'clock in the morning of October 12, land was seen.

10. Dawn revealed a sunny land of flowers and strange new beauty. The ships were in that island-dotted tropical sea

¹ A reward was offered to the first man who should descry land, and for weeks the changing horizon was sharply scanned by both officers and crew. The expectancy of all naturally quickened the eye, and none was more watchful than Columbus himself. By day and by night, either alone or with his lieutenants, the great commander paced to and fro on his patient, because confident, watch.

over which Spain was long to hold despotic sway. The land reached was one of the Bahama Islands. Columbus named it **San Salvador**.¹

11. Columbus was not aware that he had discovered a new continent; he supposed he had realized his hope of reaching the coast of Eastern India.

He therefore called the natives (who flocked down to the shore to see the wonderful strangers and their ships) "**Indians**," — a name afterwards extended to all the aboriginal inhabitants of the American continent.



LANDING OF COLUMBUS

12. The landing was made at sunrise on the 12th of October. Columbus took possession of the country in the name of the Spanish sovereigns.

From San Salvador, Columbus sailed southward, discovering a number of islands, — among them **Cuba** and **Haiti**.²

¹ This is Spanish for "Holy Saviour." The Indians living on it called their island *Guanahani*. Men who have carefully studied the question are now mostly of the opinion that the island Columbus first landed upon, and that the natives called *Guanahani*, is the one now known as Watling's Island.

² Pronounced *hā'tī*.



RETURN OF COLUMBUS

13. At the commencement of the year 1493, Columbus sailed back to Spain to give an account of his discoveries. He was received with great honors by the monarchs and the people.

14. After this, Columbus made *three* voyages across the Atlantic, and planted several Spanish colonies in the West India Islands.

15. His second voyage was undertaken a few months after his return from the discovery. In this voyage he returned to Haiti, explored **Jamaica** and other islands, founded the colony of **San Domingo** on the island of Haiti, and, after three years, returned to Spain.

16. The third voyage was made in 1498. It resulted in the discovery of the coast of **South America**, near the mouth of the Orinoco River. He supposed he had at last reached the *continent* of Asia.



17. The object of his fourth voyage, undertaken in 1502, was to push farther westward from Cuba and Jamaica than he had yet done. He believed he would find a **strait** in the region where we now know the Isthmus of Panama to be; and he thought that, by passing through that supposed strait, he would reach the real continent of Asia.

His course took him to the coast of **Central America**, which he explored for some distance; but as the voyage was attended by great hardships, he was forced to return to Spain. After this he made no more voyages. He never knew that he had discovered a new hemisphere.

18. The life of Columbus, almost from the time of his grand discovery, was marked by great misfortunes suffered by him and great wrongs inflicted on him. He died a few years after his last voyage.¹

Columbus was a man of commanding presence. His son Ferdinand describes him as above middle height, with a long countenance, an aquiline nose, and light gray eyes full of expression. His hair was naturally light, but it turned nearly white before he was thirty.

The character of Columbus was marked by a lofty and religious spirit, and a power to inspire others with much of his own zeal. As a discoverer he was the very greatest, and he was unwearying in the pursuit of his high aims. But as a colonizer and governor he failed, for so imperious was his self-confidence that he could brook no counsels that ran counter to his own opinions. He was by nature incapable of the tolerance and sympathy that underlie the success of all great managers of men.

¹ Columbus died on the 20th of May, 1506. If he was born in 1436, as is believed, he was seventy years old at the time of his death. His remains were carried to Seville, and thirty-five years afterward were removed to San Domingo. It was long believed that they were taken to Havana in the year 1795, but there are excellent reasons to think that the ashes of this great man still repose in the vault that received them three centuries and a half ago.

19. **Cabot and North America.**—The news of the discovery of a path over the Atlantic to what was supposed to be the Indies caused great excitement throughout Europe. Other expeditions were soon fitted out to sail to the strange new lands.



SEBASTIAN CABOT

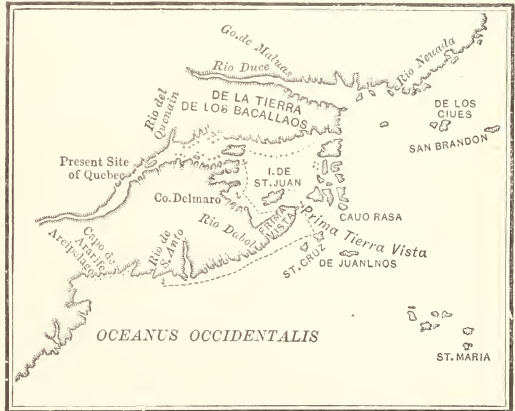
20. Two of these voyages are of particular importance in connection with the earliest history of America,—the voyage of **John and Sebastian Cabot**, and the voyage of **Americus Vespucius**.

21. John Cabot was a Venetian merchant living at Bristol, England. He had a son named Sebastian, who was very bold and enterprising.

When the Cabots heard of the voyage of Columbus, they became eager to gain fame and fortune in the same way.

Accordingly, in 1497,¹ they fitted out a ship named the *Matthew*. They sailed westward for a distance estimated by them

as about 700 leagues on a line far to the north of that taken



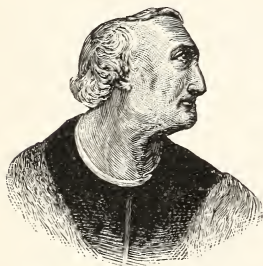
COPY OF CABOT'S MAP

¹ The date is sometimes given as 1494. This is due to an error of the engraver who misread the date on the original map, supposed to have been drawn by Sebastian Cabot, and engraved it as MCCCCXCIII instead of MCCCCXCVII. By comparing the copy of this map with the present maps

by Columbus, and they reached the North American continent at **Cape Breton**,¹ marked on Cabot's map as "*prima terra vista*," "*first land seen*."

22. Other voyages to the New World were made by Sebastian Cabot, but the records of these are so indefinite that little is known of them. But little resulted from them, except that they in general formed the basis of England's claims to extensive territory in America.

23. **Americus and America.** — The name "America" is derived from **Americus Vesputius**, who made a voyage to the coast of South America in 1499, and wrote a letter describing the country and calling it *Novus Mundus* (a new world).



AMERICUS VESPUTIUS

It is also believed by some that Americus served as astronomer of an earlier expedition commanded by Pinzon, which in 1497 and 1498 discovered Honduras and sailed along much of the southeastern coast of North America, perhaps as far north as Chesapeake Bay.

Americus was a warm friend of Columbus; he never claimed the honor of first discovery, and the name "America" was given, *not* by him, but by a German geographer.

This geographer published a book which contained some letters written by Vesputius, and gave an account of his discoveries.² The name America was at first applied only to a small portion of the coast of Brazil. It was not till nearly

of that region, it will be seen that the first land seen was really Cape Breton, and not the coast of Labrador, as was formerly supposed.

¹ Pronounced *brēt'n*.

² Americus Vesputius (in Italian, Amerigo Vespucci) was an Italian, a native of Florence. At the time of Columbus's first voyage he was settled at Seville, in Spain, where he was connected with a mercantile house that was employed in fitting out the fleet for the second voyage of Columbus, made in 1493.

fifty years after Columbus's great discovery that the name was given to the whole western continent.¹

24. Summary. — This chapter shows : —

1. That the **discovery** of the New World was made in 1492 by Columbus, to whom alone belongs the glory.

2. That it was called "**America**" from the name of Americus Vesputius, — without any intention of wronging Columbus.

3. That **North America** was first *seen* by the Cabots, who sailed under the flag of England, June 24, 1497, and probably about the same time by Pinzon and Americus, sailing under the flag of Spain.

SPANISH DISCOVERIES

25. The date of the discovery of America is 1492, but it was not till more than one hundred years after this that the English began to make those settlements on the coast of North America which afterwards became the United States.

26. In the mean time, various nations of Europe took part in exploring the eastern and western coasts of North America. The principal nations that made explorations during this period were **Spain, France, and England.**

We must learn what discoveries and settlements each of these nations made, and we will begin with Spain.

27. The Spaniards, immediately after Columbus's discovery, planted colonies in the principal islands of the West Indies. From these islands they sent expeditions to the mainland.

¹ The name of Columbus, appealing powerfully to the imaginations of men, could not, however, fail to impress itself on the world's geography, and so we find that our country as a whole is poetically styled Columbia. This is also the name of our federal district, of one of the Canadian provinces, of many counties, towns, and rivers, and of one of the republics of South America. The proper Italian form of the name is *Colombo*, which in Spanish becomes *Colon*. The form we use — *Columbus* — is merely the name as it would be in Latin.

28. In 1506, the eastern coast of Yucatan was discovered.

29. In 1510, the first colony on the continent was planted on the Isthmus of Darien.



BALBOA'S DISCOVERY OF THE PACIFIC

30. In 1513, Balboa crossed the Isthmus of Darien, and discovered the **Pacific Ocean**. Balboa was governor of a Spanish colony on the isthmus. He named the Pacific the "South Sea."

31. In 1512, **Ponce de Leon** sailed from Puerto Rico and discovered the coast of **Florida**. He called the country "Florida" because he discovered it on Easter Sunday, — called by the Spaniards *pascua florida*. De Leon was an old Spanish enthusiast, and was looking for a fabled fountain of immortal youth.

32. In 1517, **Cordova** sailed from Cuba and explored the north coast of **Yucatan**. The Spaniards found the people, not naked, but clothed in cotton garments. This fact made them think that there must be a rich country in the interior.



DE LEON

33. In 1518, an expedition in the same direction was sent by the Spanish governor of Cuba. This expedition was under **Grijalva**.¹ He explored the southern coast of **Mexico**, and verified the belief that there was a rich empire in the interior.

34. In 1519, **Cortes** sailed from Cuba with a fleet and six hundred soldiers, and landed on the Mexican coast at **Vera Cruz**. After a great deal of fighting, Cortes, in two years, got possession of the capital. The wealthy empire of Mexico with its rich gold mines then became a province of Spain. It so continued for three centuries, — from 1521 till 1821.



CORTES

35. In 1520, a Spanish planter of Haiti, named **De Ayllon**² reached the coast of **South Carolina**. He had sailed northward to kidnap the natives for slaves. Two years afterward he returned

to conquer the country; but the Indians defeated him.

¹ gre hül'vü.

² il yôn'.

36. In 1520, **Magellan**, who had left Spain the year before, sailed around the southern extremity of South America, and across the "South Sea," which he named the Pacific Ocean, because it was so free from storms.



MAGELLAN

Magellan himself died at the Philippine Islands, to which point he had some years before sailed eastward and back again to Spain. Thus he was the first to circumnavigate the globe.

37. In 1528, a Spaniard named **Narvaez**¹ sailed from Cuba with an army to conquer Florida. He expected to find another empire as

rich as Mexico or Peru. The expedition suffered terribly, was defeated by the Indians, and afterwards shipwrecked, only four men escaping.

38. In 1539, a bold Spanish cavalier named **De Soto** planned the conquest of Florida, — the name applied to all that the Spaniards knew of North America outside of Mexico.

This is the most interesting of all the Spanish explorations, because it led to the discovery of the **Mississippi River**. This discovery was made by De Soto in 1541.²



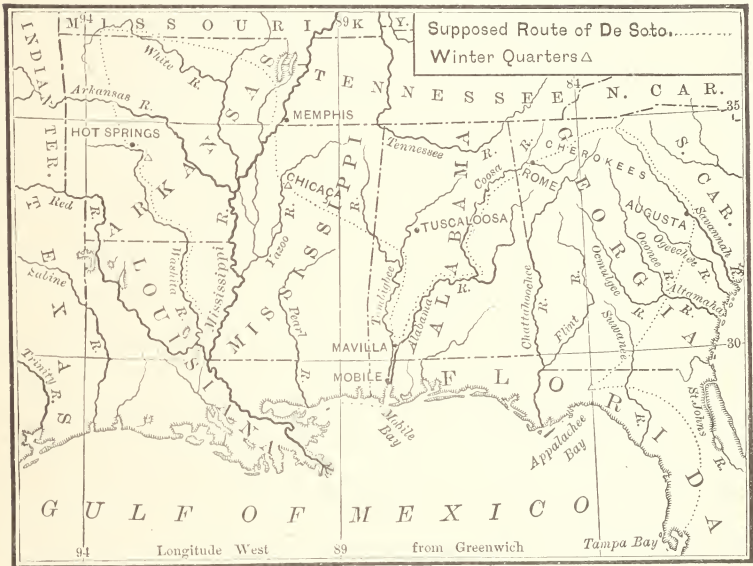
DE SOTO

¹ *nar vä'ëth.*

² The map given on the next page presents a view of De Soto's interesting voyages. He sailed from Cuba with a finely equipped force of six hundred men. In June, 1539, his fleet anchored in **Tampa Bay**, Florida. He sent two vessels to **Appalachee Bay**, while he led his army northward through Florida and then westward to near Appalachee Bay. It took five months to perform this journey. The Spaniards, after remaining five months in winter quarters, marched far to the northeast, passing through **Georgia** to the Ogechee River, then northwestward through Northern Georgia.

The expedition then traveled southwestward, down through the valleys of **Alabama**, till October, 1540, when they reached **Mavilla**. Here a bloody battle was fought with the Indians. De Soto then turned from the coast and marched

39. The conquest of Mexico by Cortes led to the exploration of the Pacific coast to the north of Mexico. Cortes fitted out several expeditions which explored northward into what is now called the Gulf of California, then called the "Gulf of Cortes."



MAP OF DE SOTO'S ROUTE

40. In 1540, the Spanish governor of Mexico sent out Coronado to explore the country to the northward. Coronado penetrated by land as far north as the region now known as New Mexico and Arizona.

northwestward. He spent the winter of 1540-41 on the Yazoo River, where he had another severe battle. In the spring of 1541, the Spaniards continued their march northward till they came to the Mississippi, April, 1541. They crossed it between the 33d and 34th parallels of latitude. From this point, they journeyed several hundred miles west of the Mississippi, and spent the winter of 1541-42 on the Wachita River. In the spring, they passed down that river to the Mississippi. Here De Soto died in May, 1542. His army had suffered much, and dwindled away. In December, 1542, the survivors built boats on the Mississippi, sailed down to the Gulf of Mexico, and finally reached Panuco in Mexico.

41. At the same time two vessels were sent under **Alarcon**.¹ They sailed up the Gulf of California and ascended the Colorado River beyond the Gila.²

42. In 1542, a Spanish navigator named **Cabrillo** sailed northward along the Pacific coast as far as the coast of the present state of Oregon. This was the first exploration of the coast of what is now the state of California.

It was during this early period that the term "California," or "the Californias," was applied as a general name to the region lying to the north of Mexico.³

43. In 1565, a Spanish soldier named **Menendez** was commissioned by the king of Spain to conquer Florida and destroy a colony of French Protestants who had lately settled in that country.

Immediately after landing, he founded **St. Augustine**, the oldest city in the United States.



MENENDEZ

44. In 1582, **Espejo**⁴ explored the region which Coronado had visited forty years before, and named it **New Mexico**. The same year he founded **Santa Fé**.

45. In 1769, the Spaniards made the first settlement in California, at **San Diego**.

46. **Summary.** — It is thus seen that by the close of the sixteenth century the Spaniards had made the following explorations and settlements: —

1. They had colonized the West India Islands.
2. They had colonized Central America.

¹ ä lār kōn'.

² hē'lä.

⁴ es pā'ho.

³ The name "California" originated in an old Crusader romance much read in the time of Cortes and Columbus. In this romance, *California* was the name of an island where "a great abundance of gold is found."

3. They had conquered Mexico.
4. They had explored a good part of the Southern States.
5. They had explored the Pacific coast.
6. Their settlements within the present limits of the United States were St. Augustine and Santa Fé.

FRENCH DISCOVERIES

47. The French were first drawn to the coast of North America by the fisheries on the banks of Newfoundland. French fishing-smacks went there as early as 1503.

48. In 1506, **Denys**, a Frenchman, explored the Gulf of St. Lawrence and the adjoining coast, and made a chart of the region.

49. In 1524, **Verrazano**, an Italian in the service of the king of France, reached the continent in the latitude of Wilmington, North Carolina. He then explored the whole country northward as far as Nova Scotia.



VERRAZANO

He named the country "New France."

50. In 1534, **Cartier**¹ explored and named the gulf and river of **St. Lawrence**. He claimed the country for the French king.

In 1535, while on a second voyage, Cartier sailed up the river St. Lawrence to where Montreal now stands.

In 1541, Cartier, with a band of colonists made a third voyage to the St. Lawrence. He built a fort near the present



CARTIER

¹ *kür tyā'*.

site of Quebec,¹ where his people passed the winter. They became dissatisfied, and returned to France the next spring.

51. In 1562, **Admiral Coligny**,² a distinguished leader of the French Protestants, or Huguenots, sent out a colony to **South Carolina**.



COLIGNY

They made a settlement near **Port Royal** entrance, but they suffered greatly, and next year went home.

52. In 1564, a second colony of Huguenots established themselves on the river **St. Johns**, in Florida. Next year they were joined by several hundred more colonists. Spain claimed the

country, and, in 1565, sent out **Menendez** (see § 43), who slew most of the settlers.

53. In 1567, a French nobleman named **De Gourgues** sailed from France with a force, and avenged the death of his countrymen by capturing the Spanish forts in Florida, and putting the garrisons to death.

54. In 1603, **De Monts**, an influential Huguenot courtier, obtained from the French king a grant of territory extending from near where Philadelphia now is to Cape Breton. This region was called **Acadia**.³

55. In 1604, De Monts, in company with a famous pioneer named **Champlain**, led a colony to his possessions. They, in 1605, made a settlement called **Port Royal** (afterwards Annapolis), on the western coast of what is now Nova Scotia, — then part of Acadia.

This was the first *permanent* French colony in America.

¹ French, *Quel bec!* — “What a promontory!”

² *ko lēn'ye*.

³ Acadia was afterwards confined to what are now New Brunswick, Cape Breton, and the neighboring islands.

56. In 1608, **Champlain** established a trading post at a place on the St. Lawrence River which he named **Quebec**. Champlain was the founder of the first permanent settlements in Canada. Canada was the name given to all the territory which was watered by the St. Lawrence.

57. In 1609, Champlain pushed into the interior and discovered Lakes Champlain and Huron. He afterwards led a party of Canadian Indians against the Iroquois Indians in northern New York, which region he was the first white man to enter.



CHAMPLAIN

58. **Summary.**—It is thus seen that by the early part of the seventeenth century the French had made good their claim to New France by colonizing Acadia and Canada.

ENGLISH AND DUTCH DISCOVERIES

59. England was the earliest rival of Spain in American exploration. Indeed, the North American continent was first discovered by the Cabots, sailing under the English flag, in 1497, or one year before Columbus discovered the South American continent.



DRAKE

60. For a long time after this, the English did very little in the way of American discovery. The first period of active English exploration in America was during the reign of Queen Elizabeth.¹

¹ Queen Elizabeth reigned from 1558 to 1603, a period of great maritime enterprise and activity in England.

61. In 1579, **Francis Drake**, the great English sea-captain, was making a cruise in the Pacific Ocean in search of Spanish merchantmen. He sailed north along the Pacific coast and explored the coast of California. This country he named "New Albion."



GILBERT

phrey Gilbert. He acted under the authority of Queen Elizabeth, from whom he obtained a patent¹ to a great extent of American territory.

The attempted settlement was made at **Newfoundland**. The enterprise was unsuccessful. Gilbert then started for home; but the vessel in which he sailed was lost, and all on board perished.

63. The plan of making colonies on the coast of America was next taken up by the daring soldier and accomplished courtier, **Sir Walter Raleigh**.

Drake passed several weeks in the bay of **San Francisco** in the summer of 1579. Sailing homeward, he reached England by way of the Cape of Good Hope, — second circumnavigation of the globe.

62. In 1583, the first British attempt at American colonization was made by a brave man, **Sir Hum-**



RALEIGH

¹ A patent in those days was a document with the royal signature, making a grant and conveyance of public lands.

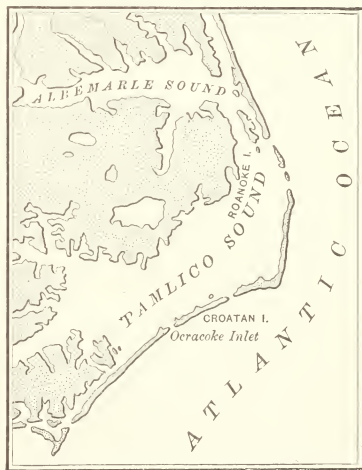
Raleigh was a half-brother of Gilbert. Having obtained from Queen Elizabeth a large grant of land, he entered with great zeal into the work of American exploration and settlement.

64. In 1584, Raleigh sent to America two vessels under command of **Amidas** and **Barlow**. They explored **Albemarle** and **Pamlico Sounds**. They then returned with cargoes of furs and woods, and gave a glowing account of the country.

This region then received the name of **Virginia**, in honor of Elizabeth, who was called the Virgin Queen because she was unmarried.

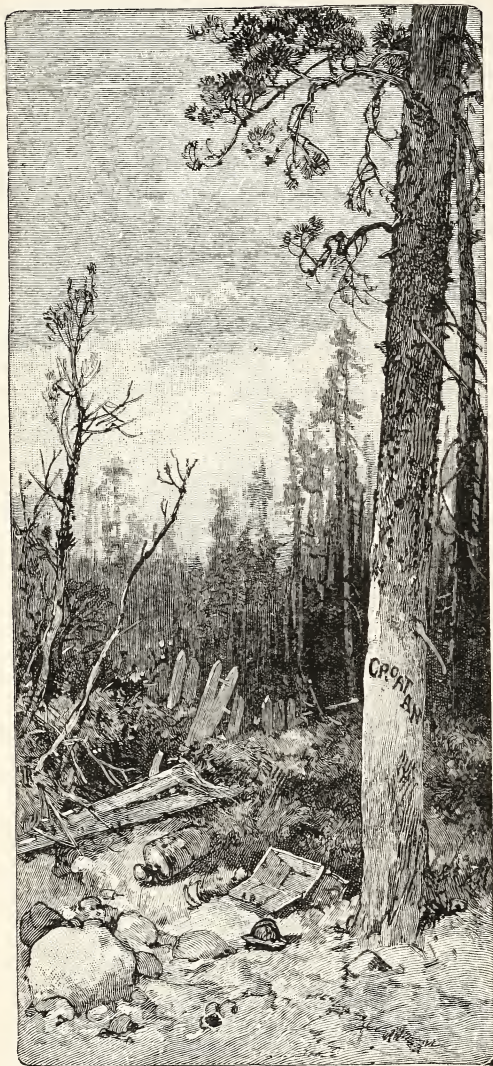
65. In 1585, Raleigh sent out a fleet of ships with emigrants to **Roanoke Island**, North Carolina, which was in the extensive region then called "Virginia." A colony was left on Roanoke Island under the control of Ralph Lane. The settlers became discouraged, and next year all returned with Sir Francis Drake, who happened to touch at Roanoke on one of his cruises.

66. In 1587, Raleigh sent out another company of emigrants to Roanoke Island under John White. White soon afterwards went to England for supplies. It was nearly three years before he returned; and when he did, not one member of the colony could be found.¹



THE CAROLINA COAST

¹ It had been arranged with White, before he left the little colony on the island of Roanoke, that if for any reason the settlers should move away, they should carve on the trees the name of the place to which they were going. If in distress, a cross was to be carved above the name. On his return, White found no one at Roanoke. The houses were gone, buried chests had been dug up and ransacked, and a fort had been built and abandoned. The bark had been



THE LOST SETTLEMENT

67. In 1602, Bartholomew Gosnold, an enterprising skipper, sailed from England to the coast of Massachusetts. He discovered and named Cape Cod; also Nantucket, Martha's Vineyard and the Elizabeth Islands. It was proposed to leave a little colony on one of the Elizabeth Islands, but the men became discouraged, and all sailed home.

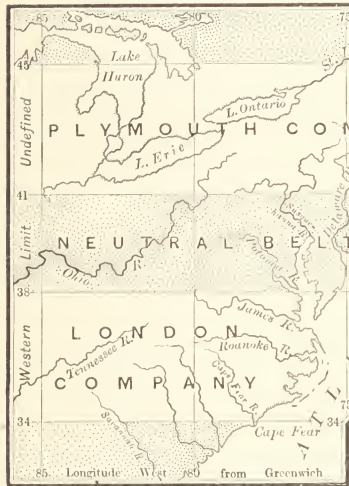
68. **The London and Plymouth Companies.** — In the next two or three years several successful trading-voyages were made to the coast of New England. In the meantime many mer-

stripped from a large tree, and five feet from the ground, in large capital letters, was cut the name *Croatan* (see map on page 45). There was no cross above the name. No trace of a new settlement was ever discovered, but

twenty years later it was learned from Indians living on the James River that this colony had been massacred by the savages.

chants and noblemen had become deeply interested in American settlement. The result was that two companies were formed to colonize and govern "Virginia." These were the **London Company** and the **Plymouth Company**.

69. In 1606, King James I. granted the country from the 34th to the 38th degree of north latitude to the London



EARLY GRANTS IN AMERICA

Company, and that from the 41st to the 45th degree to the Plymouth

Company, for the purpose of establishing colonies.

The London Company's territory received the name of **South Virginia**; the Plymouth Company's was called **North Virginia**.

70. In 1606, both the London Company and the Plymouth Company sent out emigration parties. The result was the planting of the first permanent English colony in America, at **Jamestown, Virginia**. The history of this colony and of the other colonies will be taken up in the next chapter.

71. **Summary.** — It is thus seen that during the sixteenth century the English explored the Pacific coast; that, under the leadership of Gilbert and Raleigh, repeated attempts were made to plant a colony on the coast of North Carolina (then in Virginia); that these attempts were all failures; and that at the beginning of the seventeenth century there was no English colony in America.

72. **Dutch Exploration.** — The government of **Holland** took no part in American exploration until the seventeenth century.



HUDSON

In 1609, two years after the founding of Virginia, **Henry Hudson**, an Englishman in the service of the Dutch, sailed to America to try to find a passage around the northern extremity of the American continent to Asia. Not being able to make his way through the ice, he turned southward and explored a considerable part of the eastern coast of America.

He entered New York Harbor

and sailed up **Hudson River**, — so called after the discoverer.

The Dutch based on these explorations by Hudson a claim to all the territory from the Connecticut River to the Delaware. It took the name of **New Netherlands**.

73. **The Indians.** — When the European explorers landed on the coast of North America or penetrated into the interior, they found the country inhabited by the savage tribes of Indians of whom you have read in the Introduction to this book.

It is calculated that when the English came to settle this country the number of Indians east of the Mississippi was about two hundred thousand. They lived in tribes, each tribe under its own sachem, or chief; and several tribes were frequently found united in a confederacy. The principal divisions of the Indians were: the Algonquins, including several powerful tribes; the Cherokees; the Mobilians; the Catawbias; and the Sioux or Dakotas.

74. The chief interest in the Indians arises from their relations with the whites who settled the American continent.

These relations were generally of a hostile character. The Indians destroyed the colony which Columbus left in Haiti on his first discovery. They massacred the early English colonists who established themselves on the coast of North Carolina. When finally the two permanent settlements were made at Jamestown and Plymouth, we shall see that these colonies were at various times almost exterminated by the savages.

By a strange continuance of the same traits, they have ever since been a source of trouble to the whites. Americans to-day are fighting savage bands in Arizona and Montana, just as in the seventeenth century they contended with them for the strip of land along the Atlantic coast. It is true that many of the Indians now living in the United States are following peaceful pursuits; but for more than two hundred years the case was very different.

The whites were not always just, truthful, and prudent in their dealings with the Indians; but, apart from this, there seems to be some antagonism between the Indian character and the manners and customs of our race, and it is not to be doubted that in a few years more such tribes as continue to resist the influences of civilization will have disappeared from our territory.



TOPICAL REVIEW

I. OF CHRONOLOGY

In 1492 . . . **Columbus** discovered the New World.

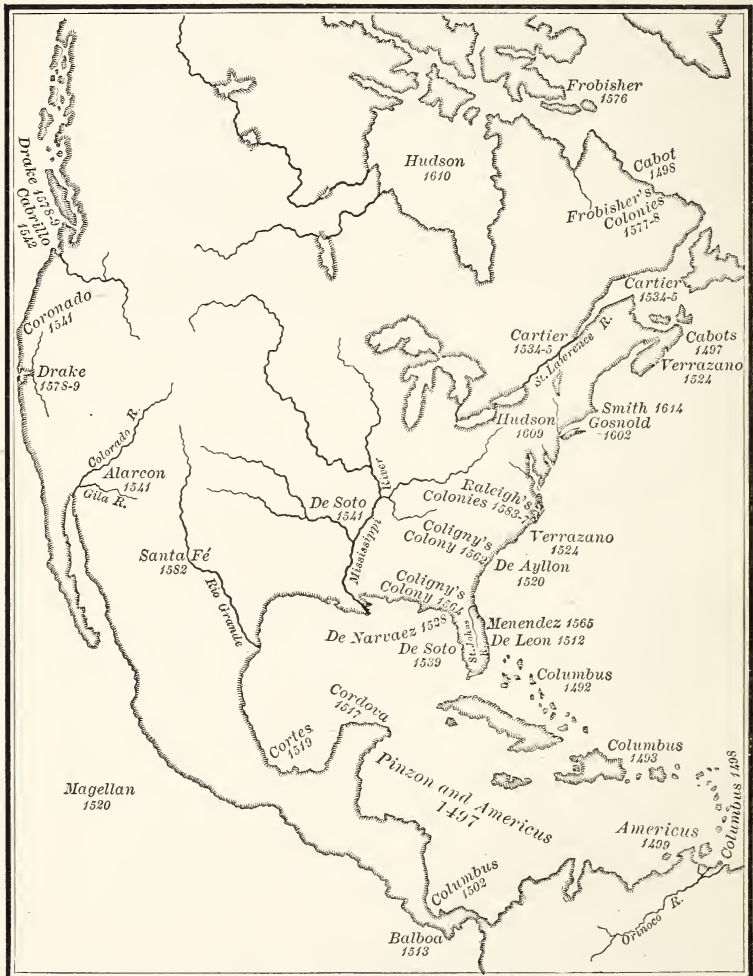
In 1497 . . . **John** and **Sebastian Cabot** discovered the island of Cape Breton and the adjacent mainland.

In 1497-98 . **Pinzon** and **Americus** discovered Honduras, and sailed along the southeastern coast of the United States.

In 1498 . . . **Columbus** discovered South America at the mouth of the Orinoco.

In 1512 . . . **Ponce de Leon** discovered Florida.

In 1520 . . . **De Ayllon** discovered the coast of South Carolina.



DISCOVERIES

In 1524 . . . **Verrazano** sailed along the coast of America from Wilmington to Nova Scotia.

- In 1528 . . . **Narváez** explored the interior of Florida.
- In 1539-42 . **De Soto** explored the interior of the Southern States, discovering the Mississippi, 1541.
- In 1540-41 . **Coronado** explored New Mexico, and **Alarcon** went up the Colorado River.
- In 1542 . . . **Cabrillo** explored the Pacific coast north to Oregon.
- In 1562 . . . **Coligny's** Huguenot colony attempted at Port Royal, South Carolina. A failure.
- In 1564 . . . **Coligny's** second Huguenot colony attempted at St. John's River, Florida. Destroyed by Spaniards.
- In 1565 . . . **Menendez** founded St. Augustine.
- In 1579 . . . **Sir Francis Drake** explored the Pacific coast and discovered San Francisco Bay.
- In 1582 . . . **Espejo** explored New Mexico and founded Santa Fé.
- In 1584-85 } **Walter Raleigh** attempted to colonize the coast of
and 1587 } North Carolina. Both attempts failures.
- In 1602 . . . **Gosnold** explored the coast of Massachusetts. A small settlement was made, but afterwards abandoned.
- In 1605 . . . **De Monts** founded Port Royal in Acadia (Nova Scotia).
- In 1606 . . . **London** and **Plymouth** Companies sent out colonies to Virginia and Maine.
- In 1608-9 . . **Champlain** settled Quebec and discovered Lakes Champlain and Huron.
- In 1609 . . . **Hudson** discovered the Hudson River.

II. OF SETTLEMENTS

1. Spanish Settlements.

A Spanish settlement made at **St. Augustine**, Florida, **1565**.

A Spanish settlement made at **Santa Fé**, New Mexico, **1582**.

A Spanish settlement made at **San Diego**, California, **1769**.

2. French Settlements.

A French Huguenot colony established in **South Carolina**, **1562**.
A failure.

A second Huguenot colony established in **Florida**, **1564**. Destroyed by Spaniards.

A French colony established in **Canada** by Champlain, in **1608**.
A success.

3. English Settlements.

English settlements attempted at **Roanoke Island**, North Carolina, by Raleigh, in **1584-85**, and **1587**. Failures.

An English colony sent out by the London Company to **Virginia**, in **1606**. A success.

III. OF CONFLICTING CLAIMS

Four European nations made discoveries, explorations, and settlements in the region which afterwards became the United States.

These nations were the Spaniards, French, Dutch, and English.

Each of these nations, by right of discovery, claimed large portions of American territory.

The **Spaniards**, in addition to Mexico, claimed nearly all the territory of the United States, under the name of Florida, and all the Pacific coast, under the name of New Mexico.

The **French** claimed a large part of the Atlantic coast by right of Verrazano's discovery. They named their region New France. It included Acadia, Canada, and the whole Mississippi Valley, comprising all west of the Alleghanies.

The **Dutch** claimed the Atlantic coast from the Connecticut River to the Delaware, under the name of New Netherlands. This claim they based on Hudson's discovery.

The **English** claimed nearly the whole Atlantic coast, under the name of North Virginia and South Virginia. This claim they based on Cabot's discovery.

These conflicting claims led to numerous disputes and several wars, which had great influence on the early history of the United States.

PERIOD II

HISTORY OF THE COLONIES, 1607-1775

INTRODUCTORY NOTE.—The social and political conditions that prevailed in the American colonies from the time when these were founded by the English and the Dutch, down to the time when they ceased to be colonies and became self-governing states, are of the greatest importance, not only to us, but to all mankind. For the institutions and habits of thought and life of the colonists were as a mold into which later generations have insensibly fitted themselves.

We Americans of to-day are but perpetuating, with such slow changes as new needs require, institutions that have been bequeathed to us. And these could only be newly established in a commonwealth already great, through long periods of popular agitation, or perhaps only by forcible revolution. It is rather because we are happy in our ancestry, and favored by nature in situation and resources, than because of any merit of our own, that we are a prosperous people. It is pleasant to reflect that this free life which we have inherited affords an example for the imitation of less fortunate families of men, an example which has already had great influence. The history of the Colonial Period is for many reasons deserving of the closest study.

VIRGINIA

75. We are now to learn about the colonies in America. We shall see how these colonies, thirteen in number, were founded, and how they grew in population and power and the love of liberty, till finally, in 1776, they revolted from the British government, and became the UNITED STATES.

76. Founding of Virginia.—It was more than a hundred years after the discovery of America before the English succeeded in establishing an American colony that lasted.

The first lasting colony was Virginia. This colony was founded in 1607. It was established by the corporation of

English merchants and gentlemen before mentioned as the "London Company." (See § 68.)

77. In the year 1606, King James I. of England gave this company a written agreement called a patent, granting them the right to trade in and govern the large country called South Virginia. South Virginia extended from the 34th to the 38th degree of north latitude.¹

At the end of the year 1606, the London Company sent out, in three ships under **Captain Newport**, an emigration party of one hundred and five men. The colonists were all men; there were no families, for the emigrants hardly expected to stay in America. They thought they would dig gold, and trade with the Indians, and get rich, and return home.

78. It was intended that the colony should be established at Roanoke Island. But a storm drove the vessels north into Chesapeake Bay. They sailed up James River, and in the month of May, 1607, the adventurers landed and founded **Jamestown**.²

The whole country was then a wilderness, in which Indians roamed in pursuit of their enemies, or of wild beasts for food. From such neighbors the emigrants could expect but little aid or comfort. Yet they took no care to provide for their future support. They planted nothing the first year, and the provisions they brought were soon used up. By fall, famine and the diseases of a hot and damp climate had swept away half their number.

79. Besides this, the Jamestown Colony was badly governed. The king of England had obliged the colonists to submit to the government of a council composed of seven men whom he nominated. The council was to choose a president.

Over this council was to be another, in England, called the

¹ That is, from Cape Fear to the mouth of the Potomac River, as an eastern boundary.

² It was first called James City, in honor of King James I. The river also was named after him.

Superior Council. The king was to appoint the members of this council also. King James wrote all these arrangements of government in a document called the **first charter of Virginia**.

The president of the colonial council, named Wingfield, turned out to be a knave, and things went from bad to worse.

80. One of the Jamestown pioneers, **Captain John Smith**, was a very bold and able man who had led a life of wonderful adventure. The king had made him one of the colonial council; but the other members were jealous of him and had excluded him from membership. However, they were now glad to put him at their head.



CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH

Smith did a great deal to improve matters. In the fall and winter he made a number of expeditions into the interior, cultivated the friendship of the Indians, and brought back supplies of corn and food for the starving colonists.¹



POCAHONTAS

81. In the spring of 1608, new settlers arrived. But they were adventurers, and instead of planting and building, devoted themselves to seeking for gold, which they did not find.²

¹ A well-known story is related of Smith on one of these expeditions. He was captured by the Indians and carried before their chief, Powhatan, whose headquarters were near the present site of Richmond. He was condemned to death, but was saved by Powhatan's daughter, **Pocahontas**. It is now believed that this is a fiction; but there really was such an Indian girl as Pocahontas, and,

some years later, she married one of the colonists, named **John Rolfe**.

² In various voyages during the ensuing summer, Smith explored Chesapeake Bay and mapped it. He also sailed for considerable distances up the

The members of the company in London, having put a good deal of money into the colony, were very much disappointed that they got no returns of gold. They therefore thought they would do better to take away the government from the Jamestown council and put matters into the hands of a governor. The king allowed them to make this change, and the new government is known as the **second charter**.

82. The company now proceeded to work with new vigor. In 1609, they sent out five hundred colonists. At the same time they appointed **Lord Delaware** governor; but he did not sail till later.

Smith was still at the head of affairs when the new emi-



GENTLEMEN SETTLERS

grants came, but in the fall of 1609, he was accidentally wounded and had to return to England.

The settlers, who belonged mostly to the higher classes of society in England, and were unused to work, when left to themselves became idle and riotous. When winter came; they were without food, and by the spring of 1610, sickness and famine had reduced them from over five hundred to sixty. This period — the winter of 1609–10 — was afterwards known as the **starving time**.

Susquehanna, the Potomac, and the James rivers. The early geography of the Atlantic seaboard was largely founded on the sketches made by this intrepid and restless explorer.

In June, 1610, the few colonists that were left were just abandoning Jamestown, when Lord Delaware, the governor, arrived with supplies and new settlers.

83. The new administration was a wise one, and the colony prospered. Other settlements were made farther up the James River. Cattle and swine were introduced from Europe, and industry and good habits spread among the people.

84. In 1612, the London Company obtained from King James a **third charter**. It allowed the stockholders of the company to exercise control over the colony. Before this, the supreme direction of the colony had been in the hands of a Superior Council in England, appointed by the king.

The result of this change was very good for Virginia because many members of the London Company were lovers of liberty, and they resolved to give their colony some of the rights of self-government.

85. Accordingly, in 1619, the company sent out a new governor, named Yeardley, and told him to establish a legislature for the colony.

The colony was divided into eleven **boroughs**, or counties,¹ and the people were allowed to elect two representatives, or burgesses, from each, to a colonial Assembly.²

86. In 1619, the **first representative Assembly** ever convened in America was held at Jamestown. The London Company further showed its good-will by granting the Virginians, in 1621, a written constitution. This secured to the people the privileges of electing their legislature, of trial by jury, and other important political rights. It laid the foundation of civil liberty in Virginia.

¹ The representation in other colonial Assemblies, as in Massachusetts, for example, was by towns. Population was not so scattered in the North as it was in Virginia.

² Representatives in the popular branch of the Virginia legislature are now called delegates.

87. Virginia now entered on a flourishing period. The people devoted themselves to agriculture, and all the old famine troubles were over. During the year 1620, twelve hundred emigrants came to Virginia; and the population now numbered thirty-five hundred. The new settlers belonged to an excellent class.

88. In 1622, in the midst of peace and prosperity, the Virginians experienced the terrible calamity of an **Indian war**. On the 22d of April, the savages fell upon all the outlying settlements, and murdered three hundred and sixty people. This led to a bloody struggle, in which the Indians were badly defeated and driven far away from the plantations.

89. In 1624, Virginia underwent an important change in its government. The London Company was dissolved by the king, and Virginia was annexed to the crown. Virginia then became a **royal province**.

90. **Important Facts.** — We may now regard Virginia as firmly founded. The colony had survived the early famine troubles, which several times threatened its destruction; it had outlived the terrible Indian massacre; it had received a good degree of political freedom, and it was now a royal province.

91. In its **government**, Virginia continued a royal province for one hundred and fifty years; that is, down to the Revolutionary War. There was, indeed, one brief interruption of the royal government, from 1677 to 1684. During this period King Charles II. resigned his dominion over Virginia, and gave it to one of his favorites, Lord Culpeper. It was then called a proprietary government. But the king resumed his rule over the province.

92. The kings of England ruled Virginia through governors whom they appointed; but they left the colonists the privilege of electing their own legislature. The people always

regarded the Virginia Assembly as the greatest safeguard of their liberties.

93. The cultivation of **tobacco** in Virginia was begun about 1616. The raising of this staple soon proved very profitable. Tobacco was not only the principal article of export from Virginia, but was the chief **currency** of the colony. Tobacco, in the early days, brought three shillings (about seventy-five cents) a pound; but its price afterwards fell very much.¹

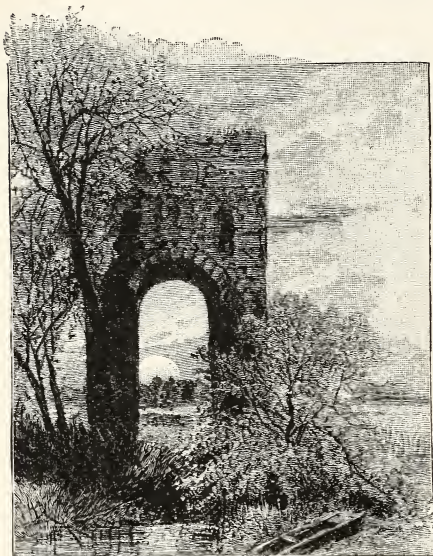
94. In 1620, a Dutch trading-vessel brought to the James River twenty Africans, who were bought as **slaves** by the planters. The number of negroes in Virginia was for a long time limited to a few cargoes brought by the Dutch. After it was found that the negroes could be profitably employed on the tobacco plantations, their numbers increased rapidly.

95. In 1644, a second **Indian massacre** occurred. About three hundred of the colonists were killed. It was followed by a war which lasted two years. The war ended in the complete subjugation of the Virginia Indians. They dwindled away, and were not afterwards troublesome.

96. During the whole period of the English civil war between Charles I. and the Parliament of England (which broke out in 1642, and resulted in the establishment of the Commonwealth, with Oliver Cromwell as Protector), the Virginians remained devoted loyalists; that is, they sided with the king. But when Cromwell triumphed and came into power, he did not treat the Virginians badly. They were allowed to choose their own governor. Many cavaliers, or English royalists, removed to Virginia at this time.

¹ The demand for tobacco in Europe had many important results for Virginia. Many emigrants came over from England to engage in the cultivation of tobacco, and thus large areas of forest were cleared to make room for plantations. The thin population became scattered, instead of centering itself in towns. As a result of this, few schools were established, and for some years education was much neglected.

97. In 1660, the English Parliament passed certain laws called the **Navigation Acts**. The purpose of these Acts was to give England the entire control of the trade of the colonies. The Virginians were not allowed to send their *products* any-



RUINS AT JAMESTOWN

where but to England; they were not allowed to *buy goods* anywhere but in England; and everything had to be carried in English vessels.

These laws bore very heavily upon Virginia. They produced great discontent, and were one of the causes of the Revolution.

98. In 1676, civil war broke out in Virginia. This war is known as "**Bacon's Rebellion.**"

The cause of it was ill-

feeling which had arisen between the people and the aristocratic party in Virginia.

99. The popular party thought the aristocrats were trying to deprive them of their liberties. They therefore rose in arms, under the lead of Nathaniel Bacon. They defeated the governor's party, and burnt Jamestown. But Bacon suddenly died, and thereupon the insurrection ceased. Jamestown was never rebuilt. Williamsburg was made the capital of the colony.

100. **Progress of Virginia.** — The progress of Virginia in population and wealth was rapid, and continued so to the end of the colonial period, 1776. The **population** of Virginia in 1776

was 575,000. Virginia was a very attractive country to settlers. It was said to be "the best poor man's country in the world."

101. The **people** were very social and hospitable. Crime was rare, theft unknown. Virginian life and character were very different from those of New England, being much more jovial and hearty.¹

102. The form of **religion** established by the colony was the Episcopalian. In the early days Puritans, Baptists, and Quakers were not allowed; but religious freedom grew rapidly in Virginia. At the close of the colonial period two thirds of the Virginians were dissenters from the Episcopal Church.

103. **Education** did not make rapid progress till after 1688. Many free schools were then established. The College of William and Mary was founded in 1692.²

104. **Slavery** was rapidly extended in Virginia. The legislature tried several times to stop it; but England would not consent.

105. A love of liberty early arose in Virginia. The firm stand which the Virginians always made for their political rights was a great benefit to all the other colonies. It prepared the way for independence.

¹ The social order in early colonial times in Virginia was markedly different from that which prevailed in most of the Northern colonies. The large land-owners formed an aristocracy of wealth, and since none but taxpayers could vote, these men were able to keep almost all political power in their own hands. The great planters were slaveholders, discouraged general education, and had little sympathy with popular rights. Thus, as we have seen, they were opponents of the English Commonwealth, and at the time of the Restoration they prided themselves on the unswerving loyalty of the "King's Ancient Dominion." It is from this phrase of theirs that Virginia derives the name, still often used, of the "Old Dominion." Most of the conditions, so unfavorable to the development of popular government, were little by little improved, until at the outbreak of the Revolutionary War the men of Virginia exercised the great influence to which their preponderating numbers and their high character entitled them.

² Named in honor of the sovereigns reigning in England at that time.

NEW ENGLAND MASSACHUSETTS

106. New England was named by Captain John Smith, famous in the history of Virginia.

In 1614, after his return from Virginia to England, Smith sailed to the American coast for purposes of trade and dis-



JOHN SMITH'S MAP OF NEW ENGLAND

covery. He examined the coast from the Penobscot River to Cape Cod. He made an interesting map of this region. A copy of this map is here given.¹

¹ This map was first published in Smith's "Description of New England," printed in London in 1616. On the map are various names given by Captain Smith to different localities. Only those of Plymouth, Charles River, and Cape Ann were afterwards retained as the names of the places designated by Smith. By comparing the map with a modern one, it will be seen that names were applied by Smith to other localities than those which now bear them.

107. It should be remembered that all this northern part of the country had been granted by King James, in 1606, to the Plymouth Company. This company had tried in 1606 to found a colony near the mouth of the Kennebec River, in Maine; but they did not succeed.

108. The Plymouth Company was dissolved in 1620, and a new company was formed, called the "Council for New England." King James granted this company the territory between the 40th and 48th degree of north latitude; that is, from Pennsylvania to Nova Scotia, and extending westward from the Atlantic to the Pacific.

The members of the "Council for New England" were very much interested in the accounts which Captain Smith gave of their territory of New England. They began to make plans to plant a colony there. Before they began to carry out these plans, a colony was founded in Massachusetts by a small band of persecuted religious Englishmen, known ever since as the Pilgrim Fathers.

109. The Plymouth Colony. — The Pilgrim Fathers belonged to a religious sect that had separated or seceded from the Established Church of England. On this account they were sometimes called **Separatists**. They were Puritans; but they went farther than most of the Puritans in favor of religious independence. A body of Separatists had some years before left England on account of religious persecution, and had settled in Holland. These men now resolved to seek an asylum in the wilds of America.¹

It is always noble for men to do or suffer anything for the sake of principle; and we must admire the self-sacrifice and courage of the **Pilgrims**.

¹ They were styled **Pilgrims** because of their wanderings from one land to another. It was a title that they cheerfully took to themselves, quoting the words of the eleventh chapter of Hebrews, "They were strangers and pilgrims on the earth."

In 1620, this band returned to England and took ship in a vessel named the **Mayflower**. They sailed from Plymouth, England, in the month of September. There were one hundred and one people.

110. The *Mayflower* reached the coast of Massachusetts, and the Pilgrim band made a landing at a place called **Plymouth**. (See Captain Smith's map, p. 62.) This name they retained. The landing was made December 21, 1620.¹



LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS

111. The Pilgrims, unlike the Virginians, had no charter from the king or from any company. They were, therefore, obliged to govern themselves. On board the *Mayflower* the men had all agreed that they would obey the laws that should be made for the common good. Their government was, therefore, a pure democracy. They chose **John Carver** governor for one year.

112. It was a cold welcome they received to their wilderness home. The country was covered with forests, and the snows and sleet and cold of the New England winter were coming on. They made themselves as comfortable as they could in rude log-cabins; but the greater part fell sick, and before

¹ The anniversary is celebrated on the 22d, an error of a day having occurred in changing the date from old to new style.

spring half the little band had perished. Governor Carver was among the number. William Bradford succeeded him.¹

Fortunately they were not troubled by the Indians. No natives appeared during the winter,² and when they began to come in in the spring, they were quite friendly. The Pilgrims formed with the Indians a treaty of friendship which lasted a long time.

113. Plymouth Colony grew very slowly. At the end of ten years it contained only three hundred people. Still it was firmly planted, and the success of the experiment led to the founding of other larger colonies in New England.

114. Plymouth remained independent, with its own government, for seventy-two years, till 1692. It was then, by order of the king of England, united with Massachusetts Bay Colony. Its population was then eight thousand, scattered through several towns.

The Pilgrims and their descendants were a quiet, thrifty, God-fearing people. They were, for the age, liberal Christians, and were never guilty of that religious persecution for which the Puritans of Massachusetts Bay Colony have been much blamed.

115. Massachusetts Bay Colony. — The success of Plymouth Colony led a number of wealthy and influential English Puritans to form a company that should send out Puritan settlers to New England. They called themselves the "Company of Massachusetts Bay."

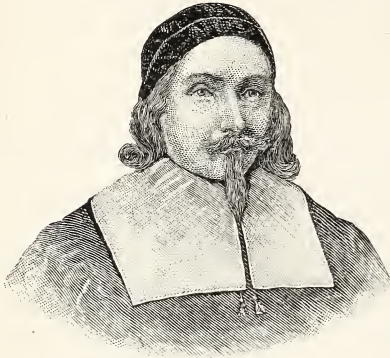
This company, in 1628, purchased from the "Council for New England" a tract of land bordering on Massachusetts Bay.³

¹ Bradford was chosen governor again and again for many years.

² The natives in the vicinity of Plymouth were at this time few and weak. When, later on, they had learned to make themselves understood by the English, the Indians explained that four years before the landing a pestilence had swept away great numbers of their people.

³ The purchase comprised the lands extending from a line three miles north of every part of Merrimac River to a line three miles south of the Charles River, and from the Atlantic to the Pacific.

The company began by sending out to Massachusetts a party of Puritans under **John Endicott** to reënforce a settlement made two years before by some Dorchester merchants. The name of the place was changed to **Salem** and it became the foundation of the colony of Massachusetts Bay. During the same summer, others followed and settled at Charlestown.



JOHN ENDICOTT

116. In 1629, King Charles I. granted the company a charter. The charter and powers of government for the new colony were to be in the hands of the company in England.

117. In 1630, an important change was made in regard to the government of the colony. The charter and powers of government were transferred from the company in England to the colony. This gave Massachusetts Bay Colony **self-government**. A large number of Puritans of influence and wealth now resolved to remove from England to the colony.

118. In the summer of 1630, a fleet of thirteen vessels, carrying nearly fifteen hundred Puritan settlers sailed for America.¹ **John Winthrop** came with them as governor of Massachusetts Bay Colony. Governor Win-



JOHN WINTHROP

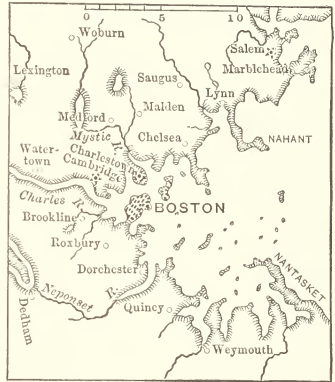
¹ It is estimated that in the next ten years—that is, between 1630 and 1640—at least twenty thousand English Puritans crossed the seas to join their brethren in New England.

throp was greatly respected and esteemed by his people, and he was frequently reelected chief magistrate of the colony.

119. The new-comers founded the city of **Boston** and settled Dorchester, Cambridge,¹ Lynn, Roxbury, and other places, the situation of which may be seen in the map.

120. For the first two or three years the settlers around Massachusetts Bay suffered severe privations; but after that they enjoyed a great degree of happiness and prosperity. The people were thrifty and persevering. They cultivated the ground and took care of flocks and herds. They hunted and fished for a part of their food. Their exports of cured fish, furs, and lumber bought them articles of convenience and luxury in England.

Thus Massachusetts Colony was by this time firmly founded. We will now learn some of the important facts of its colonial history.



BOSTON AND VICINITY

121. **Important Facts.** — The government of Massachusetts Colony was under a charter granted by the king of England, Charles I. It was carried on by a governor, deputy-governor, and magistrates called “assistants,” — all chosen by the people. The laws were made by a legislature elected by the people. But only the “freemen,” or citizens, voted, and only church-members were citizens.²

¹ The first settlement of this place was named Newtown. Here the “General Court,” established a college in 1636. Two years later, John Harvard bequeathed his library, besides considerable other property, to the uses of the college. The institution was then named **Harvard College** in his honor, and Newtown became Cambridge in honor of the parent university in England.

² This provision disfranchised a majority of the people, placed too much power in the hands of the clergy, and led to serious abuses. It had many opponents, and some clergymen favored an extension of the suffrage. One of the

122. In 1686, the charter of Massachusetts was abolished by James II. The colony was then ruled by a governor appointed by the king. The governor was **Sir Edmund Andros**,¹ who was a despot. The legislature was abolished. This was a very great blow to liberty.



SIR EDMUND ANDROS

123. In 1692, Massachusetts received from King William a new charter, which did not grant the people as much freedom as the original one. The king reserved the right of appointing the governor. However, popular representation was restored.²

124. Massachusetts continued to be a **royal province** under this charter, until it declared its independence in 1776.

125. In Massachusetts, **religious persecution** grew out of the close connection between religion and politics. The Puritans wished to found a religious commonwealth. This made them intolerant of all who differed from them. Here follow some examples.

1. In 1635, Roger Williams, a minister, was banished from the colony for advancing doctrines in opposition to those held by the Puritan churches. He went into the wilderness and founded **Rhode Island**.

2. In 1636, Anne Hutchinson and Rev. John Wheelwright caused much trouble by their opposition to the clergy. They were finally compelled to leave the colony.

3. In 1656, a law was passed banishing all Quakers from

most eminent of these, Thomas Hooker, helped to establish the more liberal constitution of Connecticut a few years later.

¹ See § 144.

² This charter united the colonies of Plymouth and Massachusetts Bay, the province of Maine, and the territory of Nova Scotia into one colony called Massachusetts Bay. New Hampshire was set off as a separate colony. This arrangement lasted for nearly a century — down to the outbreak of the Revolutionary War.

Massachusetts Bay Colony, and imposing the penalty of death on those who returned. Four persons were executed under this law. Very soon afterwards, it was repealed.

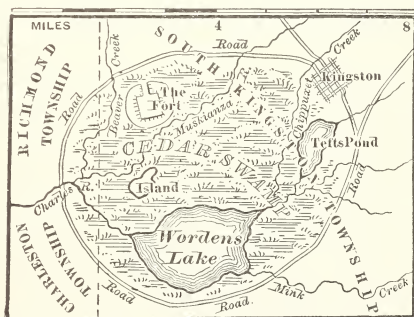
What must we say of these things? We can only say that the Puritans *thought* they were right, and that, in that age, they had not learned the lesson of religious toleration.

126. In 1643, a union was made between Plymouth Colony and Massachusetts Bay Colony and two other colonies which had, meantime, been planted in New England. These two other colonies were Connecticut Colony and New Haven Colony, both within the present limits of the state of Connecticut.

They took the name of the **United Colonies of New England**. They joined together for mutual protection, and the union lasted for forty years.¹

127. In 1675, a savage contest, called **King Philip's War**, began with the Indians. Philip was chief of the Wampanoags, and succeeded in uniting the Narragansetts with him. The cause of the war was the execution of three Indians by the English for the murder of an Indian convert who had told the colonists that Philip was conspiring against them.

This savage warfare lasted more than a year. Nearly all the frontier New England settlements were attacked and burned, and many men, women, and children were killed. The colonists fled to arms, and defeated the savages in several fights.



NARRAGANSETT FORT AND SWAMP

128. The chief battle,

¹ The union of these colonies was merely for advice and aid against common enemies. Each colony in the league retained exclusive control of its own affairs.

called the swamp fight, took place in South Kingston, Rhode Island. The Indians had three thousand warriors; the colonists, fifteen hundred militia. The Indians were completely defeated, losing one thousand men. The following year King Philip was killed. Six hundred white men perished during the war, which cost a million dollars. But the result was the complete subjugation of the New England Indians.

129. During the English civil war, when the Puritan Parliament of England fought against Charles I., and finally cut off his head and made Cromwell Protector, the sympathies of the New Englanders were with Parliament.

130. In the history of Virginia mention was made of the **Navigation Acts** of 1660. These laws crippled the trade of New England; but the colonists evaded the laws as much as they could. As a result, the English government did not get much revenue from Massachusetts. It was in consequence of this that James II., in 1686, declared the charter of Massachusetts null and void (see §.122), and sent out his own governors to enforce the laws.

131. In 1692, there broke out in Massachusetts a remarkable delusion known as the **Salem witchcraft**. In that age the belief in witchcraft was common in all civilized countries, and in England, from time to time, witches were hanged. In Salem this belief now took possession of the whole community and became a sort of panic.

This panic originated in a strange manner. Some little girls being taken with a singular nervous disorder, an old Indian woman-servant was accused and whipped till she confessed that she had bewitched the children. Other children were affected in the same way, and other old women were charged with being witches.

Within a few months, twenty persons were tried and executed, and the jails were filled with others accused of witchcraft; but before long the terror passed away, and the

accused were liberated. The people had come to understand that, whatever was the truth about witchcraft, death was neither the proper cure, nor the proper punishment for it.

132. During the hundred years before Independence, the people of Massachusetts were, at different times, engaged in four wars against the French, who were assisted by Indian allies. These contests, in which the colony suffered severely, are known as the **French and Indian wars**. But as many of the other colonies besides Massachusetts were engaged in these wars, we shall give an account of them in a separate chapter.

CONNECTICUT

133. Founding of Connecticut Colony. — Connecticut was settled from Massachusetts. The people had heard of the fertile lands in the valley of a river called by the Indians "Connecticut," which means, in their language, *long river*.



THE JOURNEY THROUGH THE WILDERNESS

134. In 1635, a pioneer band of about sixty men, women, and children set out from Massachusetts to go westward. They

were guided through the wilderness by the compass; they drove their cattle before them, and after fourteen days' toilsome journeying they reached the Connecticut River. They settled at Windsor. (See map, p. 82.)

In the next year, 1636, a larger party of emigrants followed from Massachusetts. They were led by **Rev. Thomas Hooker**. The new-comers founded the settlements of **Hartford, Windsor, and Wethersfield**.¹

These settlements were at first under the protection of Massachusetts, and were called the **Connecticut Colony**. However, two other colonies were soon planted within the present limits of Connecticut.

135. These Massachusetts pioneers were not actually the first white men in Connecticut. In 1633, some Dutch traders from the Dutch-American colony, New Netherlands (now New York), had established a fortified trading-post on the Connecticut River, near where Hartford now is. In the same year a party of traders from Plymouth Colony sailed up the Connecticut River. The Dutch tried to prevent their passing the fort, but they did not succeed, and the emigrants passed up and built a trading-house at Windsor.

136. Then came, in 1636, the first real settlers, the Massachusetts pioneers. Trouble was feared between the English and the Dutch, as both had claims in Connecticut. There were disputes for a number of years, but it was finally decided that the English should have possession.

137. The Dutch had really very little right to Connecticut. That region belonged to the extensive territory of North Vir-

¹ Early in 1639, the people of these three towns prepared and adopted a written constitution. This document contained no recognition of king, parliament, or any other external political authority. It provided that *all men* should be freemen who should be admitted as such by the towns. This admirable constitution, with very slight changes, continued in force for nearly two centuries. At the time it was adopted, the population of the three settlements was about one thousand.

ginia, which King James I., in 1606, gave to the Plymouth Company.¹

138. Lords Say and Brook, who became proprietors of Connecticut in 1632, did not disturb the Massachusetts settlers in Connecticut. However, they sent out John Winthrop, Jr., son of Governor Winthrop of Massachusetts, as their agent, and told him to build a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut River.

He did so, and formed a little settlement at Saybrook. This constituted an independent colony called the **Saybrook Colony**, the first of the two other colonies before spoken of. Saybrook Colony was united with Connecticut Colony in 1644.

139. The Connecticut colonists had not been a year in their new home before they had to wage a bloody war for their existence. The **Pequots** lived in Connecticut, and were the most powerful tribe of New England Indians. From the beginning, they had murdered many of the scattered settlers.

In 1637, **Captain John Mason**, with a small force of colonists and friendly Indians, marched against the Pequots in their principal stronghold. This was a palisaded fort on the Mystic River, where the present town of Groton stands.

Mason surprised the savages, who defended themselves stoutly until the colonists set fire to their wigwams; in the confusion the Indians were shot down and burned. Six hundred men, women, and children perished, mostly by the flames. The result of this was the utter extermination of the Pequot tribe.²

¹ In 1630, the company granted the soil of Connecticut to the Earl of Warwick. In 1632, the Earl of Warwick ceded his rights to an English corporation composed of Lord Say, Lord Brook, and others. So Connecticut belonged to *them*.

² The overthrow of the Pequots was a most important event in the settlement of New England. It removed almost the only obstacle in the way of peopling the coast of Connecticut, and opened the way to free communication of the inhabitants of the inland towns with those who dwelt on the shores of Long Island Sound. The people of the interior were for the most part farmers. In the towns on the coast and navigable rivers many of the inhabitants were engaged in the fisheries, in shipbuilding, and in trade.

140. New Haven Colony. — In 1638, a third colony was established in Connecticut. It was called the **New Haven Colony**. This colony was founded by a band of Puritans who came from England. The first settlement was made at New Haven. A government was organized on strictly religious principles, and only church-members were allowed to vote.

141. We have thus seen three colonies established on the soil of Connecticut, — Connecticut Colony (consisting of the settlements of Windsor, Hartford, and Wethersfield), Saybrook Colony, and New Haven Colony. Saybrook Colony was united with Connecticut Colony in 1644.

Connecticut Colony and New Haven Colony remained separate governments, each under its own constitution framed by the people, till 1665. Then King Charles II. united them into one. Hence, after that time, we have to speak only of **Connecticut**.

142. Important Facts. — In 1662, King Charles II. granted Connecticut a charter. It was under this charter that the two colonies were united and became Connecticut in 1665.

This charter was exceedingly liberal. It confirmed the free constitution which the people had formed, allowing them to elect their own governor and representatives. It also gave other privileges, and was the most liberal charter ever given to any American colony. It was secured by John Winthrop, Jr., who applied to the king for it.

143. In 1685, King James II. annulled the charter of Connecticut. He did not wish any free governments in his dominion.

144. The charter itself was not lost; for when Andros, who had been sent out as royal governor of New England, went to Hartford, in 1687, to seize the charter, the lights in the room suddenly went out, and the precious document was carried away by Captain Wadsworth and hid in the famous "**Charter**

Oak.” Still, under Andros, the rights and privileges and liberties which the charter secured were taken away, though the document itself was safe. Andros destroyed the colony’s self-government and ruled like a tyrant.

145. Fortunately, Andros’s rule came to an end in 1689, when his royal master, King James II., fled, and a better monarch, King William, ascended



THE CHARTER OAK

the throne. Then the Charter Oak yielded its faded treasure, and the old charter was again made the supreme law.

146. From the time of the union of the colonies till 1701 Hartford was the seat of government. From 1701 to 1874, the legislature met alternately at **Hartford** and **New Haven**.

147. Progress. — Under the constitution which they had themselves formed, and which was confirmed by the charter, the people continued to grow and prosper. Their early constitution was found so good that it remained the fundamental law of the land for one hundred and eighty years; that is, till long after Connecticut became a state.

148. In **character**, the people of Connecticut were thrifty and industrious and liberty-loving.

149. Education early received much attention. An excellent system of common schools was established. **Yale College** was founded in 1701.¹

150. In the several **colonial wars** with the French, Con-

¹ The original seat of this institution was Saybrook. Fifteen years later it was removed to New Haven. The college is named in honor of Elihu Yale, who was the most liberal of its early patrons.

necticut furnished her full quota of troops and she took a leading part in the revolt of the colonies.

151. The population of Connecticut at the breaking out of the Revolutionary War was 200,000.

RHODE ISLAND

152. **Founding of Rhode Island.** — It was religious persecution which led to the founding of Rhode Island. Roger Williams was the first white man who settled in that colony.



WILLIAMS WELCOMED BY THE NARRAGANSETTS

153. When Williams was banished from Massachusetts, he fled in the winter through the woods to the wigwams of the Narragansett Indians. He was well received by them. Williams

at this time gave the Indians so strong an impression of his nobleness and purity of character, that he always afterwards had great influence with the savages. On several subsequent occasions he was able to save New England from Indian attacks.

In the spring of 1636, Williams, with a few friends, left the Indian camp and went to a place called Seekonk, at the head of Narragansett Bay. Here he made a settlement which he named **Providence**, to express his confidence in the mercies of God.

154. Williams had been banished from Massachusetts because he said that government had neither the right nor the duty to meddle in matters of religion. His doctrine was that the magistrate was to rule "only in civil matters," while the people were responsible for their religious opinions to God alone.¹

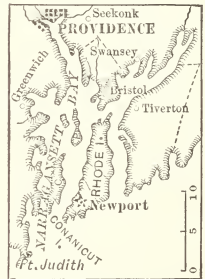
The result of this liberal spirit was that the colony soon became an asylum for the persecuted in other provinces.

155. In 1638, a small band of people who were driven out of Massachusetts on account of church matters made a settlement on the island of Rhode Island.² They named their settlement **Portsmouth**.

156. In the spring of 1639, a number of colonists removed to the southeastern part of the island, where they laid the foundation of **Newport**.

¹ Roger Williams stood alone among colonial leaders in his understanding of what religious liberty and toleration are. He believed that the religious faith and practice of all men, whether Christians or Jews, Catholics or Protestants, should be free from interference by the State. In the year 1647, the Assembly of Rhode Island enacted a law in support of this doctrine. This was the most tolerant of the colonial governments. The Maryland constitution made no distinction between Protestant and Catholic, but it did require that the citizen should belong to some denomination of Christians.

² The Dutch had called this island, from its reddish appearance, *Roodt Eylandt*, — Red Island. Hence the English *Rhode Island*. The settlers bought the island of the Indian chiefs Canonicus and Miantonomoh for "forty fathoms of wampum."



NARRAGANSETT BAY

157. In 1643, Roger Williams went to England; he returned the next year with a charter, which united the settlements into one colony. He obtained the charter from the English Parliament.

Soon after this, the people met and framed a free constitution for the colony. It allowed perfect religious liberty. A governor and legislature were elected by the people. This made Rhode Island a regularly organized colony.

158. Important Facts. — The relations of Rhode Island with Massachusetts were for a long while rather unfriendly. Massachusetts claimed part of the soil of Rhode Island as her own.

In order to end this trouble, and also some disputes among the people themselves, Roger Williams was asked to go to England again. He went, and in 1654 obtained a confirmation of the charter.

159. In 1663, Rhode Island obtained from Charles II. a royal charter, under which the colony and the state were governed for 179 years. It granted all the rights and privileges given by the previous parliamentary charter. This charter named the colony "Rhode Island and Providence Plantations."

160. When the persecution of the Quakers was begun in Massachusetts, the other New England colonies asked Rhode Island to pass a law against that sect, but she refused to do so. She was true to her original doctrine of **religious freedom**.

161. Progress. — From the commencement of the eighteenth century, down to the end of the colonial times, Rhode Island had a career of prosperity. **Education** received much attention. **Brown University** was founded at Warren in 1764, and removed to Providence six years later.

In 1732, James Franklin, elder brother of the famous Benjamin Franklin, established at Newport the first newspaper in Rhode Island. The **population** of Rhode Island, at the beginning of the Revolutionary War, was 50,000.

NEW HAMPSHIRE

162. **Founding of New Hampshire.**—The colony of New Hampshire had, in one respect, a different history from the other colonies. It was not all the time a separate colony. At various times it formed part of Massachusetts.

163. In 1622, two years after the landing of the Pilgrims, two Englishmen, Sir Ferdinando Gorges and Captain John Mason, obtained a grant of a tract of land "bounded by the Merrimac, the Kennebec, the ocean, and the 'river of Canada.'" They got this grant from the "Council for New England," who held the royal patent for all New England.

164. The next year, a small party in the service of the proprietors made little settlements on the Piscataqua. Among these settlements were **Portsmouth** and **Dover**.

These villages were very feeble for a long time. The inhabitants were mostly engaged in the fisheries, and in the fur trade with the Indians.

165. In 1629, Gorges and Mason dissolved partnership, and divided their grant. Gorges retained control of the settlements in what is now the state of Maine.

Mason then obtained a new grant for the territory between the Merrimac and the Piscataqua. He named his province "New Hampshire," in honor of the county of Hampshire, in England, where he had formerly lived.

166. During the next few years, the region was divided among many proprietors. Massachusetts claimed some of the territory north of the Merrimac River. Mason died, and after that, the people living near the Piscataqua declared themselves independent of his heirs. These heirs sold their title to other proprietors. This led to numerous disputes and lawsuits.

New Hampshire also suffered terribly from the Indians. The border settlements were greatly exposed to attacks from

the savages. In the Indian wars many of the New Hampshire villages were destroyed.

167. These troubles led the small and scattered population of New Hampshire to put themselves under the protection of Massachusetts. This they did in 1641. Two other settlements had by this time been made — one at **Exeter**, the other at **Hampton**.

New Hampshire continued a part of Massachusetts for thirty-nine years; that is, till 1680.

168. In 1680, the king of England made New Hampshire a separate **royal province**. It was ruled by a governor appointed by the king, and by an Assembly elected by the people.

169. During Andros's two years of despotic rule over New England (1686–1688), New Hampshire, like her sister colonies, lost her independence.

When Andros was overthrown, the people took the government into their own hands, and in 1690 placed themselves again under the protection of Massachusetts.

Some years later, under the policy of consolidation of the colonies, New Hampshire was for a time subject to the government of New York.

170. From this time till 1741, New Hampshire was sometimes separate from, and at other times united with, Massachusetts. In 1741, the controversy with Massachusetts in regard to boundary was finally settled. New Hampshire was separated from Massachusetts, and remained a distinct royal colony till the outbreak of the war for Independence.

171. Though the rapid growth of New Hampshire was much retarded by Indian wars and by the conflicting claims to the lands, that colony nurtured a hardy, courageous, and liberty-loving people. The important part she took in the French wars will be seen in another chapter. At the outbreak of the Revolutionary War, the people of New Hampshire were ready to take their own share in the contest.

MAINE AND VERMONT

172. Founding of Maine. — Maine was not one of the thirteen colonies which entered into the War for Independence in 1775. In 1775, Maine was not a separate colony, but a part of Massachusetts. Still, Maine had been a separate colony during part of the colonial period, and we must know *when* this was.

173. In 1639, Sir Ferdinando Gorges obtained from the king of England a grant of land between the Piscataqua and the Kennebec. This he called the “Province of Maine.”

The northeastern part of New England was called the *Mayne* [*main*] land, in distinction from the islands along the coast; hence the name *Maine*.

174. At this time, almost the only population consisted of a few fishermen living in huts along the coast. But as time passed, there was considerable immigration into the woods of Maine, and the people established a government of their own.

175. For many years there was a continual dispute between Maine and Massachusetts. The cause of it was that Massachusetts claimed jurisdiction over a part of Maine. In 1677, the British authorities decided that Massachusetts had no right to Maine. It was said to belong to the **heirs of Gorges**.

176. The secret of this was that the king of England wished to buy this province for his son, the duke of Monmouth. But the people of Massachusetts outwitted the king. They sent to the pretended heir and bought his title to the soil of Maine for twelve hundred pounds. This was in 1677. Maine was annexed by royal charter to Massachusetts in 1691. Maine remained a part of Massachusetts till 1820, when she came into the Union as an independent state.

177. Founding of Vermont. — All of New England has now been mentioned, except Vermont. Vermont never was a colony. It came into the Union as a state in 1791. But even during the

colonial times, the "Green Mountain Boys," as they were then called, took an important part in the wars of New England.

178. Ownership of the territory that is now Vermont was claimed by New Hampshire, and many tracts lying in the southern half of the Green Mountain region were granted to settlers by the government of New Hampshire. Thus it came



SETTLEMENTS IN NEW ENGLAND

about that this region was long known under the name of the "New Hampshire Grants."

179. But New York claimed jurisdiction over the same territory, because it was part of the original grant to the duke of York, and the New Yorkers tried to compel the settlers to buy their lands over again. This the "Green Mountain Boys" would not do, and presently they set up a government of their own, first styled "New Connecticut," and afterwards, very appropriately, "Vermont."

NEW YORK

180. Founding of New York.—New York, now the first of all the states in wealth and population, was the only one of the American colonies settled by the Dutch.

181. Henry Hudson landed on **Manhattan Island** (now part of New York City) in 1609, and discovered the Hudson River.¹ Hudson was an Englishman; but at this time he was in the service of the Dutch government. On this account the Dutch claimed the country and named it, after their own, **New Netherlands**. They undertook the occupation and settlement of Manhattan Island.

182. Soon after Hudson's discovery, merchants of Holland sent out ships to traffic with the Indians. The traders established trading-posts, one on Manhattan Island, the other up the Hudson, not far from the spot where Albany was afterwards built.

183. In 1621, the year after the landing of the Pilgrims, a company of Dutch merchants, called the **Dutch West India Company**, obtained a patent for the territory of New Netherlands. The Dutch claimed that New Netherlands stretched from the Connecticut River to the Delaware.

184. In 1623, the West India Company sent out a number of families from Holland to their colony. This was the first regular settlement of the country. On the island of Manhattan they founded **New Amsterdam**.² This was the beginning of the great city of New York. In 1624, they founded Fort Orange,³ afterwards called **Albany**.⁴

¹ See § 72.

² Manhattan Island was bought of the Indians for sixty guilders, — twenty-five dollars.

³ So named in honor of the prince of Orange, then president of the Dutch Republic.

⁴ Renamed for the duke of York and Albany.

185. In 1626 **Peter Minuit** was sent out as governor of New Netherlands. The second Dutch governor was **Wouter Van Twiller**; the third, **Sir William Kieft**; the fourth and last, **Peter Stuyvesant**. These four governors ruled during about forty years, till 1664.



PETER STUYVESANT

During this period New Amsterdam was growing in a slow but solid sort of way.¹ In 1664, the Dutch colony of New Netherlands could show a population of ten thousand.

186. The Dutch had a few troubles, — troubles with the Puritans in Connecticut,² with some Swedes³ who had settled to the south of them, and with the Indians. All these troubles were overcome during the administration of Governor Stuyvesant, who was decidedly a strong-minded man.

187. The **English** had all this time looked on the territory of New Netherlands as belonging to them. It was part of the English claim to American territory, — the claim founded on the discovery by the Cabots.⁴

¹ The Dutch West India Company made very large grants of land in this colony to wealthy men who brought over settlers at their own cost. The land-owners, or patroons, as they were called, did not sell, but only rented their lands. Thus the mass of the colonists were tenants, not freeholders. They had less community of feeling than existed in New England; but on the other hand were less scattered than the people of the Southern colonies. This land system was not such as to encourage immigration.

² These troubles were territorial, as we have already seen. The boundary dispute between New York and Connecticut was settled in 1650, while Stuyvesant was governor.

³ See § 236.

⁴ Besides this, the English colonists of New England on the one hand and of Virginia on the other, looked with some envy and some forebodings of future trouble upon this intermediate colony of another European nation. They remembered the maritime supremacy of Holland, and well knew the indomitable character of the Dutch race.

188. In 1664, the English were ready to make this claim good. King Charles II. granted the country from the Connecticut to the Delaware to his brother, the duke of York. The duke of York sent out an armed vessel and some troops under Colonel Nicolls, who was to ask the Dutch governor to give place to the English.

Stuyvesant would have resisted this demand, but the people thought it was of no use to do so. So the city was surrendered, September 8, 1664. The whole province, as well as the principal city, took the name of **New York**.¹

189. **English Period.** — The principal reason why the Dutch gave up New York so easily was because many of the people wanted more freedom than they had under the Dutch West India Company's governors. A large number of New Englanders had settled among the Dutch, and had the New England ideas of government within themselves.

Stuyvesant did not believe in these notions, and said he derived his authority from "God and the West India Company," and did not need the consent of the people.

190. The New Yorkers did not gain all they thought they would when they changed Dutch masters for English masters. The duke of York, who was proprietor of the whole province, did not allow the people to govern themselves by a legislature (that is, by representatives chosen by the people), but sent out governors, who were responsible only to him.

191. The people were not sorry when, in 1673, a Dutch fleet came to New York—the Dutch and English nations being then at war—and compelled the city to surrender. The **Dutch restoration** lasted but little over a year. In 1674, New York came again under English rule. It so remained till the time of Independence.

¹ The duke of York ceded a large part of the territory, including what is now the state of New Jersey, to two English noblemen. See § 206.

192. Important Facts.—In 1674, the duke of York sent out as governor **Major Edmund Andros**. This was the same Andros who was afterwards the oppressor of New England. He ruled New York for eight years. During that period the rights of the citizens received scant respect. There was no popular Assembly to make laws. Taxes were levied without the consent of the people.

193. In 1683, the people of New York were granted the right of representation. The duke of York sent out a new governor with permission to call together an Assembly of representatives of the people.

This gave a long-desired right; but it was soon taken away. The duke of York, in a year or two, became king of England, under the title of James II. He then refused to allow the New Yorkers to hold their Assembly, prohibited printing-presses, and sent out a governor who ground down the people.

194. In 1689, the news came that James II. was driven from the throne, and that King William had succeeded him. The New Yorkers were delighted at this. As the people of Boston had imprisoned Andros, the New Yorkers determined to seize the governor whom James II. had put over them.

195. There was a popular uprising headed by a citizen named Leisler. The people seized the fort in the name of King William, the royal governor fled, and Leisler put himself at the head of the colony. He said he meant to hold power only till King William should send out a governor.

196. In 1691, Colonel Sloughter came out as governor. Leisler had grown quite vain of his power, and made some trouble about giving up his authority. Sloughter had him arrested and tried. He and his son-in-law, Milborne, were condemned to death for high treason.

The governor refused to sign the warrant for their execution, since he thought they had been weak rather than wicked.

But Leisler had made a great many enemies among the New York magistrates and the wealthy class, and they resolved that he should die.

They invited Governor Sloughter to a feast, and, when he was intoxicated with wine, he signed the death-warrant. Leisler and Milborne were executed early the next morning. The execution of Leisler, while it pleased one part of the people, enraged another. The feud between the two lasted for a long time, and had a great influence on colonial politics for many years.

197. From the time of King William (1689) to the Revolutionary War, New York continued to be a **royal province**, ruled by the king's governors. King William also allowed the colony a legislature. But New York had no such charter of liberties as the New England colonies had. Hence it was often oppressed by bad governors. These oppressions had one good effect: they taught the people to value liberty and resist tyranny.

198. Progress. — The **population** of New York colony at the commencement of English rule (1664) was 10,000. In 1776 it was over 180,000. The early settlers, as we saw, were Dutch. They were honest, thrifty, and whole-souled. Afterwards there came large numbers of Scotch, French, Germans, and English. The original Dutch blood was a noble element in New York society.

199. In **religion**, the majority were Presbyterians and Independents. The Dutch Presbyterian church was prosperous in all parts of the colony. The spirit of toleration in matters of faith was inborn in the descendants of the Dutch, and there was hardly any persecution for opinion.

200. **New York City** during the Dutch times contained some three hundred houses and about three thousand people. Before the end of the colonial times, it had grown to be the most important commercial city on the Atlantic coast.

201. King's College, now known as **Columbia College**, was chartered in New York in 1754 by George II. Moneys had been previously raised for the endowment of this college by authorizing lotteries for the purpose.

202. With the Indians the people of New York were, during almost the whole colonial period, on very friendly terms. The powerful confederacy of the **Five Nations**, or Iroquois, living in the northern part of New York, made several treaties with the people, and helped protect the frontier against attacks from Canada.

The good will of the Five Nations was of the greatest importance to the colony, whose population was for many years relatively small, being mainly confined to the villages and towns along the banks and at the mouth of the Hudson River.

203. The prominent part taken by New York in the various French wars is described in another chapter. From the beginning to the end of these wars New York troops were in active service. The conquest of Canada, in 1763, put an end to the long contest.

204. The spirit of independence was exceedingly strong in the New Yorkers. In New York City able newspapers were published which defended the rights of the people. The oldest of these newspapers was the *New York Gazette*, established in the year 1725.

In 1729, a city library was founded, and in 1740 the New York Society Library was organized.

The New York Assembly was the first of the colonial Assemblies to propose (in 1764) that there should be "**committees of correspondence**" on the subject of England's oppressions. In 1765, the famous Congress known as the Stamp Act Congress met in New York City. The Sons of Liberty were organized with affiliations throughout the colonies.

The first blood of the Revolution was shed in New York early in the year 1770.

NEW JERSEY

205. Founding of New Jersey. — What is now New Jersey originally formed part of New Netherlands. When New Netherlands was given up to the duke of York, and became the province of New York, the territory of “the Jerseys,” as it was called, was still included in New York.

206. In 1664, the same year in which King Charles II. made the duke of York proprietor of the province of New



CARTERET'S COMING

York, the duke of York ceded to two English noblemen, Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret, a large part of his territory. This was made a separate province with the name of “New Jersey.”¹

¹ It received the name of New Jersey in compliment to Sir George Carteret, who had been governor of the little island of Jersey in the English Channel.

207. The proprietors made a liberal constitution for the colony. This charter promised equal rights and liberty to all religions. The government was to be by a governor and a council, appointed by the proprietors. The effect of these liberal offers was that many persons of various religious denominations, that were oppressed in Europe, came to the new colony.

208. In 1665, the first settlement in New Jersey was made at **Elizabeth**. The band of settlers was led by Philip Carteret (brother of the proprietor), who had been appointed governor. He came with a hoe on his shoulder, to remind the people that industry and agriculture must be their main reliance. Thus the colony of New Jersey was founded.

209. Important Facts.—In 1674, Lord Berkeley sold his share of New Jersey to a company of English Friends, or Quakers. The province was now divided into two parts, — the Quaker purchase being named **West Jersey**, the part still held by Carteret **East Jersey**.

210. The celebrated **William Penn** was made manager of the Quaker purchase. Immediately there was a very large immigration to West Jersey of persons belonging to the Society of Friends. In fact, it was a Quaker colony.

211. West Jersey had its own legislature. In 1681, the first Assembly met and passed excellent laws. Men of every race and creed were declared equal as citizens. Taxes could be levied only according to the vote of the legislature. Imprisonment for debt was forbidden.

212. In 1682, **East Jersey** was sold by Carteret to William Penn and a number of partners. A famous Scotch Quaker, named Robert Barclay, was made governor, and many persecuted Scotch Presbyterians emigrated there.

213. The fact that the soil of the Jerseys was in the hands of so many proprietors was a great disadvantage to the people. They were very uncertain as to the title to their lands.

214. After long years of dispute between the proprietors and the people, the proprietors gave up their claims to the colony, and in 1702, the Jerseys were united into one **royal province**, under the name of New Jersey.

215. At the time this was done, New Jersey was placed under the same governor as New York; but New Jersey was allowed its own Assembly, elected by the people. In this condition New Jersey remained for thirty-six years, — from 1702 to 1738.

216. In 1738, the people petitioned the king to have a *separate* governor, and this was granted. The governor thus appointed was **Lewis Morris**, and the colony was at last wholly independent of its neighbors. New Jersey remained a royal province, ruled by governors appointed by the king, till the time of Independence.

217. **Progress.** — The soil of New Jersey was fertile, the province was free from danger of Indians; hence it grew rapidly and attained great prosperity.

The Quakers and the Scotch were the main elements in the early population of New Jersey. These people were frugal, industrious, and upright. Newark, now the largest city in the state, was founded in 1666 by Puritan settlers from Connecticut and Long Island.

218. The people of New Jersey were always distinguished for their love of liberty. They made a manful stand against all attempts of the royal governors to tyrannize over them. During the years immediately preceding the Revolution, they took an active part in all discussions relating to the Stamp Act and other public measures.

219. In 1746, the College of New Jersey was established at Elizabeth. It was removed to Princeton in 1757. It is now **Princeton College**. The **population** of New Jersey at the close of the colonial period was nearly 150,000.

PENNSYLVANIA

220. Founding of Pennsylvania. — Pennsylvania was intended from the first to be an asylum for the persecuted English **Quakers**. The Friends, or Quakers, as they were called, belonged to a religious society which arose in England about 1650. Its members were distinguished for the purity and simplicity of their religious belief and of their manners.



WILLIAM PENN AT THE AGE OF 52

221. The colony of Pennsylvania was founded by the celebrated **William Penn**, who was a member of this sect. Penn had become very much interested in American colonization, through his connection with the Quakers in New

Jersey. Learning that there was a large unoccupied territory between New Jersey and Maryland, he wished to purchase it for his persecuted religious brethren.

222. The English government had owed Penn's father, who was an admiral in the British navy, a large sum of money. Penn, in payment, took a grant for the territory spoken of. The date of this grant was 1681. The territory was named "Pennsylvania."¹

¹ Pennsylvania signifies Penn's Woodland. Writing to Robert Turner, January 5, 1681, Penn says: "The king would give it the name of Pennsylvania,

223. In the autumn of 1681, a large company of emigrants, mostly Quakers, left England for the new settlement. They were under the direction of William Markham, who was appointed deputy-governor. Penn himself came out the next year.

224. In 1682, Penn obtained from the duke of York a grant of what is now the state of **Delaware**. This region then went by the name of "The Territories."

There was a sparse population of Dutch and Swedes already settled in Pennsylvania and Delaware. Penn treated them so generously that the Swedes said the day he came was "the best day they had ever seen."

225. Penn's treatment of the Indians was just and noble. Soon after his arrival, he made his famous **treaty with the Indians**. Both parties lived up to this treaty; and as long as the Quaker control of the colony lasted, which was seventy years, there was unbroken harmony between them.¹ The Indians called Penn "Onas," and the highest praise they could give a white man was to say he was "like Onas."

226. About the end of the year 1682, Penn selected a place between the Schuylkill and Delaware rivers for the capital of his colony. He named it **Philadelphia**, which means *brotherly love*.

In this peaceful and loving manner was planted the great Commonwealth of Pennsylvania.

227. Important Facts. — First, the **government** of Pennsylvania was arranged by Penn. The province was to be ruled by a deputy-governor appointed by the proprietor, — Penn or his successors. The laws were to be made by a legislature

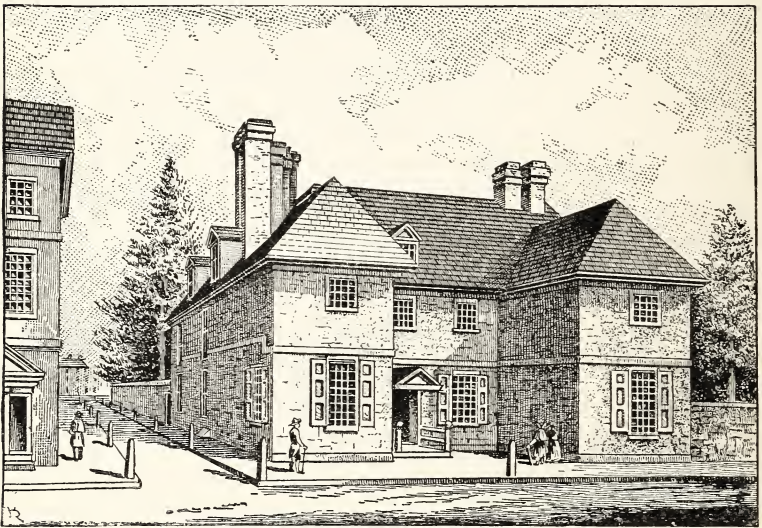
in honor of my father. I chose *Sylvania*, and they added *Penn* to it, and though I much opposed it, and went to the king to have it struck out and altered, he said it was past. Nor could twenty guineas move the under-secretary to vary the name, for I feared lest it should be looked on as a vanity in me."

¹ It was of this compact that Voltaire made his famous remark, "That was the only treaty which was never sworn to, and never broken." It has always been the practice of the members of the Society of Friends to observe the Christian injunction against oath-taking, as set forth in *Saint Matthew*, v. 33-37.

elected by the people. Besides this, Penn gave his colony a "charter of liberties."

228. In 1684, Penn returned to England. The condition of the colony was most happy. The government was fully organized, and the colony was growing rapidly. It had then twenty settled townships and a population of 7000.

229. Penn remained absent fifteen years. During this time dissensions arose in the colony.



PENN'S PHILADELPHIA HOUSE, 1699

First, in 1691, Delaware, which had been united with Pennsylvania, withdrew from the union. Penn gave it a separate deputy-governor, and, in 1703, he made it a distinct province.

Second, the persons left in authority began to quarrel.

Third, the people became unwilling to pay the rents by which Penn hoped to recover his large outlay on the colony.

230. In order to remove all the grievances of the people, Penn returned to the colony in 1699, and granted them a

new charter. This gave the people much greater power. It secured them the right of proposing laws, which they had not had before. It remained in force till the time of Independence. Penn then returned to England, where he died in 1718. He was one of the greatest lawgivers and benefactors of mankind.

231. Important Facts. — The wonderful growth and prosperity of Pennsylvania, during the time from Penn's death to the Revolutionary War, nearly sixty years, show the excellence of the institutions which the Quaker statesman had established.

232. The sons of Penn were the proprietors of the colony, and ruled it through deputy-governors. This proprietary government lasted down to the Revolution, when the Commonwealth bought the claims of Penn's sons for £ 130,000.

233. In religion all sects were allowed.¹ For a long time the Quakers were the most numerous, but others flourished. Each county had three officers called peacemakers.

234. The boundary between Pennsylvania and Maryland had caused much trouble for many years. It was finally settled in 1767, when two surveyors, Mason and Dixon, fixed the present boundary, long known as "Mason and Dixon's line."²

235. The colony had a thriving trade with England, the West Indies, and the southern colonies. For many years, tobacco was largely cultivated.

Newspapers were early established in Philadelphia, and Benjamin Franklin edited one of them. What is now the University of Pennsylvania was founded in Philadelphia in 1749. The population of Pennsylvania in 1776 was 370,000.

¹ The words of the constitution, or "Great Law," as it was called, are these: "No person who shall confess and acknowledge one Almighty God, and that professeth him or herself obliged in conscience to live peaceably and justly under the civil government, shall in any wise be molested or prejudiced for his or her conscientious persuasion or practice."

² In later times this boundary became famous, as dividing the seven of the original thirteen states that had done away with chattel slavery, from the six states that retained that system.

DELAWARE

236. Founding of Delaware. — It has been seen that the duke of York, in 1682, granted the territory of Delaware¹ to William Penn. Many years previous to this time, it had been partly settled by a colony of Swedes.² The Dutch of New Netherlands were offended at the Swedes being there, and made Delaware a part of their domain.

237. When New Netherlands passed into the hands of the duke of York and became New York, Delaware, of course, formed part of the duke's possessions. This explains how the duke of York was able to grant the territory of Delaware to Penn.

238. Important Facts. — The history of Delaware while it formed part of Pennsylvania has already been given.

In 1703, the people of Delaware, being dissatisfied with their connection with Pennsylvania, were allowed by Penn to establish a separate legislature. Delaware and Pennsylvania were never afterwards united, but both remained under the same governor.

The colony suffered little from wars with the Indians or with foreign powers.

239. The limited extent of the territory of Delaware gives the state a diminutive appearance on the map. But its soldiers were, during the Revolutionary War, among the bravest in defense of American liberty, and its statesmen have always exercised great influence.

Penn highly praised the good morals, excellent behavior, and patriotism of the people of Delaware.

¹ The state derives its name from Lord Delaware, governor of Virginia, who explored this region in the year 1610. See § 82.

² This was in 1638. Just as English settlers had styled their colonies New England, and Dutch settlers had founded New Netherlands, so the Swedes named this colony of theirs New Sweden.

MARYLAND

240. Founding of Maryland. — The persecution of the Puritans led to the settlement of Massachusetts, and of the Quakers, to the settlement of Pennsylvania. In like manner, the religious persecution of English Catholics led to the colonizing of Maryland.

241. The leader in the plan of settling Maryland was George Calvert, **Lord Baltimore**, a Roman Catholic nobleman of lofty and generous mind. In 1632, he received from King Charles I. a grant of a fine region lying north of the Potomac. It received the name of Maryland.¹

Before the business was completed, Lord Baltimore died. His son, **Cecil**, succeeded him as second Lord Baltimore, and became proprietor of Maryland.

242. In the charter for the province given to Lord Baltimore, King Charles established a constitution for the province. It was very liberal. It provided that the laws for the colonists should be made by an Assembly of their own choosing, and that the people were to pay no taxes to the Crown. Lord Baltimore allowed great liberty of religious belief.



CECIL CALVERT, LORD BALTIMORE

243. We must now see how Maryland was first settled. In the fall of 1633, **Leonard Calvert**, a brother of the second Lord Baltimore, sailed from England with about two hundred settlers. These were mostly English Catholic gentlemen with their families and servants. They came in two vessels called *The Ark* and *The Dove*.

¹ The province was called Maryland in honor of the queen, Henrietta Maria, who was a Catholic.

244. The emigrants sailed to the Potomac, bought of the Indians a little village on the northern bank of that river near its mouth, and settled down to cultivating the Indian fields. They raised a crop of corn that same year. They called the village and settlement St. Marys.

The settlement was begun in March, 1634. New settlers immediately commenced to pour in, and thus was founded the Commonwealth of Maryland.

245. **Important Facts.** — Maryland was early involved in several disturbances. The most annoying was **Clayborne's Rebellion**. Clayborne was a Virginian, who had obtained, before Calvert brought his colony, a royal license to trade in the country. Clayborne would not submit to Lord Baltimore's rule. He several times raised armed parties, who had fights with the authorities. His conduct kept the colony in trouble for ten years.

246. The subject of **religion** led to another difficulty. With a very noble spirit, the Assembly of Maryland passed, in 1649, a law called the "Toleration Act," which provided that all Christian denominations should be tolerated in Maryland. There was no such religious liberty in any other colony except that of Rhode Island.

247. Notwithstanding the liberality with which they had been treated, the Protestants of Maryland after a time obtained control of the legislature, and passed a law disfranchising Catholics. They also refused to recognize the proprietary claims of the Calvert family.

248. The result was **civil war** in 1655. The Catholics were defeated. Maryland society was in confusion and turmoil till 1660, when peace, freedom of conscience, and all the old liberties were restored.

249. In 1662, **Charles Calvert**, the third Lord Baltimore, was sent out as governor by his father, Cecil Calvert, second

Lord Baltimore. His wise and noble government helped the colony greatly. On the death of his father in 1675 he became proprietor of Maryland.

250. In 1689, a second religious war broke out. The Protestants, under the lead of a designing man named Coode, seized the government and oppressed the Catholics, who now formed but a minority of the people. The Church of England was then established.

251. In 1691, King William made Maryland a royal province. It remained so for twenty-five years. In 1716, the proprietary government was restored under the fourth Lord Baltimore, **Benedict Leonard Calvert**, son of Charles Calvert, who had become a Protestant, and it so continued till the time of Independence.

252. Progress.—From the beginning of the eighteenth century, Maryland's growth was very rapid. In 1700, the **population** was 30,000. In 1699, the capital was shifted from St. Marys to **Annapolis**. Free **schools** and public libraries were established by law in all the parishes. In the year 1745, the first newspaper was established.

253. Like all the other colonies, Maryland had **slaves**. But the negroes, as well as the indentured white servants, were treated with great humanity.

254. Tobacco was one of the staples of Maryland, and long served as the currency. The **commerce** of Maryland was very considerable, and **Baltimore**, founded in 1729, became an important commercial town. It was named in honor of the original proprietor.

255. In 1750, the **boundary line** between Pennsylvania and Maryland was determined by Mason and Dixon, and thus a long and troublesome dispute was ended. (See § 234.)

256. The **population** of Maryland was intelligent and freedom-loving. In 1776, it numbered 220,000.

NORTH CAROLINA

257. Founding of the Carolinas.—The first settlement of Carolina was made by emigrants from Virginia. Between 1640 and 1650 a considerable number of Virginians removed southward and settled in the country lying north of Albemarle Sound.

258. The reason of their emigration was, that at this early period, the Virginians, being zealous Churchmen, or Episcopalians, were disposed to persecute persons of other denominations. The settlers found a rich soil and fine climate, and lived happily without any government.

259. In 1663, King Charles II. gave Lord Clarendon and others a grant of all the land between Virginia and Florida. This territory received the name of "Carolina."¹

The proprietors made a liberal government for the little plantation on Albemarle Sound. It was called **Albemarle Colony**.

260. In 1665, a company from Barbadoes made a settlement near the mouth of Cape Fear River. This took the name of **Clarendon Colony**. Both these settlements were within the present limits of North Carolina; but that name was not yet given to the province.

261. In 1670, a number of English emigrants sent out by the proprietors, under William Sayle, made a settlement on the south side of Ashley River. This was Old Charleston. The settlement received the name of the **Carteret Colony**. It was the first settlement within the present limits of South Carolina.

262. Important Facts.—The English noblemen who were the proprietors of Carolina engaged a famous philosopher

¹ In honor of the English King Charles (Latin, *Carolus*).

named Locke to draw up a plan of government for the province. He called it the **Grand Model**. But the "Grand Model" was not at all suited to plain people living in the woods of Carolina. It was tried for some years, and then had to be given up.¹

263. The people of the northern settlements suffered so severely from different impositions, that in 1677, under the lead of John Culpeper, they made a revolt. They took possession of the government, chose their own officers, and for some years things went on very smoothly.

264. In 1683, the proprietors sent out Seth Sothel as governor. He was an unprincipled man, and plundered and oppressed the people for six years. At last, the people again took the law into their own hands and banished him.

265. After this there was a great improvement. The proprietors allowed the colonists to choose their own representatives to a colonial Assembly. A number of wise and good governors also were sent out.

266. Important Facts. — North Carolina received an excellent class of settlers. In 1707, a large company of French Protestants settled on the river Trent. In 1710, there was an immigration of persecuted German Lutherans.

267. In 1711, the colony was afflicted with an **Indian massacre**. The Tuscaroras went on the warpath, and murdered one hundred and thirty settlers. Troops from South Carolina

¹ This curious "model" proposed nothing less than the establishment, ready-made, of aristocratical institutions in a new and unsettled territory. The Carolina lands were to be parceled out in fee amongst a few favored lords; the great mass of men, by whose toil this wilderness was to be cleared, tilled, and peopled, were expected to content themselves with such scanty privileges as an agricultural tenantry can anywhere claim. But the philosopher who devised this scheme did not sufficiently consider that men bold enough to play the part of pioneers must also be bold enough to hold what they have so hardly won.

were sent to their relief. They defeated the Indians, capturing eight hundred of them. The rest migrated northward into New York.¹

268. In 1729, the king of England bought from the proprietors the whole province of Carolina. He divided the northern settlement from the southern, and called them respectively **North Carolina** and **South Carolina**. Each remained a royal province, with a government and legislature of its own, to the end of colonial times.

269. Progress. — The real prosperity of North Carolina began about the commencement of the eighteenth century. Then large numbers of Scotch, Swiss, Germans, and North-of-Ireland people settled there.

270. It was about this time that the interior of the country began to be explored, and was found to be much more fertile than the coast.

Near the end of the last century, cotton planting had become profitable, and a good deal of cotton was raised in the upland part of North Carolina. The coast country, however, possessed great pine forests, and from these lumber and turpentine were produced in abundance.

271. The mode of life in early times was very favorable to the growth of a manly, independent spirit. It was not as favorable to **education**. It was a long time before there were many schools or churches. The first printing-press was set up in 1754.

272. About the middle of the eighteenth century a great stream of immigration flowed into North Carolina from Pennsylvania and other Northern colonies. In 1776, it had a **population** of 260,000.

¹ In New York these Indians joined themselves with the famous "Five Nations," or Iroquois, who were thenceforward known as the Six Nations.

SOUTH CAROLINA

273. Important Facts. — It has been seen that the first settlement in **South Carolina** was made at **Old Charleston** in 1670.

It must be remembered also that South Carolina and North Carolina were one province till 1729. There are some facts in the history of South Carolina previous to 1729 which are to be learned.

274. The settlement in South Carolina soon attracted a large number of very desirable inhabitants. There were Hollanders from New York; there was a large company of Huguenots, or French Protestants; there were many people from England and Scotland, both Puritans and cavaliers.

275. One of the early governors, Sir John Yeamans, brought from Barbadoes a number of **African slaves**. As South Carolina was from the first a planting colony, slave labor had a rapid growth.

276. The **government** of the colony was in the hands of a governor chosen by the proprietors. The people elected their own legislature.

277. In 1680, the capital was removed from Old Charleston to the peninsula between Ashley and Cooper rivers. Here **Charleston** was built.¹

278. In 1686, Governor Colleton oppressed the people, and they refused to submit. This led to a rebellion. The governor was deposed and exiled.

279. In 1694, the culture of **rice** was begun. The captain of a ship from Madagascar gave the governor of South Carolina a bag of seed rice. He said he had seen rice growing in the eastern countries, where it was considered excellent food. The

¹ Charleston was named in honor of Charles II.

governor divided the present among his friends. They planted the rice; it increased wonderfully, and so became a main staple of South Carolina.

280. The fact that the southern border of South Carolina touched the Spanish possessions of Florida caused several conflicts between the South Carolinians and the Spaniards.

In 1702, during the time of the war between England and Spain, Governor Moore of South Carolina led an expedition by sea **against St. Augustine**, in Florida. Besides this, a force of twelve hundred men advanced overland. The operations were badly planned, and the enterprise failed. The expenses were heavy, and led to the first issue of paper money.

281. The people blamed Moore so much that, after his return, he marched against the Appalachian Indians, who were allies of the Spaniards. In this expedition he was successful in clearing out the Indians, taking many of them captive, and destroying their villages.

282. In 1706, a fleet of Spanish and French vessels attempted to **capture Charleston**. The people made a gallant defense, and the enemy was repulsed with a loss of several hundred men.

283. In 1715, a general **Indian war** broke out. It was started by the Yamassees, who were joined by all the Indian tribes from Cape Fear to the Alabama. The savages swooped down on the frontier settlements, murdering the inhabitants. Governor Craven, with twelve hundred men, met their main body and completely defeated them. The half-ruined tribes then withdrew into Florida.

284. The people were put to great expense by these wars; but the proprietors refused to pay any part of the loss, and also taxed the colonists severely. The people, in 1719, threw off all allegiance to the proprietors, and elected Colonel Moore governor.

285. The matter was taken before the British government. At last, in 1729, the king of England bought the claims of the proprietors, and Carolina became a **royal province**. It was then that the separation between North and South Carolina took place.

286. Progress. — From 1729 to the end of colonial times, South Carolina was ruled by a governor appointed by the king, and an Assembly elected by the colonists.

287. Prosperity now blessed the colony. The principal staples were rice, indigo, tar, and deer-skins.

The culture of **indigo** was introduced into South Carolina in 1741, and the export of this product grew to be of very great value, amounting in the year 1775 to nearly a million dollars. Rice finally became by far the most valuable of these products.¹

Charleston rapidly became an important commercial port.

288. Slavery was a great feature in South Carolina. So many negroes were brought there, that, in 1734, they outnumbered the whites by five to one. A large proportion of the slaves were engaged in rice culture in the lowlands along the coast.

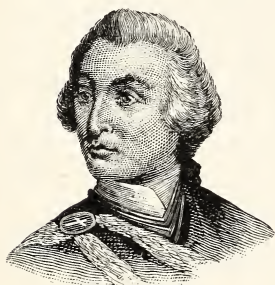
289. The rice-planters of South Carolina formed a wealthy and cultivated class. They sent their sons to be educated in England. Thus a large number of young men of fine culture and chivalric spirit grew up, and were ready to take an important part in the coming struggle for American Independence. The love of liberty was strong amongst the colonists, and they took early measures to resist any invasion of their rights.

290. The **population** of South Carolina in 1776 was 180,000.

¹ No cotton worth speaking of was planted until near the close of the last century.

GEORGIA

291. Founding of Georgia. — Georgia was the thirteenth and last of the colonies settled before the Declaration of Independence. It was founded by a company of benevolent men, who proposed to establish a refuge for the poor and the persecuted. These men, called "Trustees," obtained from King George II. a grant of the territory between the Savannah and Altamaha rivers. It received the name of "Georgia," in honor of the king.



OGLETHORPE

292. James Oglethorpe, a noble soldier and member of Parliament, was the man who proposed this benevolent plan.

In 1732, he led a company of one hundred and twenty emigrants to America. He ascended the Savannah River, and, in February, 1733, was commenced a settlement called **Savannah**. A treaty of friendship was made with the Indians. Thus was founded the colony of Georgia.

293. Important Facts. — The increase of the population of Georgia was at first very slow, but about the middle of the eighteenth century it grew quite rapidly. Large companies of thrifty and intelligent Scotch, Swiss, and Germans came over. They were attracted by the liberal grants of land made them by the trustees.

294. With one of the early parties came two young clergymen, **John** and **Charles Wesley**, famous afterwards as the founders of the denomination of Methodists. Charles Wesley acted for some time as secretary to Governor Oglethorpe. A few years later, another famous preacher, George Whitefield, came from England to this colony.

295. The trustees at first made some peculiar regulations, which were distasteful to the colonists. The use of rum was prohibited, and slavery was declared unlawful.

296. The condition of the colony was rather backward for a number of years. One cause of this was the nearness of Georgia to the Spaniards in Florida.

297. England declared war against Spain in 1739, and in the next year Oglethorpe made an **invasion** of Florida. He laid siege to St. Augustine, but he could not take the fort, and hence was compelled to return.

298. Two years later, in 1742, there was a **Spanish invasion** of Georgia. The Spaniards came from Havana with a fleet of thirty-six vessels and three thousand men. Oglethorpe's whole force was eight hundred. He managed his military operations with much skill, avoided a general engagement, was successful in some skirmishes, and finally, by stratagem, defeated and drove off the invaders.

299. In 1743, Oglethorpe having returned to England, the trustees established a government by a president and council, but the colony languished. The prohibition of rum cut off trade with the West Indies, and colonists preferred to settle in South Carolina, where they could have negroes to cultivate their plantations.

300. In 1752, the trustees of Georgia surrendered the charter to the king. Georgia then became a **royal province**.

301. A general Assembly was established in 1775, and in 1763, the land between the Altamaha and St. Marys rivers was added to the province.

302. **Progress.** — When Georgia became a royal province all the prohibitions imposed by the trustees were removed. From that time, Georgia advanced rapidly in population and wealth. Her institutions became in all respects like those of the other Southern colonies.

TOPICAL REVIEW

I. OF THE FOUNDING OF THE COLONIES

1. VIRGINIA. — Jamestown Colony founded **1607**. Settled by **English emigrants**.
2. MASSACHUSETTS. — Plymouth Colony founded **1620**; Massachusetts Bay Colony, **1628–30**. Settled by **English Puritans**.
3. NEW HAMPSHIRE. — Founded **1622**. Settled by colonists from **England and Massachusetts**.
4. MARYLAND. — Founded **1634**. Settled by persecuted **Catholics from England**.
5. CONNECTICUT. — Connecticut Colony founded **1635**; Saybrook Colony, **1636**; New Haven Colony, **1638**. Settled by **emigrants from Massachusetts**.
6. RHODE ISLAND. — Providence Plantation founded **1636**; Rhode Island Plantation, **1638**. Settled by persecuted **New Englanders**.
7. NEW YORK. — Founded **1623**, by the Dutch under rule of the Dutch West India Company. Came under the English rule **1664**. Settled by **Dutch, New-Englanders, and emigrants**.
8. NEW JERSEY. — Part of New Netherlands. Fell under **English rule** at the same time as New York. Settled much like New York.
9. PENNSYLVANIA. — Founded **1682**. Settled by persecuted **English Quakers**.
10. DELAWARE. — Included at first in Penn's province. Settled by **Quakers**; previously by some **Swedes**.
11. NORTH CAROLINA. — Both North and South Carolina at first included in one, called "Carolina." Albemarle County Colony (in North Carolina) founded **1663**. Made a separate colony **1729**. Settled by **emigrants from Virginia**, and afterwards by **emigrants from Europe**.
12. SOUTH CAROLINA. — At first same as above. Carteret County Colony founded **1670**. Settled by **English emigrants and French Huguenots**.
13. GEORGIA. — Founded **1733**, by **English** colonists under Oglethorpe; afterwards peopled by **Scotch, Swiss, etc.**

II. OF COLONIAL GOVERNMENTS AND CHARTERS

Nature of the Colonial Governments. — The Thirteen Colonies, each and all, from the time of their founding down to the Declaration of Independence in 1776, were under the dominion of the crown of England. But there were several different kinds of **government** in the colonies, and various colonies, from time to time, changed their government. The kinds of government were:—

1. The government of a **commercial corporation**, as the London Company, which ruled over Virginia in early times.

2. **Proprietary** government, the rule being under some proprietor or proprietary to whom the king granted the province. Pennsylvania under William Penn, and Maryland under Lord Baltimore, are examples of proprietary government.

3. **Royal** government, or the government of the king of England through some royal governor appointed by the crown. Almost all the colonies were, sooner or later, under royal government.

4. **Charter** government was the government of the colonies by a charter or written instrument, given by the king, and granting certain political rights and privileges.

5. There were some colonies founded by the people themselves, without the authority of king or company or proprietor. Example, Plymouth Colony. This kind of government may be called government by **voluntary association**.

1. **VIRGINIA.**—Government of a **commercial corporation**, the London Company. The London Company had a **charter** from the king. In 1624, the London Company was dissolved, and Virginia became a **royal province**. During seven years, from 1677 to 1684, Virginia was a **proprietary** government. From 1684 to the Revolution, it was a **royal province**. Virginia was first allowed to elect a colonial legislature in 1619.

2. **MASSACHUSETTS.**—Plymouth Colony governed by **voluntary association**. Massachusetts Bay Colony governed by a Puritan company that obtained a patent from the council for New England (old "Plymouth Company") and a **charter** from the king. In 1686, James II. annulled the charter, and made Massachusetts a **royal province**. It continued such to the end of the colonial period, though in 1692 King William gave Massachusetts a new **charter**.

3. **NEW HAMPSHIRE.**—At first a **proprietary** government, under Gorges and Mason, ruled by agents of the proprietors, or by magistrates chosen by the people. In 1641, the people placed them-

selves under Massachusetts. In 1680, New Hampshire became a **royal province**. Subsequently it was alternately under Massachusetts and separated. From 1741 onwards it was a **royal province**.

4. MARYLAND. — A **proprietary** government under Lord Baltimore and his heirs. In 1691, King William took away from Lord Baltimore his proprietary rights, and Maryland became a **royal province**, and so remained for over twenty years. In 1716, **proprietary** government restored in the person of the fourth Lord Baltimore. This lasted till Independence. Maryland enjoyed a **charter**.

5. CONNECTICUT. — Saybrook Colony under **proprietary** rule, and so remained till united with Connecticut Colony, in 1644. Connecticut Colony and New Haven Colony both had government by **voluntary association**. Connecticut Colony obtained a **royal charter** in 1662. This united New Haven Colony with Connecticut. The charter allowed the people to elect their own governor and legislature. Under Andros, 1687, charter government destroyed, but revived by King William. From this time on, Connecticut was governed under its liberal **charter**.

6. RHODE ISLAND. — Governed at first by **voluntary association**. In 1664, Roger Williams obtained a **charter** from Parliament. In 1663, Charles II. granted Rhode Island a new charter. This allowed the people to elect their own governor and Assembly. Rhode Island lost her independence under the Andros rule; but, after that, was governed under her **charter**.

7. NEW YORK. — At first **proprietary** government under governors appointed by the duke of York. New York received no charter. It was allowed a legislature in 1683. When the duke of York became king of England (called James II.), New York was, of course, a **royal province**. It remained such till the time of Independence.

8. NEW JERSEY. — At first **proprietary** government under Berkeley and Carteret. Then divided into East and West Jersey, and ruled by different proprietors, West Jersey being under Quaker rule. Subsequently New Jersey had various political changes till 1702, when the proprietors gave up their claims, and New Jersey became a **royal province**, which it continued to be till the time of Independence.

9. PENNSYLVANIA. — **Proprietary** government under William Penn, who gave the people a **charter**. The charter allowed the people to elect members of the Assembly, and also to choose the governor's council. The governor was appointed by the proprietor. In 1692, the

proprietary rights of Penn were taken away for a brief period, and Pennsylvania was under the governor of **New York**. The **proprietary** government was then restored, and continued under Penn's sons till the time of Independence.

10. DELAWARE. — Included at first in Penn's province and under the same **proprietary** government. Delaware was allowed a separate legislature in 1703; but was under the same **governor** as Pennsylvania down to the close of the colonial period.

11. NORTH CAROLINA. — North and South Carolina under one **proprietary** government till 1729. In 1729, both became **royal provinces**, and so continued till the time of Independence. The king appointed the **governors** for each, but allowed the people to elect their own **Assemblies**.

12. SOUTH CAROLINA. — **Proprietary** government, as mentioned above, till 1729; after that, a **royal province**.

13. GEORGIA. — At first under the government of **trustees** of a company that obtained a grant of the soil of Georgia for twenty-one years. The government may, therefore, be considered **proprietary**. In 1752, Georgia became a **royal province**, and continued such till Independence.

III. OF COLONIAL PROGRESS

1. The **population** of the colonies was made up of a great variety of elements. England furnished the largest number of colonists; but Holland, Sweden, France, Scotland, Ireland, and Germany, were well represented in the domain which was to form the United States.

2. The **love of liberty** was strong in all the colonies. Indeed, the desire of civil and religious freedom was the strongest motive in bringing the colonists to this country.

3. **Slavery** was introduced in Virginia in 1620. It soon found its way into all the colonies. North and South were equally responsible for slavery; because, while slave labor was more profitable on the Southern plantation than at the North, slave importation was profitable to the Northern and New England shipmasters, and they went largely into the traffic in negroes. But the chief promoters of the slave-trade were British merchants and shippers.

4. Almost all the colonies were more or less troubled with **Indian wars**. Virginia had the two massacres of 1622 and 1644. Connecticut

had its Pequot war in 1637. Massachusetts had the war of King Philip in 1675. The Dutch of New York suffered from the Indians from 1640 to 1643. The Carolinas and Georgia also had their wars. New Jersey, Maryland, Pennsylvania, and Delaware were little or not at all troubled by Indian wars. The colonists invariably got the better of the Indians in the end.

5. **Religion** in the colonies presented itself in every variety of denomination. Maryland, which was founded as a **Catholic** colony, finally had a majority of Protestants. The other colonies were almost entirely Protestant. The **Church of England** was established in Virginia, Maryland, and the Carolinas. In New England, the colonists were **Calvinists** in doctrine and **Congregational** in discipline. The leading denomination in New York was the **Dutch Reformed**. The first **Baptist** church in America was established by Roger Williams, at Providence. Pennsylvania, Delaware, West Jersey, and Rhode Island, were **Quaker** colonies. The different sects were often at variance with each other. The New England Puritans imprisoned Baptists and executed Quakers. The Virginia Churchmen imprisoned Quakers and Baptists and banished Puritans. Before the close of the colonial period religious **persecution** had entirely ceased.

6. All the colonies had more or less experience of **British oppression**. Two kinds of oppression were particularly experienced,—the commercial oppression of the “Navigation Acts” and the oppression of royal governors. The royal governors were, in many cases, unprincipled men, who sought to get rich at the expense of the colonists. These oppressions had one good effect,—they made the colonists jealous of their rights and liberties.

7. The leading business of the colonists was **agriculture**. The restrictions imposed by the British government bore heavily on colonial **trade** and **manufactures**; but, in spite of these, they flourished to a good degree. It has been noticed, that in most of the colonies, **education** received proper attention. The first **printing-press** in America was set up at Cambridge in 1639. The first **newspaper** printed in America was the *Boston News-Letter*, issued in 1704. Among great thinkers may be mentioned **Jonathan Edwards**, as a metaphysician, and **Benjamin Franklin**, as a scientific discoverer. The **population** of the colonies at the close of the colonial period was nearly 3,000,000.

THE FRENCH WARS

303. French Explorations. — About the time when the first English colonies were founded on the Atlantic coast (1607–1620), France began to establish colonies to the north, in Acadia and Canada. (See § 55.)

304. While the various English colonies were growing, the French, on the St. Lawrence, were growing too. They gradually pushed westward. They established missions, trading-posts, and forts along the chain of Great Lakes. They penetrated the Mississippi Valley. They finally claimed that valley from the source of the Mississippi to its mouth in the Gulf of Mexico. They said it was a part of **New France**.

305. The presence of two rival nations on American soil made it certain that sometime the two would come into collision. It was sure there would be a contest for the mastery of the continent.¹

Such a contest *did* come. It was fought through four wars.

1. The war of 1689, called “King William’s War.”
2. The war of 1702, called “Queen Anne’s War.”
3. The war of 1745, called “King George’s War.”
4. The war of 1754, called the “French and Indian War.”

The last was the most important. But they were all **French and Indian wars**.

¹ The Indian tribes were everywhere mutually hostile. The English and French who had come amongst these savages were also hereditary opponents of each other. Under these circumstances, what was to be expected is what actually happened. The whites availed themselves of savage feuds to secure alliances against each other. This served remoter ends than those contemplated by the English and French. It prevented any action of the Indians in common against the European intruders. Such a union would at any time have been injurious to the colonists, and if it had been directed against the feeble settlements of early colonial times could hardly have failed to destroy them; and this must have discouraged similar ventures for many years thereafter. Two Indian leaders — Philip, in 1675, and Pontiac, in 1763 — succeeded in confederating various tribes for common action against the whites, and the two wars that resulted were the most dangerous of the native uprisings.

306. We must first look at French explorations. Between 1609 and 1616, **Champlain** made western explorations, in which he discovered Lake Champlain and Lake Huron, and entered northern New York with a party of Canadian Indians to fight the Iroquois.¹ Other explorers followed Champlain.

307. The principal French explorers were **Jesuit missionaries**. There was a wonderful romance in their wanderings and labors to convert the savages and explore the country. In the year 1634, we find these zealous men as far westward as Lake Huron, where they had established missions.

308. In 1668, the mission of St. Marys was established on the southern shore of the outlet of Lake Superior.

In 1673, a Jesuit missionary named **Marquette**, with a trader named **Joliet**, and five other Frenchmen, started out to reach a "great river" in the far West, of which much had been heard. This was the Mississippi.

The explorers reached the Mississippi, and sailed down it to the mouth of the Arkansas. This may be called the second discovery of the Mississippi.

309. In 1679, a bold adventurer, **La Salle**, built a bark on Lake Erie, and sailed through the Great Lakes as far as Green Bay. From there La Salle, with a few companions, in a birch canoe, went up Lake Michigan, to the mouth of the St. Joseph. They crossed to a branch of the Illinois River, down which they went, and made their way back to Lake Ontario.

310. In their absence, **Father Hennepin** and another priest had gone down the Illinois River to the Mississippi. From here they went up the Mississippi as far as the Falls of St. Anthony.

¹ Champlain gained an easy victory over the parties of Iroquois. It was no wonder, since they had never before heard the report of firearms. But this victory of Champlain's was destined to prove ruinous to French interests in America, for it brought the most powerful of all the Indian tribes into alliance with the English colonists.

311. In 1682, La Salle, in a barge, descended the Mississippi from the mouth of the Illinois River to the Gulf of Mexico. La Salle took possession of the country for the king of France, and named it **Louisiana** in his honor.

312. A year or two afterwards, La Salle brought a company of people from France to make a colony at the mouth of the Mississippi. The ship could not find the mouth of the river, so the party landed in Texas. This colony was a failure. La Salle was murdered.



LA SALLE

313. It was just at this time, 1689, that the first war between the English and French broke out. The population of all New France at this period was about 12,000, — one twentieth as large as the population of the English colonies.

KING WILLIAM'S WAR

314. In 1689, war broke out in Europe between England and France. The contest extended to the American colonies.

The war was begun by the Eastern Indians, who were allies of the French. They fell upon the settlements in New Hampshire and Maine. They took **Dover**, New Hampshire, destroyed it, and carried many of the inhabitants prisoners to Canada. Port Pemaquid, Maine, was also captured, and most of the inhabitants of **Salmon Falls** and **Casco Bay**, Maine, were massacred.

315. The settlements in northern New York were next attacked by a war-party of French and Indians from Montreal. One of the cruelest acts of the war was the burning of the village of Schenectady, New York. The French and Indians entered the town on the night of Feb. 8, 1690, and formed a line within the palisades and around the houses. The inhabitants were awakened by the war-whoop of the savages and

found their village in flames. The doors of the houses were battered down and many of the inhabitants were slain or made captives. Some fled half clad over the snow to Albany where, half frozen by exposure to the cold, they found shelter.¹

316. These atrocities made the colonists resolve to attack the enemy in return. A plan of campaign was made. It was resolved to send a fleet and an army from Boston to attack **Quebec**. At the same time it was designed that nine hundred men, to be raised in Connecticut and New York, should march against **Montreal**.

317. While preparing for this invasion, Massachusetts, in May, 1690, sent a fleet, under Sir William Phips, to Acadia (now Nova Scotia). The result of this expedition was the capture of **Port Royal**.

Immediately after this, the plan of **invading Canada** was begun. The troops marched overland by way of the Hudson and Lake Champlain; but they got no further than Lake Champlain. The officers quarreled, the provisions gave out, and the expedition returned, — a failure.

318. The naval part of the expedition was equally unsuccessful. Quebec proved too strong to be attacked. These were the principal facts in King William's War, though for four or five years more the New England settlements suffered much from the Indians. In 1697, **Haverhill**, Massachusetts, was attacked, and forty persons were killed or made captives.

319. In 1697, the **treaty of Ryswick** put an end to King William's War. It was agreed that each side was to have the same territory as before the war.

¹ At first, the savages inflicted indiscriminate slaughter upon their prisoners. If, after an attack on an outlying settlement, the Indians were hotly pursued, their victims were hastily despatched as hindrances to the retreat. In other cases the captives were reserved for death at the stake. Later on, the savage found that he could put his prisoners to more profitable use by holding them for ransom. As a result of this, many whites were sooner or later restored to their homes and friends.

QUEEN ANNE'S WAR

320. The peace of Ryswick was broken in five years by a war between England on one side, and France and Spain on the other. It soon involved the colonies.

In this war, New England was the principal sufferer. New York was spared, because the French, having made a truce with the Iroquois, or Five Nations, resolved not to invade their territory.

321. This contest took the same form as the previous one. The French from Canada and their Indian allies in Maine laid waste the frontier settlements of New England.

322. In 1704, **Deerfield**, in Massachusetts, was burned, and its inhabitants were killed or taken prisoners to Canada. So active were the Indians, that large rewards were offered for the scalps of red men.

323. The colonists again determined to invade **Acadia**. In 1707, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and New Hampshire fitted out an expedition against **Port Royal**. The expedition was not successful. It was renewed in 1710, and Port Royal was taken. The result of this conquest was that Acadia, under the name of Nova Scotia, became a British province.

324. In 1711, the plan of invading **Canada**, which had failed in the previous war, was renewed. An English fleet, with a New England force, sailed for **Quebec**. The fleet was wrecked at the mouth of the St. Lawrence.

325. At the same time, a column started overland to march against **Montreal** by way of Lake Champlain. Soon after starting, this force heard of the failure of the fleet. In consequence of this, the expedition was then abandoned. The whole plan was a failure.

326. Queen Anne's War was ended by the **treaty of Utrecht**, in 1713. The only gain to England was the winning of Acadia.

FRENCH POSSESSIONS IN THE WEST

327. It has been seen, that at the beginning of the first French War (King William's War), the French had extended their missions and trading-posts along the Great Lakes, that Marquette and La Salle had explored the Mississippi and called the region Louisiana, and that a French colony had been attempted on the Gulf of Mexico, but had failed.

328. French progress in settlement was stopped by King William's War, but at its close the efforts were renewed.

329. In 1699, Iberville, a Canadian, carried a colony from France to Biloxi, the first European settlement within the present state of Mississippi. In 1700, he brought another colony of Canadians. In 1702, he moved most of the Biloxi settlers to Mobile, the first settlement within the present state of Alabama. Mobile was made the capital of all Louisiana.

330. In 1712, Crozat established a colony at Fort Rosalie, which was the beginning of Natchez.

331. In 1716, Louisiana was put under the control of what was called the **Mississippi Company**. Bienville was appointed governor. Under the patronage of this company several thousand French settlers moved to Louisiana.

In 1718, Bienville founded the city of **New Orleans**, which was made the capital of Louisiana.

332. French progress in the Mississippi Valley was slow, but they were firmly establishing their power in the Northwest. They built Fort Niagara in 1728, Crown Point in 1731, and a post at Vincennes soon after.

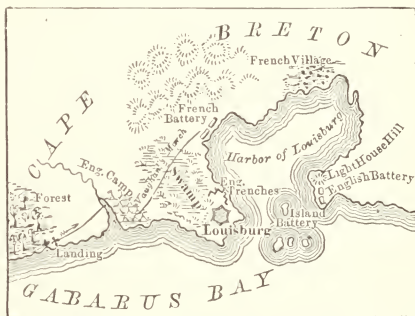
333. By 1750 the French had control of all the water-routes leading from the Great Lakes to the Valley of the Mississippi. They had more than sixty military stations from Lake Ontario by way of Green Bay and the Illinois River, the Wabash and Maumee rivers, down the Mississippi to New Orleans.

KING GEORGE'S WAR

334. French progress was interrupted, in 1744, by a third war, called "King George's War."

There was only one important event in this war, — the capture, by the British, of **Louisburg**, on Cape Breton Island. Louisburg was a very strong fort, and it was very important to the French, because it guarded the entrance to the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

A force of thirty-two hundred men, consisting of fishermen, farmers, mechanics, and lumbermen, under William Pepperell, sailed from Boston in April, 1745. Arriving at Canso early in April, they found the coast of Cape Breton so clogged with ice that not a vessel could enter the harbors. Their spirits were raised, however, by the arrival of four ships of war under Commander Warren. More ships of war soon arrived, and they were soon ready to blockade Louisburg.



SIEGE OF LOUISBURG

The landing was made at **Gabarus Bay**, and the siege was immediately begun. It lasted forty-nine days. Everything was ready for a grand land and naval attack when a fleet with military supplies designed for the garrison was captured by the British. This so discouraged the French commander that he surrendered, June 17, 1745. Thus the English gained Louisburg, but they were not to hold it very long.

335. King George's War was closed in 1748 by the **treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle**. It was agreed that both sides should restore the places taken. Accordingly, Louisburg was given back to the French.

FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR

336. The three wars which had been waged between the French and English grew out of disputes in Europe. But in 1754, was begun a war, much greater than the others, that grew out of an American question. The question was whether the French or the English should be supreme on the American continent.

337. The progress of the French in the Northwest and the Mississippi Valley has been described. Their design was to found a great empire in the territory watered by the St. Lawrence, the Great Lakes, and the Mississippi River.

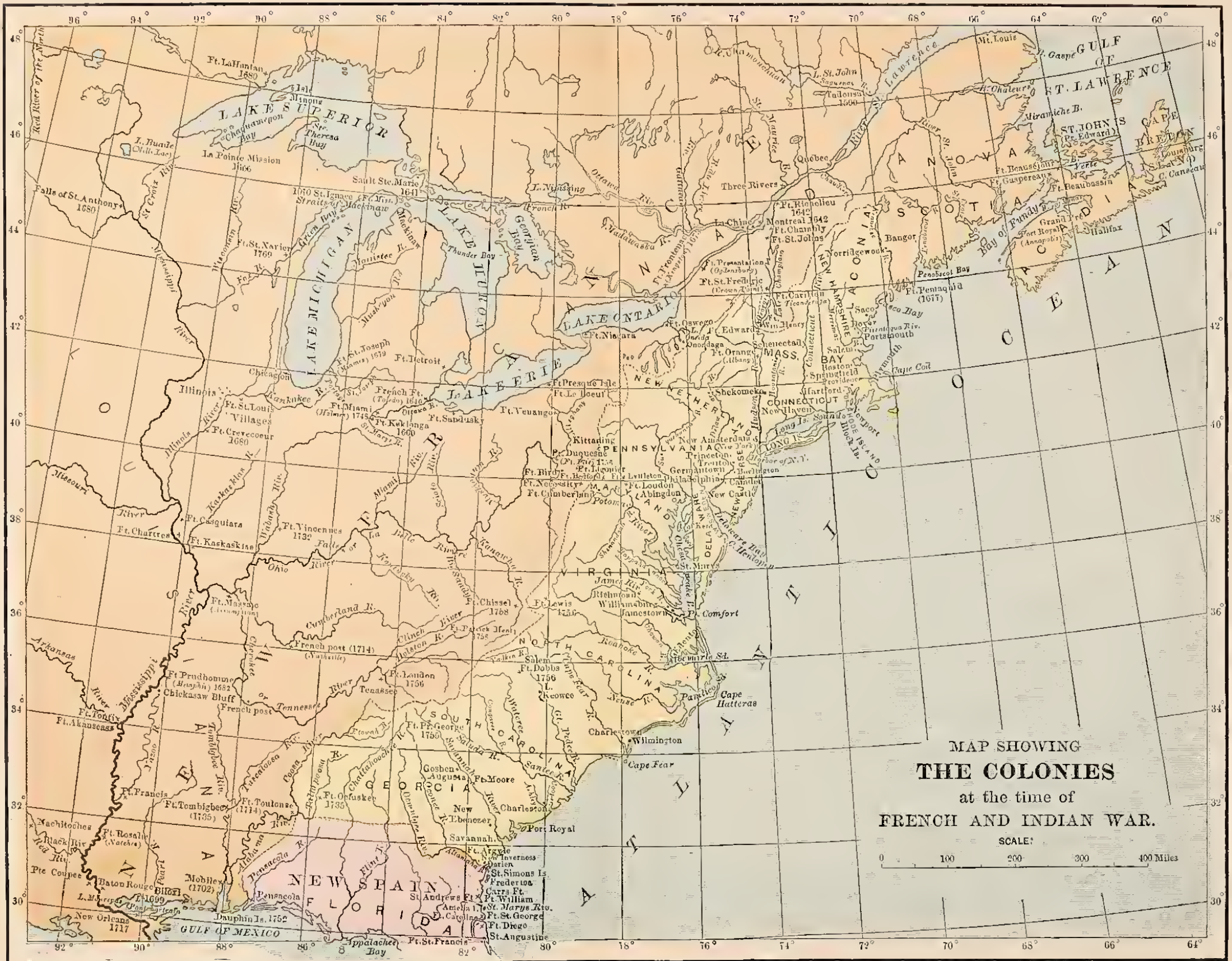
338. The French claimed this vast territory by right of discovery and settlement. The English claimed it also by right of **Cabot's Discovery** of North America. But the French had formed settlements in the Northwest and down the Mississippi, and this made their claim stronger.

339. The French had built a line of about sixty fortified posts. Their wish was to confine the English to the belt of land along the Atlantic coast, while *they* were to hold all west of the Alleghanies, and control the valuable Indian traffic.

340. Up to 1752, the English had attempted no settlements west of the Alleghanies. In 1749, the **Ohio Company** obtained from the king of England a grant of a large tract of land on the east bank of the Ohio River, with the privilege of Indian trade.

341. In 1752, the company made a trading-post at Redstone (now Brownsville), on the Monongahela. The French immediately sent troops to build forts in the disputed territory. They also made prisoners of the traders.

342. When the English government heard of this, orders were sent to Governor Dinwiddie of Virginia to send a "person of distinction" to demand an explanation of the French. The messenger selected was **Major George Washington**, a young



MAP SHOWING
THE COLONIES
 at the time of
FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

SCALE:
 0 100 200 300 400 Miles

Virginian, twenty-one years old, the same who afterwards led his country to independence.¹

343. Washington's First Campaign. — Washington, with two or three attendants, set out from Williamsburg, Virginia. After a toilsome journey of over a month, he reached the French outposts on the Alleghany River. He found the French commandant at Venango.

344. The French commandant sent back by Washington to Governor Dinwiddie a letter refusing to withdraw the French troops from the disputed territory. He said these were his orders from Governor Duquesne, the governor-general of Canada.

This reply was not satisfactory. Governor Dinwiddie immediately sent a party to construct a fort at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers, where Pittsburg now stands. In the spring of 1754, a regiment of English militia was sent into the disputed territory. The regiment was under Colonel Frye, and Washington was second in command.

345. While the troops were on the march, news came that the French had driven off the fort-builders, and had themselves completed the work. They called it **Fort Duquesne**.

346. Washington hastened forward with an advance party. He met a body of French at a place called **Great Meadows**. He made a sudden attack, and defeated the French. This was the first blood shed in the war.

347. At Great Meadows, Washington built a work called **Fort Necessity**. While waiting here, Colonel Frye died, and Washington became chief commander.

¹ Washington was born on the banks of the Potomac, in Westmoreland County, Virginia, February 22, 1732. As a lad, he was distinguished for his truthfulness, manly spirit, and energy. He had made himself a good surveyor at sixteen. At nineteen he was made adjutant of one of the Virginia militia districts, with the rank of major. Even then he was looked on as a young man of uncommon promise.

Fort Duquesne was about fifty miles beyond Fort Necessity. The French advanced from Fort Duquesne and attacked **Fort Necessity**. Washington held out all day but had to surrender, July 4, 1754. He and his troops were permitted to return to Virginia.

348. It was now felt that a great struggle would follow. The French and English governments both prepared for war. The colonies did the same.

349. The British government recommended the colonists to secure the Six Nations, or Iroquois, as allies. Accordingly, a convention of delegates from the New England colonies, and from New York, Pennsylvania, and Maryland, met at Albany, and made a treaty with the Indian chiefs.

350. Benjamin Franklin was a member of this convention. He took the opportunity to present a plan for the **union of the colonies**. This plan was adopted by the convention, but it did not go into effect, for the reason that it was rejected both by the colonial Assemblies¹ and by the British government.

351. Campaign of 1755.—The British government gave proof that it meant to defend its American possessions by sending out, in the spring of 1755, two regiments of Regulars, under General Braddock as commander-in-chief.

352. Braddock had a meeting with the colonial governors at Alexandria, Virginia, and settled the plan of campaign. Three military operations were planned,—one under Braddock, against

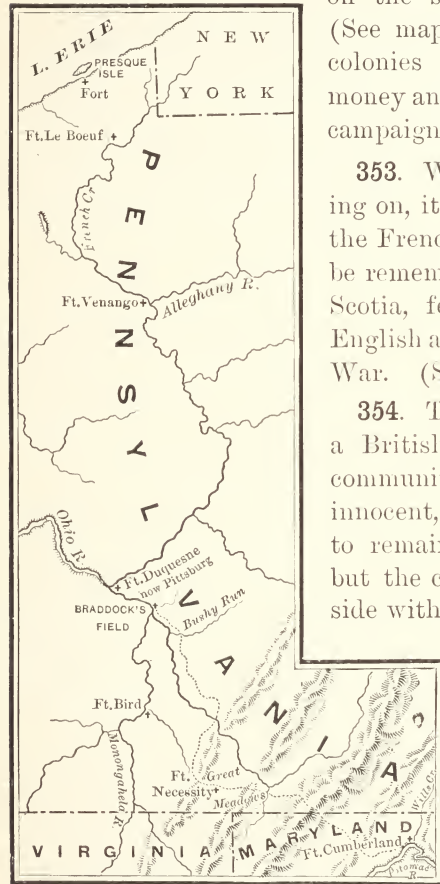
¹ Not one of the Assemblies voted in favor of Franklin's plan. The people, in each colony, had long been used to thinking and acting about their own affairs, but they had not yet learned that they had interests in common. There were many jealousies between the colonies. This is not strange when we reflect that they differed in laws, in social customs, and in religious observances. The colonial populations were remote from one another to a degree that we cannot appreciate. Distances that we may pass over in a day were then stage-coach journeys perhaps a week in length. Above all, the colonies were reluctant to entrust the power of spending their money to any legislatures but their own.

Fort Duquesne; a second under General Shirley, against Fort Niagara; the third, against the French fort at Crown Point, on the shore of Lake Champlain. (See map, p. 125.) Nearly all the colonies raised militia, and voted money and supplies, to carry on these campaigns.

353. While preparations were going on, it was determined to attack the French in Nova Scotia. It will be remembered that *Acadia*, or Nova Scotia, fell into the hands of the English as the result of Queen Anne's War. (See § 323.)

354. The province was ruled by a British governor. The French community, composed of peaceful, innocent, and happy people, wished to remain neutral during the war; but the colonists feared they might side with the French troops.

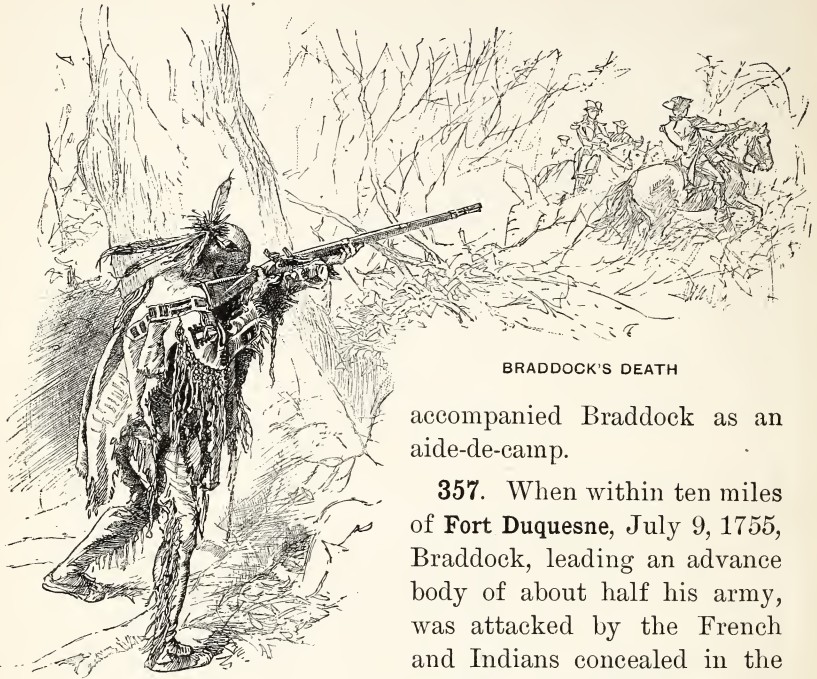
355. The expedition sailed to the head of the Bay of Fundy, and captured Forts Beausejour and Gaspereau. The French settlers, to the number of seven thousand, were then kidnapped on board the



THE WAR IN PENNSYLVANIA

ships, and exiled to various colonies. It was a terrible deed, but was thought necessary.

356. Braddock's column of twenty-five hundred troops moved from Alexandria against Fort Duquesne. Washington



BRADDOCK'S DEATH

accompanied Braddock as an aide-de-camp.

357. When within ten miles of **Fort Duquesne**, July 9, 1755, Braddock, leading an advance body of about half his army, was attacked by the French and Indians concealed in the woods. Braddock was not

accustomed to American bush-fighting, and did not know how to manage troops in a wooded country. The whole column was thrown into confusion, and fled in panic. Braddock was killed.

Washington, with a little band of Virginians, covered the retreat. The expedition was now given up, and the whole force retired to Philadelphia.

358. Shirley's column, destined against Fort Niagara, marched from Albany, and, in August, reached Oswego. Here a fort was built. But storms, sickness, and the desertion of the Indians, caused Shirley to abandon the enterprise.

359. Johnson's column of six thousand troops, destined against Fort Crown Point, was collected at the head of boat

navigation on the Hudson. Here **Fort Edward** was built. Johnson, leaving a garrison there, moved to the southern end of Lake George.

360. Meantime, a French column, under General Dieskau, moved forward from Crown Point to attack **Fort Edward**. Johnson sent Colonel Williams, with a thousand men, to watch the French. A fight followed, in which Williams's force was defeated, and he was killed.

361. Dieskau then followed the fugitives to Johnson's main body, in the camp at Lake George. An action followed, called the battle of **Lake George**. The French were badly defeated, and Dieskau was taken prisoner.

362. Though Johnson had defeated the French force, he did not feel able to attack Crown Point. On the battle-ground he built and garrisoned **Fort William Henry**, and then disbanded his army.

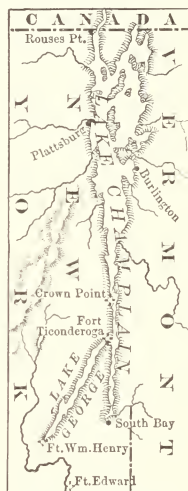
363. Campaigns of 1756 and 1757. — In the spring of 1756 Lord Loudon was sent out from England as commander-in-chief. The French government made the Marquis of Montcalm the successor of Dieskau.



MARQUIS OF MONTCALM

364. In August, 1756, Montcalm opened the campaign by capturing the fort at **Oswego**. He took fourteen hundred prisoners and a large quantity of stores. He then returned to Canada.

The result of this staggering blow was that all the English plans of campaign had to be given up for a year.

LAKE CHAMPLAIN
AND VICINITY

365. In July, 1757, Montcalm again assumed the offensive. He besieged **Fort William Henry**. This fort was defended by two thousand troops, under Colonel Monroe. General Webb was stationed at Fort Edward, fifteen miles off, with four thousand troops. But he would send no assistance, and Fort William Henry had to be surrendered, August 9, 1757. A number of the prisoners were killed in cold blood by the Indian allies of the French.

366. Campaign of 1758. — In the summer of 1757, **William Pitt** was made a member of the British Cabinet, and placed at the head of colonial affairs. Pitt replaced the feeble Lord Loudon by General Abercrombie, and prepared to carry on the war with great vigor.

367. The spring of 1758 saw on American soil an army of 50,000 men, — 22,000 British regulars and 28,000 “provincials,” or colonists.

Three expeditions were planned, — one against Louisburg, a second against the French on Lake Champlain (Forts Ticonderoga and Crown Point), and a third against Fort Duquesne.

368. First we will consider the **Louisburg** expedition. In June, 1758, Admiral Boscawen appeared before Louisburg with a large fleet and twelve thousand troops brought from England. The troops were under General Amherst. The brave young General Wolfe was his lieutenant.

After a vigorous resistance the garrison surrendered, July 27. The whole of Cape Breton Island, six thousand prisoners, and a large amount of munitions of war, were the prize. It was a very severe blow to the French.

369. Next, as to the **Lake Champlain** expedition. In July, General Abercrombie led a column of fifteen thousand troops against Fort Ticonderoga. It was held by Montcalm, with four thousand troops. In a preliminary skirmish, the brave and beloved Lord Howe was killed.

370. Abercrombie made a fierce assault on the fort, lost two thousand men, and made a disorderly retreat to Fort William Henry. Abercrombie was now recalled, and the chief command was given to General Amherst.

The only success of this expedition was the capture of Fort Frontenac (now Kingston) by Colonel Bradstreet.

371. The third operation of the campaign of 1758 was that against **Fort Duquesne**. In November, General Forbes, with a column of nine thousand troops, marched against this position. The French force there, being now very much reduced, abandoned the fort. The name of Fort Duquesne was changed to Fort Pitt, — a name still preserved in **Pittsburg**.

372. Conquest of Quebec. — The principal object of the campaign of 1759 was to capture Quebec; but two auxiliary operations were planned, — one against Fort Niagara, the other against Forts Ticonderoga and Crown Point.

373. The grand operation was under General Wolfe. With a fleet carrying eight thousand troops he sailed up the St. Lawrence to Orleans Island, a few miles below Quebec. Here he landed June 27, and began to make preparations for attack.

This threat to the capital of New France caused Montcalm to weaken very much the garrisons at Ticonderoga, Crown Point, and Niagara.

The result was: 1. That General Amherst captured **Ticonderoga** in July, and **Crown Point** in August; 2. That General Johnson captured **Fort Niagara** in July.

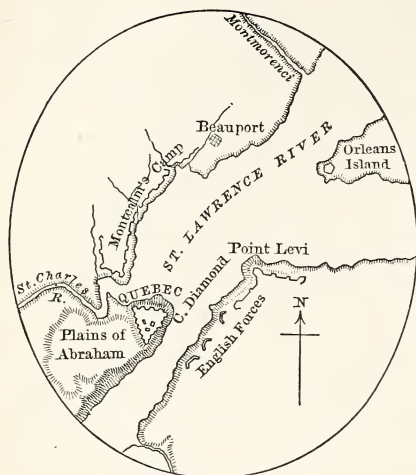
374. Wolfe began with some preliminary operations that were unsuccessful. Afterwards a bold design of scaling the Heights of Abraham was carried out. Here, on the 13th of September,



WOLFE

1759, was fought a battle that decided the war. Wolfe was twice wounded, but continued to lead the charge at the head of his grenadiers till he received a third and mortal wound. Montcalm, also, was mortally wounded.

After hours of stubborn fighting, the left wing and center of the French gave way, and the English were triumphant on the **Plains of Abraham**. Five days later, **Quebec** surrendered.



QUEBEC IN 1759

375. After the loss of Quebec, the French concentrated their remaining forces at **Montreal**. In September, 1760, that city was

compelled to surrender to the English. Soon after, all the military stations in Canada were given up.

376. Close of the French War. — The contest for the possession of America ended triumphantly for the English in 1760; but the French and English continued the war elsewhere till 1763. During these three years the Indians were very hostile, especially in the northwest.

377. In 1763, the Indians under an able chief named **Pontiac**,¹ fell upon the English posts in the northwest. All those west of Oswego, except Fort Niagara, Fort Pitt, and Detroit,

¹ This man was perhaps the most remarkable of all the leaders the Indian family has produced. In him seemed united all the virtues of his race, while upon his self-respecting nature the vices that civilized contact imparts to savage peoples produced only aversion. Pontiac was bold and far-sighted, and in his eloquent harangues was able to give good reasons for his love of wild life, and for his hatred of the white intruders who were fast making that life impossible. It is estimated that fully 50,000 fighting men were involved in this uprising.

were captured by them. Hundreds of persons were massacred or driven from their homes. At length the colonists rose and subdued the savages.

378. In 1763, the French and Indian War was ended by the **treaty of Paris**. France gave up to England all her American possessions east of the Mississippi¹ except the island and city of New Orleans.²

By the same treaty, Spain ceded Florida to England, in exchange for Havana, which the English had taken the year before.

379. The American colonists had suffered very severely during the long French wars. The barbarities of Indian warfare had been brought to their firesides. It was with hope and joy that the Americans now looked forward to a period of peace.



TOPICAL REVIEW

I. OF THE FIRST THREE FRENCH WARS

1. There were four wars against the French: King William's War, beginning 1689; Queen Anne's War, beginning 1702; King George's War, beginning 1745; the French and Indian War, beginning 1754.

2. The *first* event in **King William's War** was the capture of **Port Royal** by the English, May, 1690.

The *second* event was an unsuccessful land and naval expedition against **Quebec** in the summer of 1690.

The *third* event was the Indian depredations, which lasted throughout the war.

¹ The region lying between the Alleghany Mountains and the Mississippi River, though thus ceded by France, had long been claimed by the English, as rightfully theirs, on the ground that it was merely an extension inland of the seacoast claimed under the discovery of the Cabots.

² At the same time, France gave up to Spain all the country *west* of the Mississippi. This she did because Spain had aided her during the war against England.

The **treaty of Ryswick**, 1697, closed King William's War, which had lasted eight years.

3. The *first* event in **Queen Anne's War** was an expedition against **Port Royal** in 1707. Unsuccessful.

The *second* event was a renewed expedition against **Port Royal** in 1710. Successful.

The *third* event was a land and naval invasion of **Canada** in the autumn of 1711. Both unsuccessful.

The **treaty of Utrecht**, 1713, closed Queen Anne's War, which had lasted eleven years.

4. The only important event in **King George's War** was the capture of the French fortress of **Louisburg** on Cape Breton Island, in the summer of 1745.

The **treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle**, 1748, closed King George's War, which had lasted four years.

II. OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR

The principal actions of the French and Indian War, which began in 1754 and closed in 1763, are presented in the following tabular statement:—

When fought	Where fought	Commanders		Army successful
		English	French	
1754	Great Meadows, Fort Necessity,	Washington, Washington,	Jumonville, Villiers,	English. French.
1755	In Nova Scotia,	{ Monckton, } { Winslow, }		English.
	Near Fort Duquesne,	Braddock,		French.
	Near Lake George,	Williams,	Dieskau,	French.
	Fort Edward,	Johnson,	Dieskau,	English.
1756	Oswego,	Mercer,	Montcalm,	French.
1757	Fort William Henry,	Monroe,	Montcalm,	French.
1758	Louisburg,	Amherst,		English.
	Ticonderoga,	Abercrombie,	Montcalm,	French.
	Fort Frontenac,	Bradstreet,		English.
1759	Fort Niagara,	Johnson,	Pouchot,	English.
	Quebec,	Wolfe,	Montcalm,	English.

THE THREE COLONIAL CENTERS

BOSTON

To be read :

The devious coast, roughly sketched in Captain John Smith's map (see p. 62), had been resorted to by fishermen and fur-traders from western Europe for more than half a century before Smith explored the New England shores; but no fixed settlement of permanent consequence was made in this region until the coming of the Pilgrims who established a colony in 1620 at Plymouth.

About the middle of June of the year 1630, Governor Winthrop's fleet reached Salem. This was the site of the settlement made by the Dorchester merchants in 1626, which Endicott had fixed upon in 1628 as the foundation of the Massachusetts Bay Colony. It was not pleasing to the newcomers, and, as their chronicle quaintly expresses it: "Thursday, June 17, we went to Massachusetts to find out a place for our sitting down."

The journey of about fifteen miles was made on foot, and the colony "sat down" at the point of land now covered by **Charlestown**. But here, again, their stay was short. The fatigues of the long voyage, the change of climate, and the hardships of their new life told seriously upon the health of the party. To crown their misfortunes the springs on which they now depended had only a feeble flow, and the water was hardly fit to drink. Before many weeks had passed, half of the colonists were confined with sickness.

South of them, across the Charles River, lay an irregular peninsula of marshland and hills. The loftiest of the hills

was capped with three peaks, and Winthrop's followers soon dignified this with the name Trimountaine, or **Tremont**.¹ Seventy feet of this eminence have been leveled off, and what remains was afterwards called Centry Hill, and then Beacon Hill—names which explain themselves.

On the sunny southwest slope of "Trimountaine," near what is now the corner of Beacon and Spruce streets, a solitary Englishman of the name of Blackstone, or, as he wrote it, **Blaxton**, had already established himself. Not much of this man's early life is known. He was a graduate of Cambridge University in old England. His tastes were bookish, and his disposition eccentric.

Blaxton had a rude house or hut, backed by a little garden plot, and near by he had set out an orchard of apple trees. Other Englishmen had perhaps visited this spot, but he was the earliest settler upon it, and we may therefore speak of Blaxton as the first of the Bostonians.

The Indian name of the headland where he had domiciled himself was **Shawmut**,—that is, "Sweet Springs,"—and here there was plenty of pure water. Getting into communication with his fellow-countrymen, Blaxton invited them to transfer their settlement to his side of the river.² An entry in the colonial record runs as follows:—

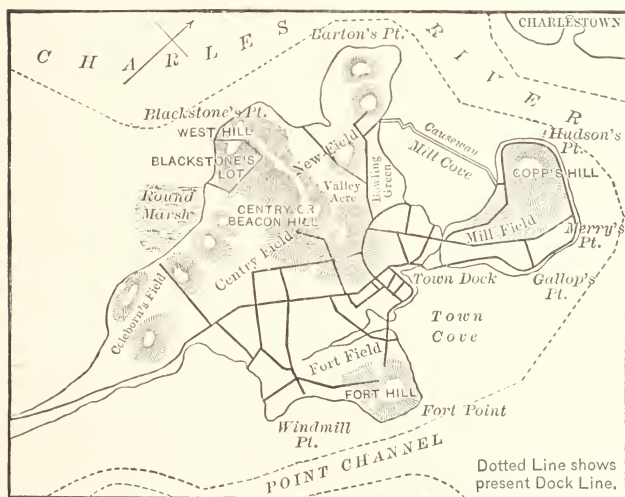
"Mr. Blackstone, dwelling on the other side Charles River alone, at a place by the Indians called Shawmut, where he only had a cottage; he came and acquainted the Governor of an excellent spring there; withal inviting him and soliciting him thither. Whereupon the Governor and the greatest part

¹ In the form of Tremont the name survives in Tremont Street, and in the titles of several public institutions of Boston.

² Four years later Blaxton, finding, as he said, the "brethren" in New England as little to his liking as he had found the "bishops" in old England, sold out most of his rights to the colony, and moved southwest into the wilderness.

of the church removed thither: where people began to build their houses; and this place was called **Boston.**" A good many of Winthrop's party had come from the neighborhood of the town of Boston on the east coast of England, and they chose this name in loving memory of their old home.

Boston peninsula was rough and treeless, deeply indented by coves, and bordered by salt marshes. The narrow "Neck" which connected it with the mainland was often submerged at high tide. In two centuries and a half many hills have been cut away, and the area of Boston has been doubled by encroachments upon the waters of river and harbor.



BOSTON IN EARLY TIMES

The founders of the town had brought with them from England seeds and seed vegetables and fruits for planting;

He was the first white settler in Rhode Island. His name is perpetuated in Blackstone River, which rises in central Massachusetts and flows southward into Narragansett Bay.

horses and cattle that were soon grazing on the "Common"; and furniture and domestic utensils to make their new homes comfortable. Carpenters, masons, and other craftsmen formed an important element in the immigration.

The neighboring waters abounded in food-fish, and timber was plentiful upon the mainland. **Ship-building** speedily received great attention, the **fisheries** were keenly followed, and trade sprang up with the West India islands. The ships of Boston carried staves, lumber, and timber to them, bringing back sugar and molasses. In time negro slaves were also imported, though never in great numbers, field-labor being less profitable in New England than in the southern colonies. The slaves in Boston were nearly all house-servants. To the mother country furs were regularly shipped for many years, and at a later time, the whale-fisheries became of great value.

For the first hundred years of its existence Boston, though the most considerable place in New England, was but a thriving village, favored by its situation for ocean commerce and the industries that depend upon it. The people were English by birth or by descent. They had the **manners** and **customs** that then prevailed among the Puritans in England.

The **streets** of Boston were narrow and crooked, some with brick or stone sidewalks, a few paved with cobble-stones. The middle of the roadway was often the smoothest and best part. There were few vehicles for many years.

The **houses** were mostly built of wood, and were substantial rather than pleasing to the eye. The first dwellings were small, with thatched roofs. At a later time two-story and three-story houses were common, and the best ones were built of stone and brick, with roofs of tile or slate.

A good deal of the household **furniture** was of English make and importation; so were domestic and other utensils, and the

finer articles of apparel. Coarse woolen goods, glass, and gunpowder were the earliest manufactures of the town.

The ordinary **dress** of men consisted of a short coat, with doublet and hose. The "gentility" were conspicuous in cocked hats, powdered wigs, high ruffs, and silver shoe-buckles. Apprentices and laborers were dressed in humbler fashion—sometimes in buckram;¹ quite commonly they were "clothed all in leather." In the families of rich merchants and of local dignitaries the women were gay in embroidered caps, and gowns of silk and velvet, with slashed sleeves and wide-spreading crinoline.

The town **government** of Boston was administered by selectmen, chosen at the annual town-meetings; but, as we have seen, none but church-members were, for a good many years, allowed to vote at these meetings. The Puritan leaders had crossed the seas to set up a government of their own, and they did not choose that later comers should undo their work if any precaution could prevent it. Moreover, Winthrop and most of his associates had but a poor opinion of human nature.

In a letter to Thomas Hooker, sometimes quoted approvingly, the governor wrote, "The best part of a community is always the least, and of that best part the wiser part is always the lesser." But Hooker, who soon afterward helped to frame the constitution of Connecticut, thought better of his fellow-men. He replied, "In matters which concern the common good, a general council chosen by all, to transact businesses which concern all, I conceive most suitable to rule, and most safe for the relief of the whole."

Thus it came about that the **selectmen** of Boston, not merely took needful measures to open and repair highways and main-

¹ A coarse cloth of linen or hemp stiffened with size or glue and used in garments to keep them in shape.

tain the public peace, but looked with watchful eye into many matters that to us seem the private concern of families and individuals. They decided by ordinance what men should eat, drink, and wear, and when they should walk abroad, and by their opinions the price of goods and the wages of labor were regulated.

Ordinary misdemeanors were expiated at the whipping-post or in the pillory; serious crimes upon the gallows. The death penalty was seldom inflicted, but what would now be called "cruel and unusual **punishments**," such as gagging and ducking, clipping the ears, pinching the tongue, and branding with a hot iron, were by no means uncommon. Personal liberty and respect for individual rights had been unknown in England, and they were therefore hardly to be looked for in an English colony.

In those days **the pulpit** took the lead in politics as in religious matters. Public questions were discussed in the pulpit, and news was disseminated from it. Public proclamations were nailed upon the doors of the meeting-houses. If the ministers did not directly make the laws, none disputed their right to expound them. In a community governed by church-members it was only natural that the preachers should be leaders in public affairs.

Boston was from an early date a literary center. Just across the river at Cambridge, first called Newtown, **Harvard College** was established in 1638, and in 1639, a press was set up there, on which was printed the first colonial newspaper, *The Freeman's Oath*.

After the first great immigration, 1630-40, the **growth** of Boston was for a century and a half very slow. At the outbreak of the Revolutionary War, the **population** was about 20,000. Boston became a city in 1822.

NEW YORK

In the year 1609, Henry Hudson discovered the river which bears his name, coming to anchor, September 11, abreast of the narrow island which is still called by the Indian name of **Manhattan**.¹ Navigating the river for more than a hundred miles, he sailed, a week or two later, out of what is now New York Bay, on his homeward voyage to Holland. Hudson had not found what he sought,—a passage to the “South Seas,”—but he brought back word to the Dutch East India Company, in whose service he was, that the region he had visited was “a land as beautiful as the foot of man ever trod upon,” and he carried with him a goodly supply of the pelts of bear, beaver, otter, and other fur-bearing animals.

The furs which the American wilderness then yielded in abundance were in great request in the cold countries of Europe, and brought extravagant prices. Up to this time the Russians had had a practical monopoly of the fur-trade, but here in the New World was a source of supply whence the richest furs could be obtained, as Hudson’s men had procured them, in exchange for the merest baubles and trinkets. Even when in subsequent years the Indian hunters had better learned the worth of their peltries, they were still eager to exchange them for the commonest utensils of European manufacture.

The trade for furs played an important part in the early

¹ Verrazano, the Italian explorer, in a letter to the king of France describing his voyage of 1524, says that after coasting about a hundred miles from Delaware Bay he found “a very pleasant situation among some little steep hills, through which a very large river, deep at its mouth, forced its way to the sea.” Verrazano goes on to tell how he passed up this river about half a league, whereupon he found it forming a most beautiful lake, three leagues in circumference. This “beautiful lake” was, in all likelihood, the Bay of New York. The visit of the Italian, however, had little significance, while that of Hudson, nearly a century later, bore immediate fruit in trading voyages and temporary settlements, soon followed by permanent colonization.

settlement of our Atlantic seaboard, and the island of Manhattan, lying at the mouth of natural water-ways which connect the coast with the interior, was a spot peculiarly favorable to the growth of this traffic.¹

And so, two years later, it is not surprising to find a second Dutch ship at the Hudson's mouth, this time not on a voyage of discovery, but fitted out as a merchant trader. The ship's master was an able and experienced navigator of the name of **Block**, and he was fortunate enough to take home a rich freight of furs.



BUYING MANHATTAN ISLAND

Coming again the next year, his ship caught fire while at anchor in the river, and burned to the water's edge. Nothing daunted, however, Block and his men set to work and constructed a boat of sixteen tons, the first vessel fashioned in the port of New York. With this he threaded the tortuous Hellgate channel, then a more dangerous passage than now, and made his way to sea through Long Island Sound.

¹ The easy communication which the Hudson and Mohawk valleys gave with the Indians of the lake region, prompted the Dutch from the very first to cultivate the friendship of the powerful Iroquois tribes, who had been alienated from the French by the ill-judged hostility of Champlain.

Block was the first of European navigators to discover that **Long Island** was not a part of the mainland, and that **Manhattan Island** could be reached through **East River**. **Block Island** is named for him. From the time of these voyages the region lying about the **Hudson** and its mouth was styled **New Netherlands**.

The first considerable party sent out to the new country by the Dutch was a company of French-speaking Belgians called **Walloons**. These people settled on the **Brooklyn** side of **East River**, along the shores of the cove that still bears the name of **Wallabout** (**Walloon Bay**). **Peter Minuit** came over in **1625**, invested with the title of director-general, and for the next six years governed the infant colony. He it was who purchased **Manhattan Island** from its native owners for sixty guilders, a sum equal to about twenty-five dollars. This value, however, was not paid in money, but in beads, baubles, and bright-colored cloths. The Dutch were the first to make a practice of buying land from the Indians.

The second director-general, **Van Twiller**, came in **1633**, bringing settlers, soldiers, and supplies. The fur-trade had greatly increased, and communication with the old country was frequent. A defensive work, **Fort Amsterdam**, was built upon the present site of **Bowling Green**. East of it rose the governor's mansion, and south of it a church was erected. Under **Van Twiller** a considerable area of land was devoted to the raising of **tobacco**, and a new industry, that of ship-building, arose in which many people found employment.

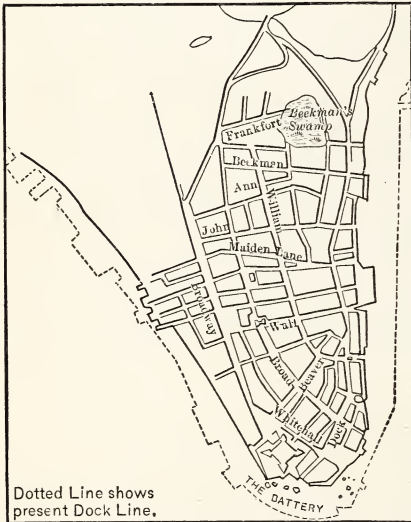
The next governor, **Kieft**, was harsh in his dealings with the Indians, but humane to refugees of every nation and creed. He was an active administrator. Under his direction a stockade was built across the island, from river to river, to defend the village from the Indians, whose hostility he had

incurred. Following in part the line of this wall, and taking its name from it, is the Wall Street of to-day. Stone Street was the first to be paved with cobble-stones.

The last and ablest of the Dutch governors was **Peter Stuyvesant**, director-general from 1647 to 1664. Having little sympathy with the liberal institutions which had made Holland the refuge of men persecuted for opinion, Stuyvesant refused to share the governing power with the people of the colony. They, in turn, were tenacious of the rights to which, as Dutchmen, they had been born. They sent petitions and

remonstrances against the governor to the mother country, and Stuyvesant was more than once checked and rebuked by his superiors. Finally, in 1653, the people secured municipal rights, and then Manhattan village was raised to the rank of a city, under the name and style of **New Amsterdam**.

Eleven years later, — that is, in 1664, — the English fleet sent out by the duke of York appeared in the harbor, and the place



NEW AMSTERDAM

was surrendered without resistance. (See § 188.) Thenceforward, with the exception of the brief Dutch occupation of 1674, **New York** remained an English possession until the time of the Revolutionary War.

Manhattan Island presented to the Dutch first-comers a

physical aspect not greatly different from that which it still wears. Some elevations have been leveled, and in the lower part of the city ponds and marshy areas have been filled in;



HOUSEHOLD SCENE IN NEW AMSTERDAM

but the public works of this sort have been insignificant as compared with those which fell to the lot of the people of Boston.

The **houses** of New Amsterdam were mostly set endwise to the street; the side walls were built of wood, while the gable-ends were constructed of brick, brought from Holland for this purpose. All the structures of the old town were of a very substantial character.

The household **furniture** was plain and solid. That of the best rooms was imported from Holland, but the heavier and ruder pieces were wrought by Dutch craftsmen upon the spot. The floors were of hard wood, uncarpeted; the fire-places were ornamented with pictured tiles. Against the spotless table-linen, the figured Delft ware showed to fine advantage. The most scrupulous neatness was everywhere observable.

Broad-skirted coats, with metallic buttons, thick knee-breeches and stout hose, were the principal items in the **dress** of the men; the women wore plain, white, close-fitting caps over the hair brushed smoothly back, but were fond of the brightest colors in bodice and petticoat.

The Dutch colonists exported furs, tobacco, and lumber, and, like their New England neighbors, imported sugar and molasses from the West Indies, and manufactured goods from Europe. Dutch was the **language** principally spoken in New York down to the beginning of the last century.

The Dutch are by nature genial and averse to every kind of harshness and asperity. An early chronicler describes the people of New Amsterdam as sitting in the evening on the "stoeps" of their houses, and saluting one by one the passers-by, who, in return, as he says, "were obliged to greet anybody [everybody] unless they would *shock the general politeness of the town.*"

From the Dutch we have derived the pretty fable of Santa Claus (Saint Nicholas), and the custom of making New Year's calls. They also brought to us from Holland the winter

pleasures of sleighing, skating, and coasting. Their life was full of kindly cheerfulness.

Every community has a personality of its own, analogous in many ways to that of the individual members who compose it; and with cities as with men the character developed in early years has an enduring influence. When Stuyvesant gave up New Amsterdam to the English, the town had only three or four thousand inhabitants, but this handful of men felt and practiced religious toleration, and were imbued with an inextinguishable love of liberty. They and their descendants had much to do with founding the **free political system** of our country.

It is not from England, but from Holland, that we have derived the written ballot, the self-government of towns, and their representation in a general legislature. It was in Holland that the English Puritans, themselves refugees from oppression, learned whatever of religious toleration they afterwards practiced in New England.¹ Long before the Bible was printed in England, the people of Holland had bought and read many editions of it. In Holland the clergy was not one of the estates of the realm, and this example has been followed in our own separation of Church and State.

From the earliest years New Amsterdam took on a **cosmopolitan character**. It is said that, in 1650, no less than eighteen languages and dialects were spoken in the town; and we know that the laws were printed in Dutch, French, and English.

The city of New York was of slower **growth** than either Boston or Philadelphia. At the outbreak of the Revolutionary War it had about 15,000 inhabitants.

¹ It is worthy of note that William Penn, the enlightened and benignant founder of Pennsylvania, was of Dutch descent, his mother having been Margaret Jasper, of Amsterdam.

PHILADELPHIA

In the autumn of 1681, William Penn sent out a body of colonists to the new country granted to him by King Charles. With them went three agents having special instructions to “lay out a **great city**” on the Delaware. This founding of a great city seems to have been a principal purpose of Penn’s from the outset. He directed his agents to choose a site on the river “where it is most navigable, high, dry, and healthy ;

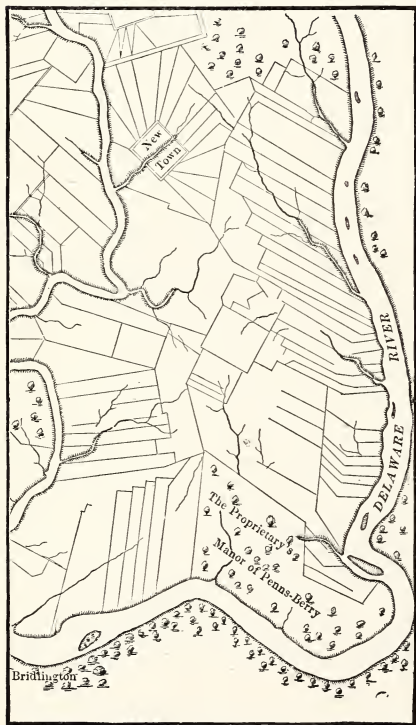
where ships can best ride, and load or unload without lightering.”

Thus it came about that the place where the “great city” of **Philadelphia** now stands was selected. The town was laid out in the early months of 1682, though the precise date cannot be determined.

One of Penn’s agents, Holmes by name, published in London what he called “A Portraiture of the city of Philadelphia,” and from this the accompanying sketch has been copied.

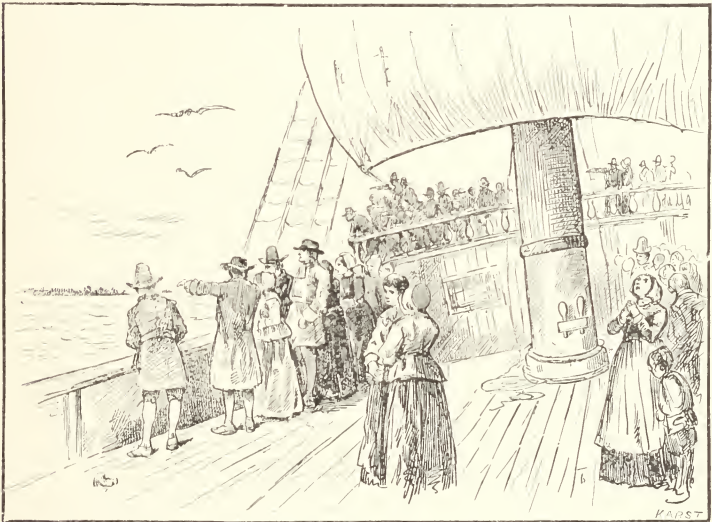
In 1682, Penn himself came over to establish the government of his “wood-

land,” and the first General Assembly met in Philadelphia, the “**City of Brotherly Love**” in March of the ensuing year.



FIRST MAP OF PHILADELPHIA

Freedom in matters of opinion had all his life been the chief solicitude of William Penn. Before leaving England he had written, "For the matter of liberty and privilege I propose that which is extraordinary — to leave myself and successors no power of doing mischief, that the will of one man may not hinder the good of an whole country." How carefully the founder of this commonwealth provided in the "Great Law" for the freedom thus proposed we have already seen.



ON BOARD THE "WELCOME"

Dutch, English, and Swedes were already settled along the banks of the Delaware River, but with this exception Pennsylvania was, in 1682, an unbroken wilderness. With him, in the ship *Welcome*, Penn brought over about a hundred of his co-religionists, and in less than two years the new "city" contained 300 houses and 2500 inhabitants. For a long time thereafter the increase in the **number of inhabitants** of Phila-

delphia was more than 1000 annually, and its growth and prosperity in other respects were as great.

Many of the new-comers were members of the **Society of Friends** in England, but the publication of Penn's scheme of founding "a free colony for all mankind" drew immigrants of different beliefs from other countries of Europe. To all of these, as well as to the settlers that he found in possession, Penn conceded equal liberties. German immigrants were very numerous, forming a little community by themselves in that part of Philadelphia known as **Germantown**. Their descendants are an important part of the population of the state.

The early Philadelphians were more prosperous and comfortable than the people of any other American town. They had no troubles with the Indians, no religious quarrels, no oppressive royal governors. They were orderly and industrious. Ship-building and iron-working were actively followed from a very early period. There was a busy trade with the native tribes of the neighborhood, and **ocean commerce** grew so rapidly that by the middle of the last century as many as four hundred ships sailed every year from this port.

Agriculture received much more attention than in New England. Gardens and orchards everywhere dotted "the faire and greene country towne," as Penn called it. On the weekly market-days Philadelphia wore a holiday look. Extensive fairs were held twice a year. The town grew very rapidly, and finally, on the 25th of October, 1701, Philadelphia having "become near equal to New York in trade and riches," was raised by royal patent to the rank of **city**.

A considerable proportion of the **houses**, even in the earliest years, were built of brick and stone. As the town grew, and trade increased, it was common to give up to business uses

the ground floor of a house, the shopkeeper's family living in the rooms overhead.

In Philadelphia, as in all colonial towns, dwellings were heated by wood-fires in great open fireplaces. The coal-beds that furnish us with fuel were then forest-covered and unknown. **Cooking** was done by means of the same log fires. For broiling, the griddle was made with long legs to stand in the live coals of the fireplace. In boiling, the kettle was hung on a crane that swung to and fro above the blaze. Meats were roasted on a spit. Clay ovens for baking were built into the great chimneys of that time.

The modest garb of the Quakers was seen on every hand, as it may yet be seen here and there in the same Philadelphia streets; but there was no standard of **dress**, any more than of **belief**, and the fashions were as various as the rank and national origin of the inhabitants.

In 1723, there came to Philadelphia the man who, next to Penn, made the deepest impression upon the affairs of the community. This was **Benjamin Franklin**. For more than thirty years, Franklin's influence was everywhere felt in works of utility and beneficence. He was mainly instrumental in founding the American Philosophical Society, the Philadelphia Public Library, the Pennsylvania Hospital, and what is now the University of Pennsylvania. In *Poor Richard's Almanac* and the *Pennsylvania Gazette*, as well as in hundreds of pamphlets, letters, and circulars, Franklin did much to arouse and sustain the public spirit of the citizens.

Philadelphia was famous from its foundation for the intelligence of the people, and for the care devoted to public education. A printing-press was set up in 1686, and a public high school was established in 1689. The population of the city in 1776 was about 30,000.

PERIOD III

THE REVOLUTION

FROM THE PASSAGE OF THE STAMP ACT, 1765, TILL THE ORGANIZATION
OF THE GOVERNMENT UNDER THE CONSTITUTION, 1789

CAUSES OF THE REVOLUTION

380. Real Cause of the Revolution.—The attachment of the American colonies to the “mother country” was never stronger than at the close of the French War. The colonists were proud of being descended from British ancestors, and gloried in sharing the rights of subjects of England. The trials and triumphs of the French wars made colonists and Englishmen feel more than ever like brothers.

It is true, the colonists had some grievances. The English “navigation laws” and “trade monopoly” bore heavily on the industry, commerce, and manufactures of the colonies. These grievances made some dissatisfaction, but not a great deal. In all other respects America might well be satisfied to be under the government of England.

381. This being the case, the important question arises: How was it that the colonies began a revolt which resulted in their independence? The usual answer is that the attempt of England to impose taxes upon the American colonies without their consent was the cause of the Revolutionary War.

This is true in part only. The imposition of taxes was the **occasion** of the revolt of the colonies; but its **cause** was that the whole history of the American colonies meant independ-

ence. Providence so designed it. Let us see some of the circumstances which prove this.

382. First, the very origin of the colonies pointed to freedom as their birthright. It was for the sake of liberty that the early colonists had left their homes. They had fled to the woods of America and faced savage men and wild beasts rather than endure oppression.

Second, the habits of the early settlers, and many circumstances in the history of their descendants, had led them to study closely the principles of political liberty.

Third, all the colonies had suffered from bad royal governors.¹ The misconduct of these governors had taught the colonists to be very jealous of arbitrary power.

Thus America was gradually growing fit for freedom. The whole drift of things was such that the colonies could not long be subject to Great Britain.

383. American Views of Taxation. — It was generally claimed in America that the power of making laws belonged to the colonial assemblies. It was admitted that Parliament might regulate commerce, as it had done in the "Navigation Acts"; but the colonists held that they alone had the right to control their own internal affairs.

The colonists were, from an early date, unwilling to be taxed. Various colonial legislatures had denied England's right to tax the colonies.

384. The French-and-Indian War had added largely to the heavy debt of England, and the British government determined that the American colonies should bear a part of this burden. It was claimed that, if hitherto England had not taxed the

¹ The proprietary colonies of Pennsylvania, Delaware, and Maryland, and the south New England colonies of Rhode Island and Connecticut did not suffer so much from this cause as did the others. Though for a short period misruled by Andros, Rhode Island and Connecticut were, for nearly a century and a half before the Revolution, little independent republics, ruled by governors of their own choosing, under laws of their own making.

colonies, it was not because Parliament had not the right to do so; and that as the war had been made for the benefit of the colonies, the colonies should help pay the debt.

The Americans denied that Parliament had a right to impose taxes. They said their own losses and expenses in the war had already been as heavy as they could bear.

385. The British government began by laying duties on certain imported articles, and made severe regulations to see that the colonists obeyed the "Navigation Acts."



DISCUSSING THE STAMP ACT

These regulations led to an offensive system of prying and spying, which irritated the colonists very much.

In 1764, Parliament made a law that it "had a right to tax the colonies." It also passed a "Stamp Act" which had been proposed by the prime minister, Grenville.

386. The Stamp Act. — The law called the "Stamp Act" provided that all deeds, notes, bills, and other legal documents

should be written on stamped paper. This the British revenue officers were to furnish at certain fixed rates.

This law, which was a heavy tax on almost every transaction in business, was passed by Parliament in the spring of 1765. It was to take effect on the first of November of the same year.

387. The Uprising of the People. — The news of the passage of the “Stamp Act” reached America in April, 1765. It caused great indignation and alarm.

Virginia spoke out first. The legislature of that colony was in session at the time the news came, but the leaders of that body hesitated to say anything on the matter, till Patrick Henry, one of the younger members, came forward.

Patrick Henry proposed a series of resolutions which claimed for the inhabitants of Virginia all the rights of born British subjects. Henry made a speech of wonderful power, and the resolutions were adopted by the legislature.



PATRICK HENRY

388. The action of Virginia went out to the country and had a great effect.

New York was very bold and outspoken. The question of the day was taken up by able writers in the newspapers, and was very actively discussed.

The Massachusetts legislature now proposed that there should be a convention, or **Congress**, to be composed of committees of the various colonial Assemblies. It was to be held in New York in October, a month before the Stamp Act was to go into effect. That sterling patriot, Samuel Adams of Massachusetts, first suggested it.

The proposal was not very well received by some of the colonies. At last it was adopted by South Carolina. “Massa-

chusetts," said a South Carolina patriot of the times, "sounded the trumpet, but to South Carolina it is owing that it was attended to. Had it not been for South Carolina, no Congress would have been convened."

389. About this time, societies were formed under the title of **Sons of Liberty**, to resist the unjust measures of the British government.

The Sons of Liberty made it their special business to frighten the stamp officers. In all the colonies these officers were compelled to resign. The stamps which came were either never unpacked, or else they were seized and burned.

390. The Assembly of Pennsylvania, in September, adopted resolutions denouncing the Stamp Act as unconstitutional and as going against their dearest rights.

Throughout the colonies public meetings were held to protest against the Stamp Act. These events tended to mold public opinion in the colonies. The public opinion of America expressed itself in the sentiment that "taxation without representation is tyranny."

The people proved that they were in earnest. The merchants of the principal cities agreed to import no more goods from Great Britain until the Stamp Act was repealed. Families denied themselves the use of all foreign luxuries, and the trade with England was almost entirely stopped. The very children in the streets learned the cry, "Liberty, property, and no stamps!"

391. First Colonial Congress.—In the midst of this excitement, the First Colonial Congress met in New York City, October 7, 1765. Nine colonies were represented by twenty-eight delegates.

After nearly three weeks' deliberation, the Congress agreed on a **declaration of rights** and a statement of grievances. The declaration claimed in strong terms the right of the colonies to be free from all taxes not imposed by their own representatives.

A petition to the king and a memorial to Parliament were also sent to England.

When the various colonial Assemblies met in the winter of 1765, they gave these proceedings their hearty approval.

392. The Blow Averted. — When the 1st of November (the day appointed for the Stamp Act to take effect) came, not a stamp was to be seen. Every stamp officer in America had resigned, and the law was rendered of no effect. A very serious question now was, "Would Great Britain force the colonies to obedience?" It did not; for, at the next meeting of Parliament, the Stamp Act was repealed.

There were several reasons for this. First, there were some noble men in England who took sides with America, for they believed America was right. Second, British merchants found themselves severely punished when the Americans ceased importing British goods, and they petitioned for the repeal.

393. Parliament repealed the Stamp Act, March 18, 1766. Two great men, **William Pitt** and **Edmund Burke**, then both members of Parliament, were advocates of the repeal.¹

The joy of the colonists at the repeal of the Stamp Act was very great. All the old kindly feeling towards the mother country seemed to revive. Trade was resumed.

394. The Storm Gathering. — It might now have seemed that all cause for quarrel with England was removed, and that henceforth there would be peace and harmony between the colonies and the mother country. But, in the mean time, a great change had come over the colonists. Before this, they had made a distinction between duties on imports, or external taxation, and internal taxation, such as was imposed by the Stamp Act. They had not objected to *external* taxation, but

¹ Pitt agreed with the colonists that there should be "No taxation without representation." Burke's argument was the common-sense one. He declared that it was worse than folly to throw away the good-will of three million English in America merely for the chance of a small increase of revenue.

only to *internal* taxation. Now they objected to *all* taxation. They claimed that, as the colonies were not represented in Parliament, Parliament had no right to tax them at all.

395. The year the Stamp Act was passed, Parliament required the colonies to furnish quarters and supplies to British troops sent amongst them. New York refused.

In 1767, Parliament passed an act putting a duty on tea and several other imports, and sent a board of revenue commissioners to America.

396. When the news reached America, the old ill-feeling broke out afresh. The press, the pulpit, and the colonial legislatures denounced the acts.

These things stirred up the British Ministry, and they tried to frighten the colonies; but they did not succeed. The commissioners of customs appointed by Parliament entered upon their duties at Boston. From the excitement existing there, a collision between them and the people was inevitable.

The collision soon took place. The officers seized a sloop belonging to John Hancock (a prominent merchant and an active patriot), for violating the revenue laws. A riot followed.



JOHN HANCOCK

397. General Gage was at this time commander of the British Army in America. He had been told by the British government to send two regiments from Halifax to Boston. They reached Boston in September, 1768.

The people of Boston were required to furnish quarters for the troops.¹ This they positively refused to do. The British troops then took possession of the State House.

¹ See the clause in relation to "standing armies in times of peace," *Declaration of Independence*; and also the third amendment to the *Constitution*.

It was with indignant feelings that the people of Boston looked upon this military force. They saw soldiers parading their streets, challenging them as they walked, and disturbing their Sabbath quiet. They soon came to hate the "red-coats."

398. The Parliament now acted so as to still further exasperate the colonies. In February, 1769, Parliament censured the rebellious spirit of the colonies, and prayed the king to have those guilty of "treason" brought to England for trial. This called forth indignant protest from the colonial legislatures. The Assemblies of **Virginia** and **North Carolina** protested so strongly that they were dissolved by the royal governors.

399. The First Outbreak. — In **New York** the soldiers provoked the "Sons of Liberty" by cutting down their liberty-pole. A riot followed. One citizen was killed, and several wounded, January 17, 1770. Thus **New York** laid the first offering on the altar of the country.

400. In **Boston**, on the 5th of March, a small guard of soldiers, passing through the streets, were so provoked by the jeers and taunts of a crowd of men and boys, that they fired, killing three persons and wounding several others. This is called the **Boston Massacre**. This shedding of blood produced tremendous excitement in **Boston**. The citizens, however, behaved with great prudence. Instead of retaliating, they simply asked the governor to remove the troops from the town.¹

401. The attempt to raise a revenue in America by taxes proved a total failure. The cost to England of supporting the officers and the troops was five hundred times the paltry sum which the duties yielded. This fact, and the protests of English merchants, caused the repeal of the duties, in April, 1770.

¹ This was immediately done. All the troops in the town were removed to **Castle William**, in the harbor, before sunset of the next day. Some of the soldiers were arrested and tried for murder. All but two of them were acquitted on the ground that they had acted in self-defense. Two were convicted of manslaughter.

402. Parliament made a very foolish exception in this repeal, by taking off the duties from all the articles except *tea*. This exception was made merely to assert the *principle* that they had a right to tax the colonies; but it was the *principle* to which the colonists objected, and the people therefore determined not to import any tea.

403. In 1773, Parliament allowed the **East India Company** to send their tea to America free from the *English* duties. It had to pay only the threepence a pound in America. It was thought that the Americans would pay this small duty, as they would even then get tea cheaper in America than in England. The authorities did not know the spirit of the colonists. When the tea arrived it was either sent back or locked up.

In Boston, the people would not allow the tea to be landed. The royal governor, at the same time, would not permit the ships to be sent back. The difficulty was solved by a party of men, who, disguised as Indians, boarded the tea-ships, breaking open the chests and throwing the tea into the harbor. It was done very quietly, without any riot, on December 16, 1773.

404. The doings in Boston made Parliament determine to punish that town. An act was passed, in 1774, closing the port of Boston and removing the custom-house to Salem. Boston was to be starved out. Gage was appointed military governor of Massachusetts. The "**Port Bill**," which took effect June, 1774, caused great distress in Boston. She was cheered, however, by the aid and sympathy of all the colonies. They felt that Boston was making *their* fight.

405. First Continental Congress. — In the midst of these experiences, the colonists, for the first time, began to think of armed resistance, and they resolved to consult together. The first Continental Congress was called at Philadelphia, September 5, 1774.¹ In this congress all the colonies were repre-

¹ The first suggestion of this Congress was made by Franklin in his official letter of July 7, 1773, addressed to the Massachusetts Assembly. He wrote:

sented except Georgia, whose governor had prevented the election of delegates. This body praised the conduct of Massachusetts, agreed upon a declaration of rights, recommended the suspension of all commercial intercourse with England, and sent a petition to the king.¹ Another Congress was agreed on, to meet in May, 1775.

406. The Crisis Approaching. — In September, 1774, General Gage, the governor of Massachusetts fortified Boston Neck, and seized the ammunition and stores in the provincial arsenals at Cambridge and Charlestown. The Massachusetts Assembly had been dissolved by the governor; but the members met under the name of a "Provincial Congress." This body organized a corps of militia called "minute-men," and formed a "committee of safety," with John Hancock for chairman.

The colonies at once took up the position of defense. Washington was organizing the militia of Virginia, and Patrick Henry was exclaiming in thunder tones, "I repeat it, sir, we must fight!"

407. In 1775, the British Parliament declared that rebellion existed in Massachusetts, and was abetted by the other colonies. At the same time, ten thousand troops were ordered to America. It was about this time that Washington prophetically wrote: "More blood will be spilled, if the Ministry are determined to push matters to extremity, than history has ever yet furnished instances of in the annals of North America."

"Perhaps it would be best for the colonies, in a general congress now in peace to be assembled, to engage firmly with each other that they will never grant aids to the crown in any general war till their rights are recognized. Such a step, I imagine, will bring the dispute to a crisis."

¹ Late in December of 1774, Franklin, then living in London as the agent of the colonies, called by appointment on William Pitt, Lord Chatham "to obtain his sentiments" upon this declaration. Franklin says: "He [Lord Chatham] received me with an affectionate kind of respect that was extremely engaging; but the opinion he expressed of the Congress was still more so. They had acted, he said, with so much temper, moderation, and wisdom, that he thought it the most honorable assembly of statesmen since those of the ancient Greeks and Romans in the most virtuous times."

CAMPAIGN OF 1775

408. The Lexington Skirmish. — In April, 1775, General Gage, royal governor and commander-in-chief, had in Boston about three thousand troops. With this large force he fully expected to be able to quell any unruly conduct of the colonists.

Learning that there were some military supplies at Concord, he sent a body of men to destroy them. Some patriots learned of this movement, and promptly sent out messengers along the supposed route of the troops to warn the "minute-men."

Early in the morning of April 19, the British troops reached **Lexington**. There they found a small body of American militia assembled on the common. An English officer rode up to them, saying, "Disperse, you rebels." As the Americans did not obey, he ordered the soldiers to fire. Eight Americans were killed and several were wounded. The rest dispersed, without returning the fire.

409. The British then marched on to Concord, where they destroyed the stores. While this was going on, the militia around Concord and Lexington hastily collected. A spirited little attack was made by the Americans at **Concord Bridge**, and then the British began to retreat towards Lexington.

It was only a few miles; but these were made very hot. The British experienced what American bush-fighting is. From every patch of woods, every rock, stream, and fence came a savage fire from the flint-locks of the American farmers. The retreat became a rout, and the British force would have been destroyed, had it not been met at Lexington by reinforcements, under cover of which the broken battalions made their way to Charlestown. The British loss in killed and wounded was nearly three hundred; the Americans lost about ninety.

410. The effect of the news of Lexington was electric. The colonies rushed to arms. The New England militia in great

numbers hastened to Boston, and on the night of the 19th of April the royal governor and his troops were closely beleaguered.

Before the end of the month, twenty thousand men were encamped in the vicinity of Boston. A line of fortification was run from Roxbury to the river Mystic, thus confining the British to the Boston peninsula.

411. Ticonderoga and Crown Point. — A very interesting little affair happened soon after the action at Lexington. In May, Ethan Allen, with a small band of volunteers, took by stratagem **Fort Ticonderoga**, a fortress guarded by over one hundred pieces of artillery. **Fort Crown Point** was captured with equal ease. The military stores taken were very valuable to the Americans.

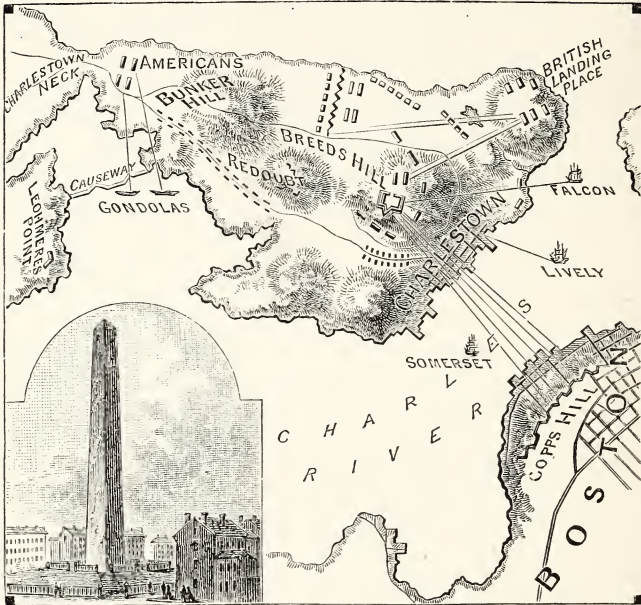
412. Battle of Bunker Hill. — In the month of May, 1775, large reinforcements of British troops reached Boston from England. They were commanded by **Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne**. Gage, the commander-in-chief, having now an army of twelve thousand veterans, resolved to commence operations. As the New England troops stopped the land outlet from Boston, Gage determined to cross by water to the opposite peninsula of Charlestown. The Americans suspected this, and determined to forestall the enemy.

On the evening of the 16th of June, the Massachusetts military authorities sent a force of eight hundred men to pre-occupy **Bunker Hill**, on the Charlestown peninsula. One of the officers, however, led the troops to **Breeds Hill**,¹ farther down the peninsula, and directly opposite Boston.

On the morning of the 17th of June, the British in Boston were astonished to see an earthwork frowning on them from the opposite height.

¹ It was on Breeds Hill that the battle was fought, and Breeds Hill is now usually called Bunker Hill. The Bunker Hill Monument is on the original Breeds Hill.

413. Three thousand regulars, under **General Howe**, were sent across in boats to storm the rude earthworks,¹ behind which about fifteen hundred Americans, under **Prescott**, lay. In the afternoon the battle of **Bunker Hill** began.



SCENE OF THE BATTLE

The British made two assaults, but were severely repulsed by the Americans. In these fights, however, the Americans completely used up their ammunition. A third assault by the British carried the rude line of defenses, and Bunker Hill was a British victory.

The victory was dearly won, for the British had lost a thousand men. The American loss was four hundred and fifty.

¹ The position that the Americans had fortified was a very exposed one, as may be seen from a glance at the map. If the British had chosen to go around by water, they could easily have taken possession of Charlestown Neck, and thus cut off the supplies of the patriots.

414. Second Continental Congress. — Before the battle of Bunker Hill the Second Continental Congress, appointed to assemble at Philadelphia, met in that city May 10, 1775. Congress took upon itself the authority of a **general government** of the colonies, which now received the name of "The United Colonies." It voted to raise an army of twenty thousand men, and authorized an issue of three million dollars, paper money.

In June, Congress chose **George Washington** (who was present as a delegate from Virginia) as commander-in-chief of the continental army. Washington set out for Massachusetts, and heard of the battle of Bunker Hill on his way. He reached the Cambridge headquarters of the American army, July 2, 1775, and next day took command.

The army was found to consist of fourteen thousand undisciplined militia. Washington immediately began to shape it into an army.

415. America Aroused. — Our attention has been directed to Massachusetts, because, at the beginning, Massachusetts was the center of interest. Meanwhile, however, the other colonies were not inactive.

In **Virginia**, the detested royal governor, Dunmore, tried to imitate Gage, by seizing a quantity of ammunition which the Virginia patriots had in readiness. Patrick Henry headed a party of militia and forced Dunmore to pay for the powder he had taken. Dunmore then tried to make more trouble; but the Virginians drove him from the colony. Some months afterwards, a British man-of-war arrived, and Dunmore gratified his revenge by bombarding and burning **Norfolk**, January 1, 1776.

The colonists, from Maine to Georgia, were now fully aroused and rushed to arms immediately after the battle of Lexington. By the autumn of 1775, the power of every royal governor in America was destroyed.

In **North Carolina** the people were still bolder. A band of patriots met at Charlotte, in Mecklenburg County, in May, 1775, and declared their independence of the king and of Parliament. This is called the **Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence**.

It should be stated, that, though a majority of Americans were devoted to the cause of freedom, there were numbers in all the colonies who sided with the royal cause throughout the Revolution. These were called Royalists, or **Tories**.

416. The Canada Campaign.—Now that the war had fairly broken out, the Americans concluded that it would not do to allow the American frontier to lie open to attacks by the Canadian Royalists. Therefore the invasion of Canada was planned.

417. Two columns invaded Canada. The *first* column of three thousand New York and New England troops, under Schuyler (soon succeeded by Montgomery), marched by way of Lake Champlain to **St. Johns**, which was taken, and then to **Montreal**, which surrendered, November 13. Most of Montgomery's troops now went home, as their term of enlistment had expired. With a small remainder he went down the St. Lawrence towards Quebec.

418. In the meantime, the *second* column, which was under **Colonel Benedict Arnold**, advanced through the wilderness of Maine to near Quebec (Point aux Trembles). The two columns made a junction, December 1, and advanced against **Quebec**. The whole American force was nine hundred men.

On the last day of the year 1775, an assault was made on Quebec. It was unsuccessful. The gallant soldier Montgomery was killed, and Arnold was wounded.

Arnold, with the remainder of the force, remained all winter behind bulwarks of snow near Quebec; but the next spring the British, largely reinforced, drove them back to the States. The invasion of Canada was a total failure.

CAMPAIGNS OF 1776

419. The military operations of 1776 comprise three principal events, — the siege of Boston, the siege of Charleston, South Carolina, and Washington's campaign in New York and New Jersey.

420. Siege of Boston. — Washington's army had lain encamped in the neighborhood of Boston during the winter of 1775–76. The city of Boston was still occupied by a British army, under General Howe. It was known that a large British army would arrive in America in the spring. Accordingly Washington was ordered to take Boston.

The plan which Washington adopted was to erect batteries on the **Heights of Dorchester**, now South Boston. This was done suddenly and secretly, and the British were astonished to find the city at the mercy of Washington's cannon.

General Howe, seeing this, surrendered the city on condition that he should be allowed to withdraw with his troops. Washington occupied **Boston**, March 17.

421. General Howe carried his troops to Halifax, to await the arrival of a new army of twenty-five thousand British troops and seventeen thousand Hessians, which England was preparing to send out.

Washington did not know where Howe was going; but fearing the British would sail to New York, he moved his army to that city.

422. Siege of Charleston. — The first offensive movement of the British in 1776 was directed against Charleston, South Carolina. In June, a fleet under Sir Peter Parker, and a body of twenty-five hundred British under General Clinton, appeared off Charleston.

The entrance to the harbor was defended by a fort (afterwards named **Fort Moultrie**), made of sand and palmetto-logs, and garrisoned by four hundred men, under Colonel Moultrie.

423. On the 28th of June, a land and naval attack was made on this work. It was a complete failure. The British fleet and force lost severely. In a few days the expedition sailed from Charleston for New York.

South Carolina received the thanks of Congress and the country for the gallant defense of Charleston. It was the salvation of the whole southern coast.

424. Declaration of Independence. — It is a remarkable fact in the early history of the American Revolution, that the colonists claimed they were still loyal subjects of England.¹ The people, at first, really were such; but the war made a great change in the feelings of Americans.

The British Parliament had, in the spring of 1776, proclaimed the Americans rebels, and had raised a large army to crush them. Consequently, Americans saw that nothing short of **independence** would now do.

Congress, being the general government of the colonies, was the proper body to proclaim independence. On the 7th of June, 1776, Richard Henry Lee, a member from Virginia, offered a resolution that the "United Colonies are, and ought to be, free and independent States." This was earnestly debated, and adopted July 2.²

A committee of Congress had been appointed to prepare a Declaration of Independence. This Declaration was written by Thomas Jefferson of Virginia. On the 4th of July, 1776, it was adopted by Congress. The thirteen colonies then became the **United States of America**.

¹ On Jan. 1, 1776, the distinctive standard of the thirteen united colonies was raised at Washington's headquarters. It displayed the stripes of our present flag, but the crosses of St. George and St. Andrew were retained on a blue ground in the corner. This showed that there still existed a recognition of the royal power.

² The exact words of the resolution, adopted July 2, were: "Resolved, that these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown; and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is and ought to be totally dissolved."

425. Washington's Campaign of 1776. — At the date of the Declaration of Independence, Washington had in **New York** an army of seventeen thousand men.

Two days before the Declaration, **General Howe** had arrived with his army from Halifax, and had taken possession of Staten Island. On the 12th of July, a fleet under **Admiral Howe**, a brother of the General, arrived at Staten Island with the new army from Europe. On the 1st of August, the force under **Clinton** arrived from South Carolina. General Howe had then thirty thousand troops.

426. Battle of Long Island. — Howe's plan was to take Brooklyn before trying to capture New York.¹ To guard against this, Washington had given General Putnam five thousand men to defend Long Island.

Towards the end of August, the British landed on Long Island, and engaged the Americans in an action called the **battle of Long Island**, August 27. The Americans were defeated. The American loss was heavy, — about two thousand men. The British loss was about one fifth that number.

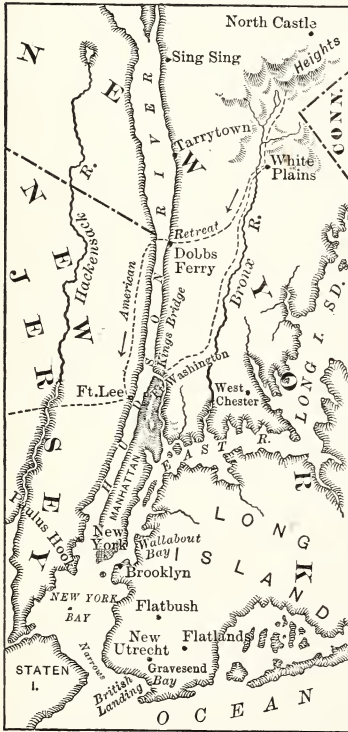
After this defeat, the Americans retreated to the Brooklyn fort. The British delayed attacking this work. With great skill Washington, on the second night after the battle, quietly withdrew the force over the ferry to **New York**.

427. Retreat through New Jersey. — Washington knew he could not hold New York, on account of the British war-ships. Accordingly, in the middle of September, he evacuated New York, and withdrew to **Harlem**. Here, in a smart skirmish, the Americans had the advantage. From Harlem he withdrew

¹ New York was peculiarly exposed to attack from the sea, and could also be invaded from the north by way of Lake Champlain. The Iroquois Indians of the interior were under Tory influence, and there was a considerable Tory element in the population of the state. It was accordingly the plan of the British, by capturing New York City and holding the line of Hudson River, to cut off all communication between the patriots of New England and those of Pennsylvania and the South.

to **White Plains**. Here there was a partial engagement, in which the British had the advantage. The Americans retired to the rocky hills of **North Castle**.

428. The British commander, in place of following up the Americans, resolved to transfer his army to New Jersey. But first he assailed **Fort Washington**, on the Hudson.¹ This work he captured, with about three thousand Americans, November 15.



RETREAT UP THE HUDSON

429. As soon as Washington saw Howe's design of entering New Jersey, he drew his own little force across the Hudson to New Jersey, leaving General **Charles Lee** to hold the position at North Castle.

Washington removed the garrison from **Fort Lee** (opposite Fort Washington), thus giving him about five thousand men, and began the retreat through New Jersey. On the 8th of December he crossed the Delaware.

The British force, under the immediate command of **Lord Cornwallis**, followed up, and took possession of New Brunswick, Princeton, and Trenton.

The American army rested behind the Delaware. It was now in a very bad condition,

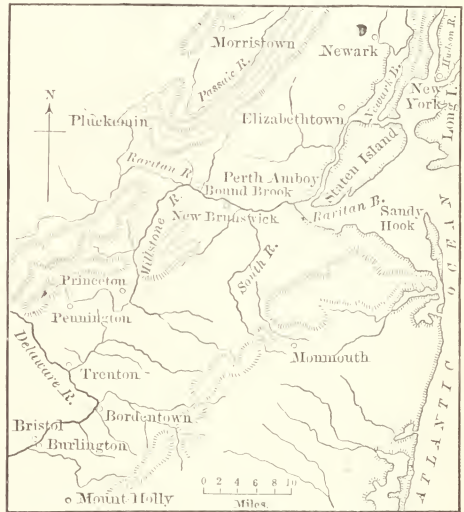
¹ Washington had ordered Greene to evacuate this post, and had himself retired northward. But Congress sent word to Greene to hold Fort Washington as long as he could, and in this confusion of counsels and orders, the garrison after a stubborn resistance was surrendered to Howe.

being reduced by desertion and by expiration of the term of service to about three thousand.

430. Washington several times ordered **General Charles Lee** to join him with the force left on the New York side. Lee disobeyed, and put off his march. Finally he started as if to join Washington, but allowed himself to be captured. It has recently been discovered that Lee was a traitor to the American cause.

The British in New Jersey were waiting for the Delaware to freeze, in order to cross and take Philadelphia. Washington determined to "clip their wings," as he said.

On Christmas night, of 1776, Washington crossed the Delaware, and, next morning, suddenly fell upon a body of fifteen hundred Hessians¹ at **Trenton**. The result was that he captured a thousand Hessians, and lost but four men. This stroke encouraged the army very much, and Washington's force



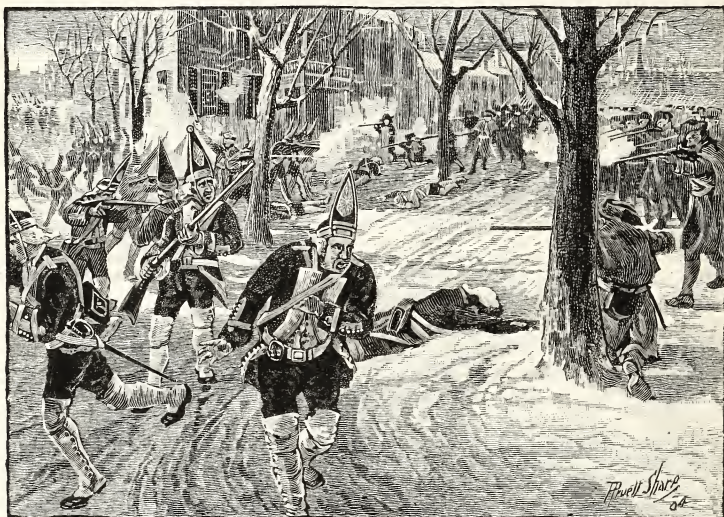
* SEAT OF WAR IN NEW JERSEY

began to increase in numbers.² His whole army was moved across the Delaware to Trenton.

¹ The British ministry had hired many thousands of troops from various German princes to serve against the Americans. This, more than any other act, destroyed the sentiment of loyalty to the British crown. Some of these poor German conscripts came from Hesse-Cassel, and so it happened that the patriots dubbed them all "Hessians."

² The term of enlistment of many of the Americans expired on the New Year's day following, and but for this victory, infusing new spirit into the men, they would almost certainly have gone to their homes. Even as it was, Washington

431. Cornwallis now resolved to attack the Americans at Trenton. The British advanced to that point January 2, 1777, but Washington, by a bold move that night, planted himself on the rear of the British. Marching on **Princeton**, he defeated a body of the enemy, and then marched to **Morristown**.



SURPRISE OF THE HESSIANS AT TRENTON

This brilliant move of Washington's compelled the British to retreat in turn, and thus the Americans regained nearly the whole of New Jersey. The British were confined to New Brunswick and Amboy. Washington held Morristown, and in these positions both sides went into winter quarters.

432. **Capture of Rhode Island.** — On the very day of Washington's retreat over the Delaware, December 8, a British fleet, under Sir Peter Parker, took possession of the island of Rhode Island, and a military force occupied the state.

was compelled to promise that his soldiers should be paid for their services, even if it took all of his private fortune. This example was followed by many of his officers. Especially was the Revolutionary cause indebted for financial aid to the exertions of Robert Morris, an influential citizen of Philadelphia.

DOUBLE CAMPAIGN OF 1777

433. In 1777, there were two important campaigns. The first was the campaign of **Washington** against the British in New Jersey and Pennsylvania; the second, the invasion of northern New York by a British army under **Burgoyne**.

434. Before describing these, there are two events to be noted. First, in April, 1777, a British force, under Governor Tryon made a raid into Connecticut, destroying the military stores at **Danbury**, and burning the town. The raiders were pursued to their vessels by the American militia, and severely handled.

435. Second, a small body of Connecticut militia under Colonel Meigs attacked the British at **Sag Harbor**, on Long Island, burned a dozen vessels, and destroyed a large amount of British supplies.

436. Washington's Campaign. — Washington passed the winter in his winter quarters at Morristown, New Jersey, recruiting his army. By May, 1777, he had about ten thousand men. The British had thirty thousand at **New Brunswick**.

The object of the British now was to get possession of **Philadelphia**. But they feared to march overland while Washington was in New Jersey. They thought it would be safer to embark in transports, and go by water.

437. At the end of June, 1777, the British evacuated New Jersey, and went to Staten Island. A month later, Howe put eighteen thousand troops on transports, and sailed southward, leaving the rest of the army under Clinton to defend New York.

The British fleet did not sail up the Delaware River to Philadelphia, because the Americans had built **Forts Mifflin** and **Mercer** below Philadelphia, to guard the river. On this account the ships sailed to the head of Chesapeake Bay, and

landed at Elkton, in Maryland. From there Howe was to march northward to Philadelphia.¹

438. As soon as Washington knew that the British fleet had really gone southward, he marched his army across New Jersey to Philadelphia. There he was joined by **Lafayette**, a gallant young French nobleman, who had come to fight for American independence. From Philadelphia, Washington went southward to the **Brandywine**, there to prevent the British from moving northward to Philadelphia.



LAFAYETTE

439. On the 11th of September, the British, under Howe, advanced to the Brandywine, where was fought the battle of **Chads Ford**. The Americans were defeated, with a loss of about twelve hundred men.

440. Washington knew that after this he could not defend Philadelphia. Congress moved to **Lancaster**, and afterwards to **York**. The American army retired to **Pottsgrove**, on the Schuylkill. The British entered **Philadelphia**, September 26.

441. Washington soon after formed the design of attacking a detached portion of the British army at **Germantown**, six miles from Philadelphia. The attack was made October 4; but the Americans were repulsed, with a loss of twelve hundred men.

¹ Howe must have been ignorant of the "lay of the land," else he would have spared himself this long voyage. He could have landed his forces on the west bank of the Delaware at any point below the two forts, and these were only about ten miles south of Philadelphia. (See map.)

442. The British were now in secure possession of Philadelphia; but the navigation of the Delaware was not yet open to them, owing to Forts Mifflin and Mercer.

In the latter part of October, the British besieged both these



SCENE OF OPERATIONS IN PENNSYLVANIA

forts. The Americans defended them many days, but were at last obliged to abandon them. The British fleet then sailed up the Delaware to Philadelphia.

443. It was now the fall of 1777, and both armies went into winter quarters, — the British in and around Philadelphia, the Americans at Valley Forge.

444. Burgoyne's Invasion. — While the British were pursuing their triumphant campaign in Pennsylvania, the Americans had a series of brilliant successes in northern New York.

In the spring of 1777, General Burgoyne brought from Europe an army of seven thousand regulars, and, landing in Canada, he increased the force to ten thousand. With this army Burgoyne invaded New York State by way of Lake Champlain. It was intended that, at the same time, a column

under **Clinton** should move up the Hudson from New York City. The British designed to hold the line of the Hudson, and thus separate New England from the Middle States.



GENERAL BURGoyNE

445. Burgoyne first moved his army to **Fort Crown Point**, then in British possession. From there he advanced and besieged **Fort Ticonderoga**, which he captured July 2, 1777. The American garrison retreated to **Fort Edward**.

At **Fort Edward** the American general, **Schuyler**, had four thousand men. This force was too feeble to meet Burgoyne's column; so Schuyler fell back to the islands

at the mouth of the Mohawk. Before leaving **Fort Edward**, Schuyler had felled trees and destroyed bridges over the road by which the British had to advance. From this cause Burgoyne did not reach **Fort Edward** until the 30th of July.

Burgoyne had to remain six weeks at **Fort Edward**. It was found very tedious work to haul supplies through the woods from **Ticonderoga**.

446. The British commander heard of a quantity of stores at **Bennington**, Vermont, and sent Colonel Baum to capture them. Baum's detachment was totally defeated, August 16, by **Colonel John Stark**, with a body of four hundred "Green Mountain Boys" and New Hampshire militia. A fresh body of the British that came up was served in the same way by **Colonel Warner**. The British loss was seven hundred men; the American, less than one hundred.

447. A few days after the victory at **Bennington** came equally cheering news from the valley of the Mohawk. Burgoyne had sent a body of troops under **St. Leger** to take

the American work, **Fort Schuyler**, now Rome, and then to join him at Albany. But St. Leger, after besieging Fort Schuyler, was forced to retreat into Canada, and Burgoyne never got to Albany.

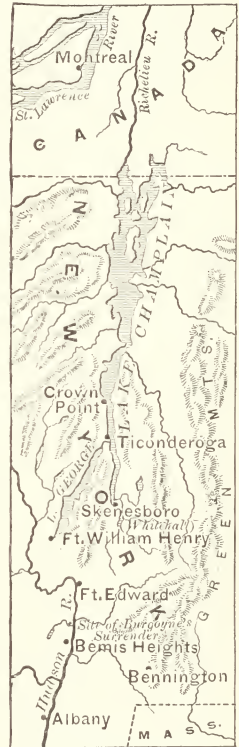
Burgoyne, during this time, remained at Fort Edward. Schuyler, with the American army, remained at the mouth of the Mohawk. The successes had encouraged the people, and the army increased very rapidly. In the middle of August, **General Gates**¹ superseded Schuyler in command. He moved to Stillwater.

448. The British now advanced on Stillwater. Near there, at **Bemis Heights**,² an engagement took place about the middle of September. It was not decisive.

Another action took place on the same ground three weeks later. This time the Americans had decidedly the advantage.

449. Burgoyne now attempted to retreat to Fort Edward. The Americans advanced so rapidly that they cut off his retreat, and surrounded the British at Saratoga (now Schuylerville). The British were nearly out of provisions. There was but one alternative for Burgoyne,—to cut his way out, or surrender. On the 17th of October, he surrendered his whole army of nearly six thousand men.

The effect of this victory was very great. It freed Americans



BURGOYNE'S ROUTE

¹ Gates was a man of very poor abilities, but of boundless assurance. He had secured his appointment to this command by intrigues against Schuyler, and by personal appeals to Congress at Philadelphia.

² The two battles at Bemis Heights are sometimes called the first and second battles of Saratoga, or of Stillwater.

from all fear of invasion from Canada. Patriotism revived, and Washington's thin ranks filled up.

450. What of **Clinton** meantime? Clinton had led a force up the Hudson as far as **Kingston**, which he wantonly burned. Just then the news of Burgoyne's surrender sent him back in great haste to New York.

451. Washington at Valley Forge. — Washington's army remained in winter quarters at Valley Forge in December, 1777. It was a gloomy winter, — the darkest of the war. Washington's army was dispirited with its defeats and retreats. It was miserably supplied. Many of the soldiers were barefoot. They were scantily clad, ill-fed, and unpaid.

As if these were not afflictions enough for Washington, a plot was hatched in Congress to put him out of command of the army. This is called the **Conway cabal**.¹ When the people heard of it, they were so indignant that the projectors of it were glad to slink into silence.

452. The Confederation. — In November, 1777, Congress adopted what are called the **Articles of Confederation**. These Articles were to form the constitution, or general government, for the United States. But this was only to be so if all the states approved. All the states did approve, but not till 1781. The *real* constitution was the patriotism of the American people.

In the same year, 1777, Congress adopted the **stars and stripes** as the flag of the United States. The same year, Captain Wickes floated this flag at his masthead in a successful cruise in British waters.

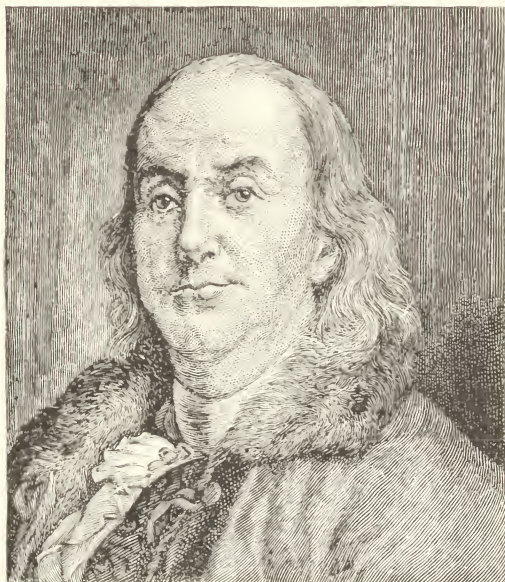
¹ The same faction in Congress which favored Gates's pretensions in the case of Schuyler, encouraged his schemes for promotion to the position of commander-in-chief of the American forces. Chief among the agitators was General Conway, whose enmity Washington had incurred by opposing his appointment to the position of major-general because of his unfitness. He and his friends spoke disparagingly of Washington, and did everything in their power to injure his reputation, even to the extent of publishing forged letters, purporting to have been written by Washington

CAMPAIGNS OF 1778-80

453. The French Alliance. — We now enter on a new period of the war. This period is distinguished by two things, — first, the fact that the French became **allies** of the Americans, and sent out fleets and soldiers to aid; second, that the war was, after this, carried on chiefly in the **South**.

The Americans had, from the beginning of the war, sought to get France to take sides with them. In 1776, **Silas Deane** was sent to France to urge the alliance. France hated England, but she was not yet prepared to come out openly. However, she secretly furnished some arms and supplies.

After the declaration of independence, Congress sent **Benjamin Franklin** on a mission to the court of France. This venerable philosopher was a man of most persuasive manners, and he



BENJAMIN FRANKLIN

materially aided the American cause. When the French king heard of Burgoyne's surrender, he hesitated no longer. On the 6th of February, 1778, he acknowledged the independence of the United States, and made a treaty of alliance with the young Republic.

454. Conciliatory Proposal. — This new danger, and the news of Burgoyne's surrender, brought the British government to its senses. **Commissioners** were sent to offer Americans all they had asked, if they would only become loyal subjects of England. Congress indignantly rejected the proposal. The people now wanted nothing short of independence.

Soon after the rejection of the British proposal of peace, Congress received the news of the French treaty of alliance.

455. America's Friends. — About this time, a number of noble men belonging to various European nations came forward to serve the American cause. Lafayette has already been named. There were, in addition, the Polish patriots, **Kosciusko** and **Pulaski**, and the two Germans, **De Kalb** and **Steuben**. They were able officers and rendered grand service.

456. Change of Base. — In April, 1778, a French fleet, under **Count d'Estaing**, sailed for America.

The effect of this was immediate: the British *fleet* left the Delaware for New York; the British *army*, under Clinton, was also ordered from Philadelphia to New York.

457. The British army evacuated Philadelphia in June and marched towards **New York**. Washington, from Valley Forge, followed the British. The retreating enemy was overtaken near **Monmouth**, New Jersey. Here an action took place, June 28. Owing to the conduct of General Charles Lee, nothing was gained.¹ But Lee himself was dismissed from the service for insolent behavior to General Washington.

Clinton now withdrew his army to New York. Washington soon after this marched to **White Plains**, New York.

458. In July, 1778, the French fleet, under Count d'Estaing, carrying four thousand troops, reached the American coast.²

¹ Washington, ignorant of Lee's treasonable intentions, had intrusted the attack to him. Lee was just beginning a needless retreat when Washington arrived on the ground, ordered Lee to the rear, and averted complete disaster.

² The French fleet was more powerful than that of the British in New York

By Washington's advice, D'Estaing sailed to **Rhode Island** to attack the British fleet. At the same time, Washington sent an American force, under General Sullivan, to coöperate with the French in reducing Newport.

When preparations had been made, D'Estaing sailed out to give battle to the British fleet. Just then there arose a violent storm, which so damaged the French vessels that they had to put into Boston for repairs. In this turn of affairs Sullivan's force had to retire from Rhode Island.

459. In July, 1778, the happy and flourishing settlement of **Wyoming**, in Pennsylvania, was attacked by a force of Tories and Indians, under a brutal leader named Butler. The settlers were massacred, their houses were burned, and an earthly paradise was changed into utter desolation. In November, **Cherry Valley** settlement, New York, experienced the same dreadful fate.

460. Operations of 1779. — The French fleet, after refitting at Boston, sailed for the West Indies. This move had an important effect on the war. The British fleet had to follow the French. The British army without its fleet could not do much in the North. Clinton then resolved to transfer the war to the South, where he would be nearer the fleet.

461. Campaign in Georgia. — The campaign in the South was opened just before the commencement of the year 1779. Clinton sent from New York a British division which captured **Savannah**, December 29, 1778. Early in January, 1779, the British General Prevost took the fort at **Sunbury** and marched to Savannah, where he assumed command of the English forces.

Soon after the conquest of Georgia, General Lincoln took command of the American troops in the southern department.

harbor, and it was at first intended to make a direct attack upon the city. But the ships of deepest draught could not be got over the bar, and the French were reluctantly compelled to give up the idea.

He established himself in South Carolina, and prepared to resist the British.

462. The English fully expected to be joined by large numbers of Southern Tories. A body of renegades did, indeed, rise in arms and march to unite with the enemy. But they were met at **Kettle Creek**, February, 1779, and totally defeated by Colonel Pickens.

463. In March, Lincoln sent two thousand men, under General Ash, against the British in Georgia. This force encamped at **Brier Creek**, where it was surprised, and defeated by Prevost, with heavy loss.

464. In April, Lincoln, with a force of five thousand militia, marched into Georgia. Upon this the British marched against **Charleston**. Lincoln hastened back to its defense, and on hearing of his approach, the enemy withdrew. Lincoln followed up and made an attack on a British force at Stono Ferry; but he was not successful. The British returned to Savannah, and the summer heats hindered further operations till September.

465. Events in the North. — While these events were in progress in the South, several operations were made in the North, by both the British and the Americans. They were all of secondary importance.

The **British** operations were: —

1. A plundering expedition, under Governor Tryon, to **Connecticut**.

2. A naval expedition which went to Virginia and partially destroyed the towns of **Portsmouth** and **Norfolk**.

3. An expedition from New York, under Clinton, resulting in the capture of the American posts at **Stony Point** and **Verplanks Point**, on the Hudson.

4. A second **Connecticut** expedition, under Tryon, resulting

in the plundering and partial destruction of **New Haven, East Haven, Fairfield, and Norwalk.**

466. On the part of the **Americans**, the first achievement was the recapture of **Stony Point**, two or three weeks after it was taken by the British.

Stony Point was a place of importance to Washington, who sent **General Anthony Wayne** to recover it. Wayne, in a night attack, scaled the fort, and captured it at the point of the bayonet.

467. The second operation was the capture of **Paulus Hook** (now Jersey City), in July, by Major Lee.

468. The third operation was a land and naval expedition, which, in July, went from Boston against the British at **Fort Castine**, on the Penobscot. This was a total failure, as some British men-of-war destroyed the American flotilla, and the troops had to make their way back to Massachusetts through the wilderness.

469. The fourth operation was designed to avenge the massacres of Wyoming and Cherry Valley. Washington sent General Sullivan with a large force, which attacked the **Indians** on the frontiers of Pennsylvania and New York. The savages were everywhere defeated, forty of their villages were burned, and their power was forever broken.

470. Siege of Savannah. — In September, 1779, D'Estaing's fleet from the West Indies appeared off **Savannah**. The fleet bore six thousand French troops. It was proposed that this fleet and force should cooperate with the American force under General Lincoln in besieging Savannah.

After a month's preparation, an assault was made on the British works. The attack was repulsed with severe loss to the French and Americans, nearly one thousand men being killed or wounded. The gallant **Count Pulaski** was among the slain.

After this, the French fleet sailed home, and Lincoln withdrew his force to South Carolina. The failure spread gloom throughout the South.

471. Paul Jones.— During the summer of 1779, the American commissioners at Paris fitted out a squadron which was placed under command of **Paul Jones**, a Scotch-American of wonderful pluck and skill.



PAUL JONES

In September, 1779, Jones, with his squadron, when cruising off the coast of Scotland, fell in with two English frigates convoying a fleet of merchantmen. Jones attacked the frigates, and, after one of the most bloody sea-fights ever known, captured both.

472. Situation at the Close of 1779.— There was a very despondent feeling at the close of the year 1779. The Americans had gained no important victory. Besides, American finances were in a very bad condition. Congress had been making **paper money** to carry on the war, and so much of this was issued that it greatly depreciated in value. It took at this time thirty dollars of continental money to make one in specie; afterwards it took fifty and sixty.

To purchase provisions with this currency was at first difficult, and finally impossible. Washington had to take supplies from the surrounding country, giving in payment his own orders on the government. Even then his army, shivering in its winter quarters at Morristown, was suffering very much. If the soldiers of the American army had not been men who were fighting for principle, the war would now have utterly broken down.

CAMPAIGN IN THE CAROLINAS

473. After the year 1779, all the important military operations of the Revolutionary War were made in the **South**. There were two campaigns, — the campaign in the **Carolinas** and the final campaign in **Virginia**.

This chapter will contain an account of the Carolina campaign; the next of the Virginia campaign.

474. British Change of Base. — The day after Christmas of the year 1779, Sir Henry Clinton embarked the principal part of his army on transports at New York and sailed southward under convoy of a British squadron. The British landed at **Savannah**, and prepared to attack Charleston.

475. Siege of Charleston. — Early in 1780, Clinton landed near Charleston, worked his way up to near the city, and in April began erecting works across the neck of land in the rear of Charleston. A week afterwards, the British fleet succeeded in passing Fort Moultrie, and anchored within cannon range of the city.

While Clinton thus held the American army in Charleston, he sent off detachments to meet any bodies of militia that might be coming to the relief of the city. Two parties were formed, — one at **Monks Corner**, on the Cooper River, the other on the **Santee**, — and both were cut off.

The situation of the Americans in Charleston was now hopeless. Lincoln was compelled to surrender his force of about three thousand men, May 12, 1780.

476. South Carolina Overrun. — Clinton's next object was to make himself master of the whole state; to subjugate South Carolina and reestablish the royal authority there. For this purpose he sent out detachments, which held the most important points of the state.

The British commander expected that many **Southern Royalists** would join his standard. He was not wholly mistaken in this. A number of the baser sort did side with the enemies of their country, and for a while the whole population seemed to be submissive.

Clinton was so sure his work was accomplished, that he embarked a large part of his army and sailed back to New York. He left **Lord Cornwallis** in command in the South.

477. Marion and Sumter. — The submission was only apparent. A number of dashing officers like **Francis Marion** and **Thomas Sumter** arose, and, with such irregular troops as they could collect, carried on a partisan warfare. They harassed the enemy in every way, kept the Tories from rising, and confined the British operations within narrow limits.

478. Gates's Operations. — To aid the Southern patriots, Congress, in July, 1780, sent down General Gates with a body of troops, which, with the Carolina militia, made about five thousand men.

Gates marched through North Carolina into South Carolina, and Cornwallis hurried forward from Charleston to meet him. The two met near Camden, and the battle of **Sanders Creek** took place, August 16. In this action Gates was defeated with heavy loss. After this disaster, Gates retreated to **Hillsboro**, North Carolina.

479. The British behaved with great barbarity in South Carolina; but they did not have things all their own way. The partisan leaders were active. Eight of these trooper-chiefs, uniting their little bands, attacked a large force of British and Tories on **Kings Mountain**. The patriots utterly defeated the enemy, who lost eleven hundred in killed, wounded, and prisoners, while the patriots lost but twenty men.

480. In December, 1780, Gates was superseded by **General Nathanael Greene**, one of the ablest of the American commanders.

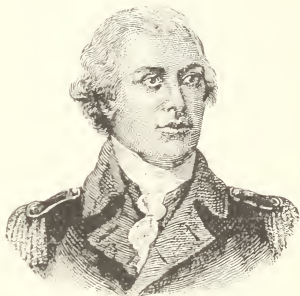
481. Greene's Campaign of 1781. — Early in January, 1781, General Greene sent out General Morgan, with one thousand men, to the western part of South Carolina, to hold the British in check. The bold British cavalry leader Tarleton was sent against him. The two forces met at **Cowpens**, January 17, and Morgan defeated Tarleton. The American loss was seventy; the British, seven hundred, and all their artillery.

When Cornwallis heard of Tarleton's defeat, he started in pursuit of Morgan, who was marching towards **Virginia** with his booty and prisoners. Cornwallis tried to intercept Morgan before he reached the ford of the Catawba River; but he did not succeed. Two hours after Morgan crossed, the British arrived on the opposite bank; but during the night there was a heavy rain, which made the river impassable for two days.

482. Greene now joined Morgan, and took the command. Cornwallis, as soon as possible, continued the pursuit, but Greene made his retreat with great skill, and got safely across the Dan River into Virginia.

Here Cornwallis gave up the chase, and retired to Hillsboro. Greene soon returned to North Carolina and kept harassing the British. One of his officers, **Colonel Lee**, known as "Light Horse Harry,"¹ fell in with a body of three hundred and fifty Royalists, and killed or captured them all.

483. In a short time, Greene, having received some reinforcements, felt himself able to strike a blow. He advanced to **Guilford Court House**, where a severe action was fought, March 15. The losses were about equal, and the action was indecisive.



NATHANAEL GREENE

¹ This man was the father of Robert E. Lee, the distinguished general.

Soon after this, Cornwallis drew off, marched with the bulk of his force to **Wilmington**, North Carolina, and shortly afterwards was called north to Virginia.

484. The British force left in South Carolina was under Lord Rawdon.¹ Greene advanced on this force, and was attacked by it at **Hobkirks Hill** in April. The advantage was on the British side, but Greene kept annoying Rawdon so much that he withdrew to Eutaw Springs.

Meantime, the enterprising troopers, Marion, Sumter, and Lee, captured various British posts. The result was that, by midsummer of 1781, the British were confined to the positions of Ninety-Six, Eutaw Springs, and Charleston.

Greene, in May, proceeded against the stronghold of Ninety-Six, which he assaulted. The attack was unsuccessful, and the Americans withdrew to pass the hot months in the hills of the Santee.

485. In September, Greene resumed the offensive. On the 8th, he attacked the British at **Eutaw Springs**. The action was not decisive, the loss on each side being about the same.

The battle of Eutaw was the last engagement in the Carolinas. The enemy had been so much harassed by Greene and the partisan leaders, that they left the open country and retired to Charleston. Here the Americans watched them closely till the end of the war.

486. It thus appears that, in the campaign in the Carolinas, though Greene often retreated, and though he won no very important victory, yet the main object was accomplished. He was a general of wonderful pluck, perseverance, foresight, and skill. Washington had long known Greene's great abilities, and it was at his special and urgent request that Greene was appointed to the command in the south.

¹ Lord Rawdon, as Marquis of Hastings, was afterwards Governor-General of India. He was not in any way related to Warren Hastings who had made the name of Hastings famous by his administration of the same office.

THE FINAL CAMPAIGN

487. The winter of 1779–80, spent by Washington's army in winter quarters, was a period of great suffering, — one of the gloomiest of the war.

488. In midsummer of 1780, the Americans were greatly encouraged by the arrival of **Admiral de Ternay**, with a fleet having on board six thousand French troops, under the Count de Rochambeau. This fleet and force were sent out by the French king through the influence of Lafayette, who had passed the previous winter in France.

The French fleet and force went to **Newport**, Rhode Island. It was not thought best to do anything during the remainder of the year 1780.

489. Arnold's Treason. — It was in September, 1780, that the treasonable plot of **Benedict Arnold** was discovered.

Arnold had been a brave and skillful officer ; but in Philadelphia, of which city he was put in command in 1778, he married a lady of Tory family and was thrown much into Tory society. This gave his enemies a pretext for many slanders. Arnold was finally court-martialed for appropriating public money to his own use. He was acquitted of this charge, but sentenced to be reprimanded for certain petty imprudences. In August, 1780, Washington, whose confidence in Arnold was as great as ever, put him in command of the important fortress of **West Point**.

490. Filled with a reckless spirit of revenge upon those who, as he believed, had slighted his great claims to preferment, and treated him with gross indignity, Arnold now entered into a correspondence with the British commander at New York. He agreed to deliver up **West Point** for a reward of ten thousand pounds sterling and a general's commission. A personal interview was necessary, and General Clinton sent his aide-de-

camp, **Major André**, in a sloop-of-war, up the Hudson for that purpose.

When André was ready to return, he found the sloop had been obliged to move down the river. He therefore attempted to reach New York by land. He went disguised as a citizen. At Tarrytown he was seized by three militia-men, to whom he confessed that he was a British officer. They sent him to the nearest American post. The commander incautiously allowed André to write to Arnold. Arnold, taking the alarm, fled to a British vessel, and went down the Hudson to General Clinton at New York. He got his reward.

André was hanged as a spy. His three captors were John Paulding, Isaac Van Wert, and David Williams. Congress gave each of them a medal and a pension for life.

491. Troubles in Camp. — The winter of 1780–81 brought new sufferings to the soldiers in Washington's camp at Morristown. So grievous did these privations become, that, on New Year's day of 1781, the **Pennsylvania line**, to the number of thirteen hundred, left the camp, with the intention of marching to Philadelphia and demanding that Congress should give them relief. They were met at Princeton by a committee from Congress, who satisfied their demands, and they returned to camp.

492. This demonstration and a similar one made soon after by a body of New Jersey troops made Congress realize that something must be done to better the condition of the army.

Congress accordingly appointed **Robert Morris**, a wealthy Philadelphia merchant, financial agent of the government. He was a great financier, and he took measures which relieved the army very much.

493. Concentration in Virginia. — The early months of 1781 saw a number of military movements that resulted in placing the opposing armies in a position in which the Americans were able to win a victory that ended the war.

494. In January, 1781, General Clinton sent the traitor **Arnold**, with sixteen hundred men, into Virginia. He advanced on Richmond, where he committed much havoc. He then fortified himself at **Portsmouth**. Here he received a reinforcement of two thousand troops.

To oppose Arnold, Washington sent **Lafayette** into Virginia, with twelve hundred men.

495. At this time **Cornwallis**, who went to Wilmington after the Carolina campaign, marched northward to Petersburg, Virginia. Cornwallis now took command of all the British forces in Virginia.

Lafayette, with his small army, now raised to three thousand men, could only watch the enemy.

In June, 1781, Cornwallis received a message from Clinton, telling him to take up a position on the seacoast of Virginia.

Cornwallis chose **Yorktown**, on the south side of the York River. Here he fortified himself.

The reason why Clinton told Cornwallis to get near the seacoast was because he wished the Virginia force to be handy in case Washington should attack New York.

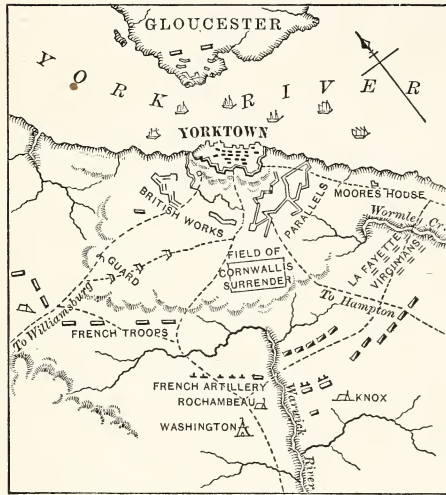
496. Washington, in the summer of 1781, really had formed a design of attacking the British in New York, but he now gave it up, as he thought he could accomplish more by striking a blow at Cornwallis in Virginia.

Washington, however, continued so to act as to make Clinton think he was really going to attack New York. In September, when everything was ready, he suddenly drew off, and, with the allied forces, made forced marches for Yorktown.¹

¹ It was in the middle of August that Washington received word from the French admiral, De Grasse, that he was about to sail for the Chesapeake, and from Lafayette that Cornwallis had taken up his position at Yorktown. Washington quickly formed his plan. Crossing New Jersey with his little army and his French allies, he left Trenton on the 1st of September, and arrived at Elkton at the head of Chesapeake Bay on the 5th. The rest of his course was by water.

497. Siege of Yorktown.—Washington appeared before Yorktown, September 28, 1781.

The French fleet of **Count de Grasse** had previously entered the Chesapeake, and blocked up James and York rivers. This prevented escape by water; Washington prevented escape by land. It was now simply a question of time as to the surrender of the British army. It numbered about eight thousand men. Washington had sixteen thousand.



SIEGE OF YORKTOWN

works, and did terrible execution. During the bombardment the British lost over five hundred men.

Cornwallis stood the siege for three weeks. Finding his situation hopeless, he offered to capitulate. On the 19th of October, the British commander surrendered his army of over seven thousand men.

498. Close of the War.—The news of this great victory awoke exultation from one end of the United States to the other. Patriotic demonstrations of all kinds were made, and Congress appointed a day of public thanksgiving.



LORD CORNWALLIS

Although the war had not formally closed, yet it was practically over. The British still continued to hold New York and Charleston, but the soul of the war was gone.

In the British Parliament resolutions for terminating the war were introduced. In the spring of 1782, the British Ministry offered to treat with the Americans. **John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Henry Laurens, and John Jay** were appointed commissioners for the United States to conclude a peace with Great Britain. On the 30th of November, a preliminary treaty of peace was signed at Paris.

499. Treaty of Paris. — The final treaty of peace was signed on the 3d of September, 1783. By this, Great Britain acknowledged the independence of the United States. The boundaries of the United States were agreed upon as extending northward to the Great Lakes and westward to the Mississippi.¹

500. The army, during all these proceedings, remained in the field. The war-toils of the soldiers had ceased; but there were causes of trouble that threatened disaster to the Republic. The troops had not been paid for so long a time that they began to mutiny. Washington, however, by his firmness and wisdom, settled the whole matter.

The 3d of November, 1783, was appointed for the **disbanding of the army**. Then the patriot soldiers of the Revolution returned to their homes. They carried with them the proud consciousness that they had made their country free and independent.

By the close of the year the last British war-ship had disappeared from the ports of the United States. The British evacuated New York in November, and Charleston in December.

501. Washington, on the 4th of December, took farewell of his officers at New York. He then went to Annapolis, where Congress was sitting, and resigned his commission. He retired

¹ All *west* of the Mississippi was recognized as belonging to Spain. Florida, which had been in British possession since 1763 (close of the French and Indian War), was restored to Spain.

to his farm at **Mount Vernon**, carrying with him the love and gratitude of his countrymen.

502. The Confederation. — The government of the United States at the close of the war was not the government as we now know it. It was a **Confederation**, or league of states. In place of the Constitution, they had the **Articles of Confederation**. These Articles of Confederation had been agreed to by Congress in 1777, and ratified by all the states in 1781.

The Confederation, by these Articles, had the power of incurring debts, but no power of paying them. All it could do was to recommend the several states to pay each its own proportion. But the states had their own local debts, and business was very much depressed; so it was found very hard to meet the obligations of the general government.

503. In some of the states where it was attempted to tax the people to pay the debt, insurrections occurred. This was particularly the case in Massachusetts. Here there was quite a disturbance, known as **Shays's Rebellion**. The military had to be called out to put it down.

504. The Confederation, moreover, had no power to make general laws for regulating **commerce**. The result was so bad that merchants all over the country came forward to urge the establishment of a uniform system of trade duties.

505. Three years after the conclusion of peace the opinion had become general that there should be a revision of the Articles of Confederation. Finally, in 1787, it was agreed that a **convention** of delegates from all the states should be held for this purpose.

506. The Constitution. — The "Constitutional Convention" met at Philadelphia in May, 1787. George Washington was elected presiding officer. When the convention came to consider the Articles of Confederation, they found them so faulty

that it was resolved, in place of mending the old constitution, to form a new **Constitution** and union.

After four months' deliberation, the Constitution was agreed on. It was signed September 17, 1787. By the middle of the year 1788, majorities of the people in eleven states had adopted the Constitution. The remaining two adopted it soon afterwards.

507. The Constitution, while under discussion in the several states, met with strong opposition. Many thought it gave too much power to the Federal government. The people divided into two parties, — the **Federalists**, who favored the adoption of the Constitution; and the **Anti-Federalists**, who opposed it. This is the reason why it was not completely ratified till 1790.

It was appointed that the new government, the "more perfect Union," should go into operation **March 4, 1789**.

508. Under the provisions of the Constitution the people of the United States elected members of Congress and a President. The President chosen was **GEORGE WASHINGTON**.



TOPICAL REVIEW

I. OF THE CAMPAIGNS

*The first action of the Revolutionary War was **Lexington**, fought April 19, 1775. The last action was the siege of **Yorktown**, which surrendered October 19, 1781. Thus the operations in the field lasted six years and a half.*

I. The first division of the Revolutionary War is the campaign of 1775. The events are: —

- 1.** Skirmish at **Lexington**, Mass., April 19; American success.
- 2.** Capture of **Ticonderoga** and **Crown Point** in May; American success.
- 3.** Battle of **Bunker Hill**, June 17; British success.
- 4.** Montgomery's invasion of **Canada** in the fall; British success.

II. *The second division of the Revolutionary War is the campaign of 1776. The events are:—*

1. The **siege of Boston** and occupation by Washington, in March; American success.
2. **Siege of Charleston**, in June; American success.
3. Washington's move to **New York**, British concentration on Staten Island, **Battle of Long Island** in August; British success.
4. Washington's retreat from New York in September, skirmish at **White Plains**, N.Y.; British success.
5. Capture of **Fort Washington** in November; British success.
6. Washington's retreat into and through **New Jersey**, behind the Delaware, which was crossed December 8.
7. Capture of **Rhode Island**, December 8; British success.
8. Washington's recrossing of the Delaware, and blow at the British at **Trenton**, December 26; American success.
9. Action at **Princeton**, January 3, 1777; American success.

III. *The third division of the Revolutionary War is the double campaign of 1777,—the campaign of Washington against Howe, in Pennsylvania, and the campaign of Schuyler and Gates against Burgoyne, in New York. The events of Washington's campaign are:—*

1. British change of base from New York to the Chesapeake, in July, 1777.
2. Washington's forward move to the **Brandywine**.
3. Battle of **Chads Ford**, on the Brandywine, in September; British success.
4. British occupation of **Philadelphia**, September 25, as the result.
5. Washington's attack on **Germantown**, in October; British success.
6. Capture of **Forts Mercer** and **Mifflin**, thus opening the Delaware; British success.

The events of Burgoyne's campaign are:—

1. Capture of **Ticonderoga**, in July; British success.
2. Evacuation of **Fort Edward** in July, by Schuyler, who takes position at the mouth of the Mohawk.
3. Action at **Bennington**, in August; American success.
4. Siege of **Fort Schuyler** by the British, in August; American success.

5. First battle of **Bemis Heights**, N.Y., September 19; indecisive.
6. Second battle of **Bemis Heights**, October 7; American success.
7. **Surrender** of Burgoyne at Saratoga (Schuylerville), October 17; American success.

IV. *The fourth division of the Revolutionary War comprises the campaigns of 1778-79. The leading events of this period are:—*

1. French **treaty** of alliance, February 6, 1778.
2. British change of base from Philadelphia to **New York**, in June, 1778.
3. Action at **Monmouth**, N.J., June 28, 1778; indecisive.
4. Arrival of the French fleet and force, under **D'Estaing**, in July, 1778.
5. Attempted operation against the British at **Newport**, R.I., in August; unsuccessful.
6. The French fleet sails to the **West Indies**, in the fall of 1778.
7. In consequence of this, Clinton transfers the seat of war to the **South**.
8. **Georgia** occupied by the British, in January, 1779.
9. Defeat of Tories at **Kettle Creek**, Ga., in February, 1779, by Colonel Pickens; American success.
10. Attack on the British at **Brier Creek**, in March; British success.
11. Minor operations and raids of the British in the North, in the summer of 1779; capture of **Stony Point** by the British; **recapture** of Stony Point by Wayne, in July.
12. Return of the French fleet to **Savannah**, in September, 1779; siege of that place by the French and Americans; unsuccessful.

V. *The fifth division of the Revolutionary War is the campaign in the Carolinas, commencing with the beginning of 1780, and extending to the end of 1781. The events of the Carolina campaign are:—*

1. Clinton's transfer of the bulk of the British army from New York to **Savannah**, January, 1780.
2. **Siege of Charleston**; its surrender, May 12, 1780; British success.
3. Gates sent down to Carolina.
4. Action of **Sanders Creek**, South Carolina, in August, 1780; British success.
5. Action at **Kings Mountain**, South Carolina, in October, 1780; American success.

6. Greene takes command in Carolina, in December, 1780.
7. Action at **Cowpens**, in January, 1781; American success.
8. Retreat of the American army into **Virginia**, and pursuit by Cornwallis, January, 1781; American success.
9. Return of Greene into North Carolina. Action at **Guilford Court-House**, in March, 1781; indecisive.
10. Greene's advance to **Hobkirks Hill**, South Carolina. Attack by the British in April; British success.
11. Greene's assault of **Ninety-Six**, S.C., in May; British success.
12. Action at **Eutaw Springs**, S.C., in September, 1781; indecisive.
13. And, as the result of the whole Carolina campaign of eighteen months, that the British occupy only Charleston.

VI. *The sixth division of the Revolutionary War is the final campaign. The events of this period are:—*

1. The arrival of a **French fleet** and force of six thousand men, in midsummer of 1780.
2. The British concentration in Virginia in the early months of 1781. Arnold and Cornwallis sent to Virginia. Cornwallis takes position at **Yorktown** in June, 1781.
3. Washington deceives Clinton by making him believe he is going to attack New York, and then rushes to Yorktown.
4. **Siege of Yorktown** by the allied forces and the fleet, September and October, 1781. **Surrender** of Cornwallis October 19, 1781. American success and end of military operations.

II. OF IMPORTANT POLITICAL FACTS

1. American **Independence** declared July 4, 1776.
2. The "**Articles of Confederation**," adopted by Congress November 15, 1777; ratified by *all* the states March, 1781. They then became the Constitution of the country.
3. British **commissioners** sent to America to negotiate terms, April, 1778. Terms rejected.
4. Preliminary articles of peace signed at Paris, November 30, 1782. Final **treaty of Paris** signed September 3, 1783.
5. Constitutional convention met at Philadelphia in May, 1787. **Constitution** signed September 17, 1787; ratified in eleven states by middle of 1788; new government went into operation March 4, 1789.

III. OF THE PRINCIPAL BATTLES

When fought	Where fought	Commanders		Army successful
		American	British	
1775	Lexington, Mass.,	Parker,	{ Smith and }	American.
	Ticonderoga, N.Y.,	Allen,	{ Piteairn, }	American.
	Bunker Hill, Mass.,	Prescott,	{ Howe and }	British.
1776	Quebec, Can.,	Montgomery,	{ Clinton, }	British.
	Fort Moultrie, S.C.,	Moultrie,	{ Clinton & Sir }	American.
1777	Long Island, N.Y.,	Putnam,	{ Peter Parker, }	American.
	White Plains, N.Y.,	McDougall,	{ Howe and }	British.
	Fort Washington, N.Y.,	Magaw,	{ Clinton, }	British.
	Trenton, N.J.,	Washington,	Rahl,	American.
	Princeton, N.J.,	Washington,	Mawhood,	American.
	Ticonderoga, N.Y.,	St. Clair,	Burgoyne,	British.
	Fort Schuyler, N.Y.,		St. Leger,	American.
	Bennington, Vt.,	Stark,	Baum,	American.
	Bennington, Vt.,	Warner,	Breyman,	American.
	Brandywine, Pa.,	Washington,	Howe,	British.
1778	Bemis Heights, N.Y.,	Gates,	Burgoyne,	Indecisive.
	Germantown, Pa.,	Washington,	Howe,	British.
	Bemis Heights, N.Y.,	Gates,	Burgoyne,	American.
	Fort Mifflin, Pa.,	Col. Greene,	Donop,	American.
	Monmouth, N.J.,	Washington,	Clinton,	American.
	Wyoming, Pa.,	Zeb. Butler,	John Butler,	British.
	Rhode Island, R.I.,	Sullivan,	Pigot,	American.
	Cherry Valley, N.Y.,		Brant,	British.
	Savannah, Ga.,	Robt. Howe,	Campbell,	British.
	1779	Sunbury, Ga.,	Lane,	Prevost,
Kettle Creek, Pa.,		Pickens,	Boyd,	American.
Brier Creek, Ga.,		Ash,	Prevost,	British.
Stono Ferry, S.C.,		Lincoln,		British.
Stony Point, N.Y.,		Wayne,	Johnson,	American.
Paulus Hook, N.J.,		Lee,		American.
1780	Savannah, Ga.,	Lincoln,	Prevost,	British.
	Monks Corner, S.C.,		Tarleton,	British.
	Charleston, S.C.,	Lincoln,	Clinton,	British.
	Sanders Creek, S.C.,	Gates,	Cornwallis,	British.
	Fishing Creek, S.C.,	Sumter,	Tarleton,	British.
	Kings Mountain, S.C.,	Campbell,	Ferguson,	American.
1781	Cowpens, S.C.,	Morgan,	Tarleton,	American.
	Guilford C. H., N.C.,	Greene,	Cornwallis,	British.
	Hobkirks Hill, S.C.,	Greene,	Rawdon,	British.
	Ninety-Six, S.C.,	Greene,		British.
	Fort Griswold, Conn.,	Ledyard,	Arnold.	British.
	Eutaw Springs, S.C.,	Greene,	Stewart,	Indecisive.
	Yorktown, Va.,	{ Washington }	Cornwallis,	American.
	{ & De Grasse, }			

PERIOD IV

THE CONSTITUTIONAL PERIOD, 1789 —

HISTORY OF THE ADMINISTRATIONS

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1789-1797

509. Introduction.— We now enter on the most important period of our history, — the period when our country really became the UNITED STATES.

This period includes : —

First, a brief history of the successive administrations from Washington's up to the War of Secession in 1861. This may be called the **political history** of the United States.

Second, the history of the **War of Secession** in the United States.

Third, **subsequent history.**

Fourth, a history of the founding and progress of the states of the Southwest and Northwest, and the history of the founding and growth of the states of the Pacific coast. This may be called the **growth of states.**

Fifth, a history of the progress of the United States in the arts, sciences, etc. This may be called **American progress.**

510. The Government Established.— Washington was inaugurated as President of the United States, April 30, 1789.¹ The ceremony took place at New York, which was then the capital of the United States. John Adams, of Massachusetts, had been elected Vice President.

¹ The Constitution was to go into operation on the 4th of March, but traveling was difficult and slow, and Congress was late in assembling.

511. The Constitution had declared that the **government** of the United States should consist of three branches, — the **legislative** department, which makes the laws; the **executive** department, which enforces them; and the **judicial** department, which interprets them. The *law-making* power is Congress, the *law-enforcing* power is the President, the *law-interpreting* power resides in certain courts.

. 512. Congress began by decreeing that to the **executive** department should belong four departments, — the Department of State (having charge of foreign affairs), the Department of the Treasury, the Department of War, and the Department of Law. The heads of the first three are called secretaries; of the last, the Attorney-General. The whole constitutes the President's **Cabinet**.¹

513. **Important Facts.** — The most important task for Congress to perform was to provide a **revenue** for the support of the government. For this purpose duties were laid on all imported goods. Such duties are called a **tariff**.



ALEXANDER HAMILTON

514. The wise treatment of the **public debt** was the next thing. Alexander Hamilton proposed a financial plan, which Congress adopted. By this plan, the war debt of the general government and of the several states (amounting in all to about seventy-four million dollars) was funded and afterwards paid. The **Bank of the United States** was established in 1791.²

¹ Washington's first Cabinet was as follows: Alexander Hamilton, Secretary of the Treasury; Thomas Jefferson, Secretary of State; Henry Knox, Secretary of War; and Edmund Randolph, Attorney-General. Other departments — as of the Navy and the Post-Office — have been created since. John Jay was appointed Chief-Justice of the United States.

² At this time the English system of pounds, shillings, and pence was formally abandoned, and our decimal system of coinage was adopted.

515. The people of the United States now went vigorously to work on their farms and in their workshops. The finances of the country were on a sound basis, and Americans felt that they had a good government. The result was a season of great prosperity.

516. In 1790, Congress decreed that the seat of government should be for ten years in Philadelphia; after that permanently in the **District of Columbia**, on the Potomac. Washington chose the site of the city which received his illustrious name.

517. **Vermont** was admitted into the Union as a state in 1791, **Kentucky** in 1792, and **Tennessee** in 1796.

518. The Constitution fixed the presidential term at four years. As Washington would thus go out of office March 4, 1793, the American people, in the fall of 1792, again elected him President and John Adams Vice President.

519. Up to this time there had been very little politics in the country; but political lines now began to be drawn. Hamilton was considered the head of the **Federalists**, Jefferson of the **Republicans**.¹

520. At the beginning of Washington's second term of office the country was much distressed by the great **French Revolution**. Many Americans wished to aid France in her struggle for liberty against England, Spain, and Holland. Washington knew the wise course for the United States was to remain neutral. The French Republic, in 1793, appointed **Citizen Genet** Minister to the United States. Genet was very indiscreet, and thought that, as there was in America much popular enthusiasm for France, he might do anything; so he went to work fitting out privateers. Washington had to demand his recall.

¹ The Federalists favored a strong Federal government. The Republicans thought power should be more in the hands of the people, and of the states, and wished a strictly democratic government. This party retained the title of Republican from 1792-1828, when it took for itself its present name — the Democratic party. The Federalists, on the other hand, were succeeded in 1828 by the National Republicans; these by the Whigs in 1833; and the latter by the present Republican party, which first nominated national candidates in 1856.

521. In 1794 the people of western Pennsylvania resisted the collection of taxes on distilled spirits, and rose in what is called the Whiskey Insurrection. Washington sent an armed force into the region; thereupon the ringleaders fled, and their followers submitted to the law.

522. The **boundaries** between the Spanish possessions of Louisiana and Florida and the United States had never been definitely fixed. In 1795, a treaty was made with Spain, which settled this question, and gave the United States the right of navigating the Mississippi.

523. Washington's retirement took place at the close of his second administration, March 4, 1797. He had refused reelection in 1796, and published his **Farewell Address**,—a document breathing the loftiest political wisdom and the purest patriotism. At the close of his term he retired to his home at Mount Vernon.

JOHN ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION, 1797-1801

524. The *second* President of the United States was **John Adams** of Massachusetts.¹ He was inaugurated March 4, 1797.



JOHN ADAMS

525. **Meaning of the Election.**—The election of Adams was a triumph of the **Federalists**, who desired that the principles of Washington's administration should continue to be pursued. The Republicans, believing the Federalists to be less friendly than themselves to democratic liberty, had made great efforts to elect Thomas Jefferson; but Adams succeeded. Jefferson was chosen Vice President.

¹ John Adams was a cousin of Samuel Adams, famous for his opposition to the Stamp Act, and as the organizer of the Committees of Correspondence.

526. Important Facts. — The administration of Adams found the internal affairs of the United States in a highly prosperous condition. The agricultural and commercial wealth of the country had increased beyond all former example.

527. The external affairs — that is, the foreign relations of the United States — were not in so favorable a condition. The particular trouble was with France.

The French government, being angry because the United States did not take up the quarrel of France with England, adopted **trade regulations** that were very injurious to American commerce. Many American vessels were captured by the French for pretended violations of these unjust commercial regulations. Agents from the United States, sent to France, were met by French agents, who demanded large sums of money before they would negotiate.

528. These events excited great indignation in the United States. “Millions for defense, but not one cent for tribute,”¹ resounded from every quarter. Congress, in May, 1798, authorized **reprisals**; that is, the capture of armed French vessels. A small army, also, was raised, and Washington reluctantly undertook its command.

The storm of war was mercifully averted. It is true, **hostilities** began on the ocean. The American frigate *Constellation*, after a desperate fight, captured a larger French frigate; but circumstances arose that warded off the conflict. In the autumn of 1799, **Napoleon Bonaparte** overthrew the government of France, and took the control of affairs into his own hands. Napoleon made a **treaty of peace** with the United States in 1800.

529. It was in the midst of these events that **Washington** was removed from the scene of his earthly glories. He died at Mount Vernon, December 14, 1799, at the age of sixty-eight years. The entire American people put on mourning, the sin-

¹ These were the words of Charles C. Pinckney, one of the framers of the Constitution, who was at this time our representative at Paris.

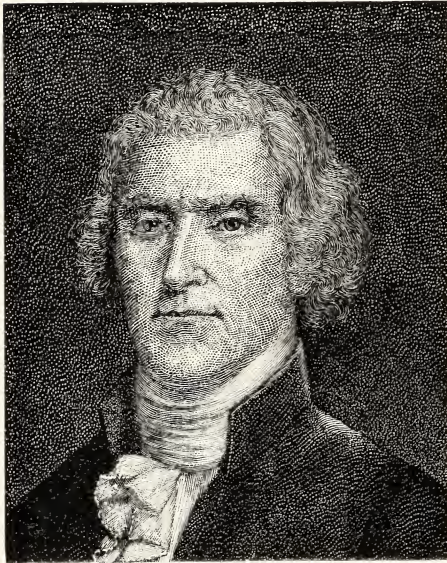
cere expression of their heartfelt grief. A resolution in Congress, deploring his death, called him "first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his fellow-citizens."

530. During the summer of 1800, the seat of government was removed from Philadelphia to **Washington**.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1801-1809

531. The *third* President of the United States was **Thomas Jefferson** of Virginia. He was inaugurated March 4, 1801.

Aaron Burr was the Vice President.¹



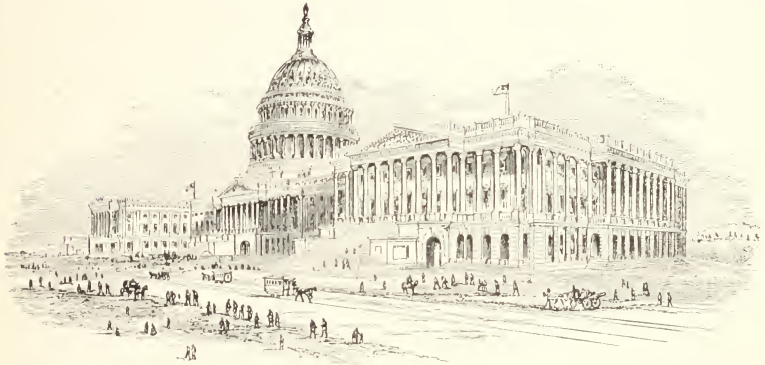
THOMAS JEFFERSON

532. **Meaning of the Election.** — The election of Jefferson was a triumph of the **Republican** or democratic party, the party opposed to the Federalists. Various measures which Adams and the Federalists took had made large numbers change sides. One of the chief reasons of the change was the passage of the **Alien** and **Sedition** laws by the Federalists, in 1798. The Alien Law gave the President the

right of expelling from the country any foreigner who was

¹ Jefferson and Burr had the same number of votes in the electoral colleges. This, under the Constitution, threw the election into the House of Representatives, where, after a long and exciting contest, the choice fell upon Jefferson. This contest led to the adoption of the 12th amendment to the Constitution in 1804.

regarded as dangerous to the United States. The Sedition Law said that any person who published anything false or malicious against the President or Congress might be fined or imprisoned. The Republicans thought these laws were opposed to liberty. They nominated Jefferson, who triumphed over Adams, the candidate of the Federalists for reelection.



THE CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON

533. Important Facts. — The Republican congress and administration began by measures of economy. They abolished internal taxes, cut down the army and navy, and introduced several reforms.

534. The next important event was the purchase of **Louisiana** from France by the United States, in 1803. The price paid was \$ 15,000,000.¹ **Ohio** was admitted into the Union in this year.

This vast region included all west of the Mississippi to the Rocky Mountains (the Pacific coast still belonging to Spain) and north to the British possessions.² The purchase was of

¹ Louisiana had originally belonged to France. In 1763, at the close of the French and Indian War, France ceded it to Spain, for her aid against the English. In 1800, Spain ceded it back to France. Thus the purchase in 1803 was made from *France*.

² This area included within its limits the territory now occupied by Louisiana, Arkansas, Missouri, Iowa, North Dakota, South Dakota, Nebraska,

great importance to the United States, as it secured the undisputed navigation of the **Mississippi**.

535. The commerce of the United States in the Mediterranean Sea had long suffered by the depredations of the piratical **Barbary States**. In 1801, **Tripoli**, one of those states, declared war against this country. President Jefferson, in 1803, sent a naval force into the Mediterranean.

One of the American fleet, the frigate *Philadelphia*, while pursuing a small craft of the enemy before Tripoli, ran upon a rock, and was captured by the Tripolitans. The crew were treated as slaves.

The pirates thought this a great prize; but, in February, 1804, Lieutenant **Decatur** entered the harbor of Tripoli in a small schooner, at night, and captured and burned the *Philadelphia*.

A few months later, Commodore **Preble** several times bombarded Tripoli, but the troubles did not cease till 1805, when the bashaw was glad to make a treaty of peace.

536. In July, 1804, a duel growing out of a political dispute, was fought between Aaron Burr, Vice President of the United States, and Alexander Hamilton. In this duel Hamilton was killed, — a fact greatly lamented by the people of the United States.

Burr was a man of brilliant intellect, but of bad principles and great ambition. In 1806, he was found making secret preparations for an expedition down the Ohio River. He was accused of plotting to separate the country west of the Alleghanies from the Union, and also of a design to conquer Mexico. Burr was arrested, and tried on these charges. For want of proof he was set at liberty; but the people continued to believe that he had meant treason to the United States.

Oklahoma, and most of Minnesota, Montana, Kansas, Wyoming, Colorado, and Indian Territory.

537. In the fall of 1804, Jefferson was reelected President. George Clinton, of New York, was chosen Vice President.

538. In Europe, the great war between England on the one side, and France, under Napoleon, on the other, was still going on. The United States remained neutral. As the powerful navy of England had swept nearly all the vessels of France and her allies from the seas, American merchantmen found very profitable employment in carrying goods for France and other European nations.

In order to check this, the British government, in May, 1806, declared a large part of the coast of Europe in a state of **blockade**, thus preventing American vessels from entering the ports said to be blockaded. In November, 1806, Napoleon retaliated by declaring the blockade of the British Islands. Numerous American vessels, which attempted to trade at these various ports, were captured either by the English or the French. The result was that American commerce was nearly destroyed.

These measures were contrary to the law of nations. American merchants therefore protested loudly, and the whole country was in great excitement; but it was of no avail.

539. Another thing which Americans felt as an outrage was a claim which the British made, that their vessels had a right to search American ships, and take from them any seamen of English birth. This the English called the **right of search**. The American government indignantly denied this pretended right; all the more so as several times American seamen were seized and forced into the British navy, under the pretense that they were deserters.

540. In the month of June, 1807, an event occurred of an extremely irritating character. The American frigate *Chesapeake*, refusing to give up four men claimed by the English as deserters, was fired upon by the British frigate *Leopard*. The

Chesapeake, being unconscious of danger and unprepared for defense, struck her colors, after having three of her men killed and eighteen wounded. She was then boarded by the British, and four of her crew were carried off. Upon investigation it was found that three of them were American citizens, who had been impressed by the British, and had afterwards escaped.

541. This outrage called forth a **proclamation** by President Jefferson, forbidding all British vessels from entering the harbors of the United States until satisfaction for the past and security for the future should be made by England.

In November, 1807, the British government issued the famous **Orders in Council**, by which all neutral nations were prohibited from trading with France or her allies, excepting upon payment of a tribute to England. This was immediately met by Napoleon's **Milan Decree**, which confiscated all vessels that had submitted to search by English ships or had paid tribute.

542. To retaliate upon France and England, Congress, in December, 1807, decreed an **embargo**, by which all American vessels and sailors were called home and detained, and foreign vessels were prohibited from taking cargoes from our ports.¹

It failed in obtaining from France and England an acknowledgment of American rights, and proved ruinous to the commerce of this country. The distress in the United States caused by the embargo was so great that large numbers left the Republican or administration party, and went over to the **Federalists**.²

543. It was during this state of affairs that President Jefferson went out of office, in March, 1809, and retired to his farm at Monticello, Virginia.

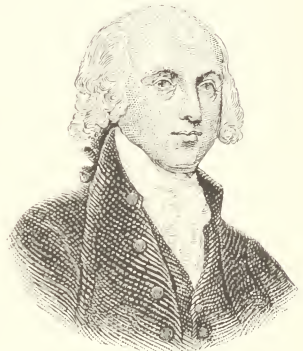
¹ It was in the year 1807 that Congress passed a law forbidding the slave-trade. Under the Constitution such a law could not have been passed at an earlier date.

² Congress finally repealed the Embargo Act.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1809-1817

544. The *fourth* President of the United States was **James Madison** of Virginia. He was inaugurated March 4, 1809. George Clinton of New York was reelected Vice President.

545. **Meaning of the Election.**—The election of Madison was a triumph of the Republicans, who now for the first time began to be called **Democrats**. In electing Madison the people showed they approved of Jefferson's policy. The Federalists, in spite of the discontent at the embargo, were not strong enough to elect their candidate.



JAMES MADISON

546. **Important Facts.**—In March, 1809, the Embargo Act was repealed, and a **Non-Intercourse Act** was passed, forbidding all commerce of the United States with Great Britain and France. However, this did not help matters much.

547. In 1811, the **Indians** on the northwestern frontier became very hostile, and took the war-path. General **Harrison**, governor of Indiana Territory, collected a large force, and marched against them. Their principal chief, Tecumseh, and his brother, who was known as "The Prophet," were not present; but, on the approach of General Harrison, other chiefs came out to meet him. They proposed a conference, and requested him to encamp for the night, which he did. Early the next morning the Indians rushed upon the camp, and a bloody contest followed. This action took place near the Tippecanoe River, some miles north of the present city of Lafayette, and was hence called the **battle of Tippecanoe**.

548. The chief event of Madison's administration was the declaration of war against England, and the hostilities which followed for two years.

WAR OF 1812

549. **Cause of the War.**—The conduct of England in harassing the commerce of the United States, and the impressment of seamen from American vessels, was the cause of the War of 1812.

The state of things when President Madison came into office in 1809 has been seen. The Non-Intercourse Law expired in May, 1810. The United States government then made a proposal, both to England and France, that, if either nation would repeal its orders prohibiting trade by neutral vessels, the United States would revive the Non-Intercourse Law against the other nation. France, in 1810, revoked her **Milan Decree**.

The result was that, in November, 1810, President Madison proclaimed that there was now free commerce with France, but that all trade with Great Britain was prohibited.

England now enforced her hostile orders more rigidly than before. She stationed ships of war before the principal harbors of the United States. All American merchantmen, departing or returning, were boarded, their cargoes examined, and many of them sent to British ports as legal prizes.

At the same time the "right of search" was continued, and impressments of seamen from American vessels were frequent. The British naval officers behaved in a very high-handed way.

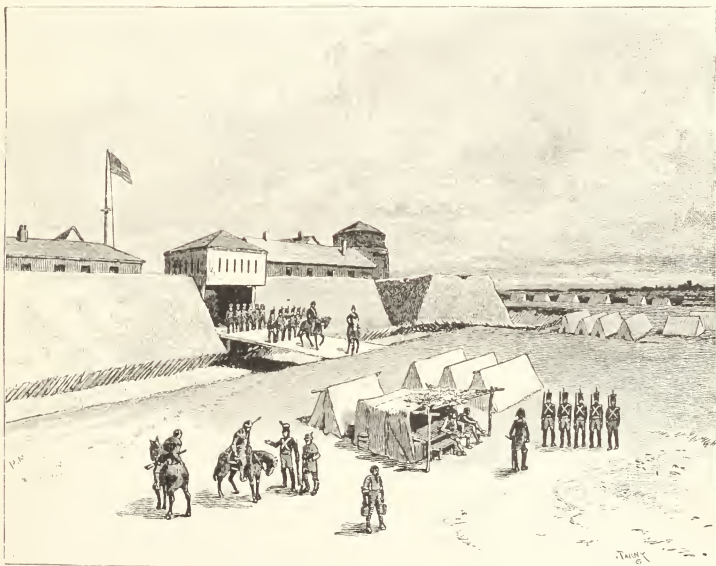
550. In one instance, their insolence was deservedly punished. In May, 1811, the American frigate *President*, commanded by Commodore Rodgers, when off the capes of Virginia, hailed the British sloop-of-war *Little Belt*. Instead of receiving a satisfactory answer, a shot was returned. An action followed, and the British vessel was soon disabled, having eleven of her men killed and twenty-one wounded.

The American government had to make reparation for this act; but the American people generally thought that it served the British ship right.

This state of things was worse than war. America suffered all the evils of war, and could do nothing in return. During the previous seven or eight years British cruisers had captured nine hundred American vessels for violation of England's unjust commercial restrictions.

551. President Madison, on the 1st of June, 1812, sent a message to Congress, recommending a declaration of war against England. This was adopted.

On the 19th of June, 1812, a Proclamation of War against England was published. General Henry Dearborn, of Massachusetts, was appointed commander-in-chief.



FORT DETROIT IN 1812

552. Military Events of 1812. — It was determined to invade the British province of Canada.

In midsummer, General Hull, governor of Michigan Territory, crossed from Detroit, in that territory, with a small force, to **Sandwich**. Hull was incompetent. He did nothing at Sandwich, and while dawdling there a British force captured the important post of **Mackinaw**. This made Hull return in haste to Detroit.



VICINITY OF DETROIT

A small British force now appeared before **Detroit**. The American soldiers were perfectly confident they could hold the place against the British. Nevertheless, when Hull was called on to surrender, he hung out the white flag and capitulated without striking a blow. The army and the whole country were very indignant at this disgraceful affair, and Hull's name was struck from the rolls of the army.

553. On the 13th of October, another American detachment crossed the Niagara River from Lewiston into Canada, and attacked the British on **Queenston Heights**. The Americans were at first successful, but were at last overpowered, chiefly owing to the fact that the American militia on the American side would not cross to aid their brethren. Lieutenant-Colonel (afterwards General) **Winfield Scott** distinguished himself in this action.

554. Naval Operations of 1812. — While failure met the unimportant and badly conducted military operations of 1812, the United States navy performed a number of brilliant exploits that greatly encouraged the country. During the year there were several important naval combats, in every one of which the Americans were successful: —

1. The frigate *Essex*, Captain David Porter, captured the sloop-of-war *Alert*, August 13.

2. The frigate *Constitution*, Captain Hull, off the Gulf of St. Lawrence, captured the *Guerriere*, August 19.

3. The sloop *Wasp*, Captain Jones, captured the British brig *Frolic*, October 18.

4. The frigate *United States*, Commodore Decatur, cruising south of the Azores, captured the *Macedonian*, October 25.

5. The frigate *Constitution*, Commodore Bainbridge, captured, off Brazil, the British frigate *Java*, December 29.

555. While the regular navy was performing these exploits, numerous American **privateers** were fitted out to prey upon British commerce. During the year 1812, no less than three hundred prizes were taken. This made some amends for the numerous British captures in time of peace.

556. A majority of the American people heartily approved the war.¹ The result was, that, at the next election, in the fall of 1812, **Madison** was reelected President of the United States. Elbridge Gerry was chosen Vice President. **Louisiana** was admitted as a state in this year.

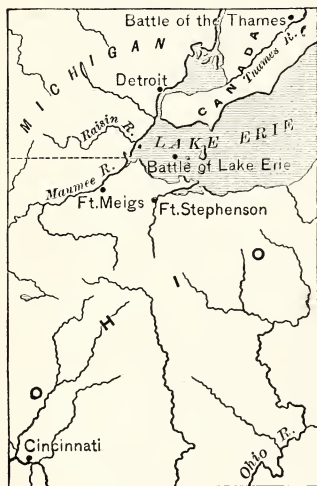
557. **Military Operations of 1813.** — At the beginning of 1813, the American forces on the northern frontiers were divided into three armies. The **Army of the West**, under General Harrison, was stationed near the head of Lake Erie; the **Army of the Center**, under General Dearborn, on the Niagara frontier; the **Army of the North**, under General Wade Hampton, near Lake Champlain.

558. The object of the **Army of the West** was to recover Detroit and Michigan from the English. In January, 1813, a body, under General Winchester, advanced on **Frenchtown**, defeating a British party and taking the village. Soon after, a larger force of English and Indians attacked Winchester's detachment and compelled his surrender. The next morning

¹ There was, however, strong opposition to it in New England. (See § 580.)

the Indians brutally murdered all the sick and wounded Americans.

559. General Harrison now built **Fort Meigs**, at Maumee Rapids, near the present town of Defiance. Here he was besieged, May 1, by Colonel Proctor. An American reinforcement came, and the British gave up the siege and returned to Malden. Proctor next attacked **Fort Stephenson**, at Lower Sandusky (now Fremont), Ohio, but was repulsed.



SCENE OF OPERATIONS IN THE WEST

560. **Land and Naval Operations.** — During the summer of 1813, a fleet of nine vessels, carrying fifty-four guns, was equipped at Erie and placed under **Commodore Perry**. To oppose this, the English had a fleet of six vessels, carrying sixty-three guns, under Commodore Barclay.

On the 10th of September, the two squadrons met in the western part of **Lake Erie**, and a fierce naval action began. The combat lasted three hours, and resulted in a brilliant victory for the Americans. Perry told of this triumph in a brief and modest despatch, saying: "We have met the enemy, and they are ours."

561. Harrison's troops now embarked on Perry's ships and crossed to Canada, taking Malden, and pursuing the British up the **Thames**. Here an action was fought, October 5. The Western Rangers charged furiously, and completely routed the British and the Indians under Tecumseh. The Indian chief was slain.

The recovery of **Detroit** and **Michigan Territory** put an end to the war in that quarter. Harrison's force was now able to join the Army of the Center.

562. Army of the Center. — The invasion of **Canada** was now the leading object. General Dearborn, in April, sent a body to cross Lake Ontario and attack **York** (now Toronto). The British abandoned York, blowing up their magazine, and thus killing or wounding above two hundred Americans.

563. General Dearborn next moved against **Fort George**, at the mouth of the Niagara River. This was taken, and all the Canada side of the Niagara River fell into possession of the Americans. The British attacked **Sacketts Harbor**, but were repulsed. After a while, most of the American forces were taken elsewhere. Then the British turned the tables on the Americans. They recaptured Fort George and took Fort Niagara, and in the fall made several raids into northern New York, plundering and burning settlements. This they did in revenge for the wanton burning by the Americans of the Canadian village of Newark.

564. Army of the North. — It was planned that the Army of the North, under General Wade Hampton, should conjointly with the Army of the Center, now under General Wilkinson, make an expedition against **Montreal**.

In November, Wilkinson, with the Army of the Center, moved from Lake Champlain to the St. Lawrence, and went down that river in a flotilla as far as **St. Regis**. Here he was to have been joined by Hampton's force; but Hampton would not move. So the whole expedition was given up.

565. Creek and Seminole War. — During this year, the Creek and Seminole Indians commenced a war against the whites in Georgia and Alabama. In August, they captured **Fort Mims**, in southern Alabama, and three hundred men, women, and children were massacred.

566. The whites of Georgia and Tennessee flew to arms, under General **Andrew Jackson**. The Indians were defeated in a number of fights. The last great encounter was at **Horseshoe Bend**, on the Tallapoosa River. Here Generals Jackson and Coffee gave the Indians a terrible defeat, slaying over eight hundred of them. This brought the Creek war to an end.

567. **Sea-Fights of 1813.** — In addition to the naval victory on Lake Erie, a number of sea-fights took place during the year 1813.

568. On the 24th of February, the sloop-of-war *Hornet*, Captain Lawrence, captured the British brig *Peacock*. The latter sank soon after the action.

569. On the 1st of June, Captain Lawrence, who had been promoted to the command of the frigate *Chesapeake*, attacked the British frigate *Shannon*, off Boston harbor. After a furious fight, in which Lawrence was mortally wounded, the enemy captured the *Chesapeake* by boarding. Lawrence's last and heroic order was, "Don't give up the ship," — a saying which, though the ship had to be given up, served as the watch-cry of American sailors in many a victory.

570. In the spring of 1813, a British squadron, under Admiral Cockburn, entered **Chesapeake Bay** and destroyed Frenchtown, Georgetown, Havre de Grace, and Frederick. They attempted to capture Norfolk, but were repulsed with heavy loss. After committing shocking brutalities at Hampton, the fleet sailed for the West Indies.

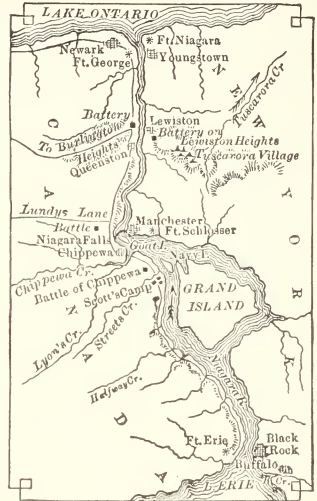
571. **Military Operations of 1814.** — There were two campaigns in 1814, — the Northern campaign and the Southern campaign.

572. The **Northern campaign** was along the Niagara frontier. On the 3d of July, 1814, General Brown, assisted by Generals Scott and Ripley, crossed the Niagara River and took **Fort**

Erie. They then advanced against **Chippewa**, where two days later they defeated the enemy under General Riall.

The British retreated to Lake Ontario, where General Drummond took command with fresh forces. On July 25, the two little armies met at **Lundys Lane**, near Niagara Falls. The action was not decisive. Each side lost about eight hundred men.

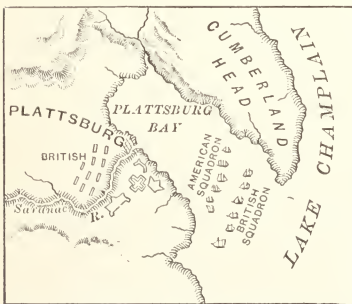
573. Soon afterward, the Americans fell back to **Fort Erie**. The British advanced, five thousand strong, and laid siege to this place. They made an assault, August 15, but were repulsed, with a loss of one thousand men. A month later, General Brown issued from the fort, and gave the British so stunning a blow that they were forced to give up the siege.



NIAGARA OPERATIONS

The Americans continued at Fort Erie for two months more, and then, of their own accord, blew up the fort, and withdrew from the Canada shore.

574. Battle of Lake Champlain. — In September, 1814, Sir George Prevost, at the head of fourteen thousand troops, advanced upon **Plattsburg**, on Lake Champlain. Here General



BATTLE OF PLATTSBURG

Macomb was stationed, with a force of less than two thousand. The American **squadron**, commanded by Commodore Macdonough was lying in the harbor of Plattsburg. The British

force arrived before Plattsburg, September 6. General Macomb made a firm defense, and for four days kept the enemy at bay; yet the situation of the American force was critical.

575. The British squadron, under Captain Downie, now bore down in order of battle. Commodore Macdonough cleared his decks for action. After a contest of two hours, the whole British fleet on the lake was captured by the Americans, September 11, 1814. The British land force then retreated in haste to Canada. The enemy's loss was about twenty-five hundred men.



OPERATIONS ABOUT WASHINGTON

576. Operations in the South. — In the month of August, 1814, a squadron of fifty or sixty British vessels arrived in Chesapeake Bay with troops from Europe. The design was to attack **Washington**. Five thousand troops, under General Ross, were landed, and marched towards that city.

At this time there was very little force for the defense of Washington. However, General Winder, with about four thousand men, met the enemy at **Bladensburg**, near Washington. The militia did not behave well, and were routed. The President and Cabinet left Washington, and Ross entered it August 24. His troops burned the Capitol and other public buildings. After this act of vandalism they withdrew to their shipping.

577. Ross next sailed to **Baltimore**. Landing at North Point, a few miles below the city, the troops moved towards Baltimore. In an action which followed, the Americans were com-

pelled to retreat to the works around the city. Ross was killed; but the enemy feared to attack the works, and turned aside.

578. The British fleet made an unsuccessful attack on **Fort McHenry**, which commanded the entrance to the city of Baltimore, after which the army reëmbarked and left the bay.

579. Sea-Fights of 1814. — During 1814, victories on the sea were equally divided between the British and the Americans.

In March, 1814, the *Essex*, Commodore Porter, was captured by two British vessels, after a long cruise that was very destructive to English commerce. In April, the American ship *Frolic* was captured by a British frigate. The American ship *Peacock* captured a British brig, and the *Wasp* captured another. Early the next year, the frigate *President*, Commodore Decatur, was taken by an English squadron. The *Constitution*, Commodore Stewart, captured two British ships. The American ship *Hornet* took a British brig.

580. There was strong opposition to the war, particularly in New England. This led to what is called the **Hartford Convention**. This convention was composed of delegates from the New England States, and met in December, 1814. They deliberated in secret. All that came of it was a report recommending some changes in the Constitution.



BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS

581. Battle of New Orleans. — In December, 1814, a powerful British fleet, carrying more than ten thousand troops,

approached **New Orleans** by way of Lake Borgne. It captured the American naval force on the lake, after a desperate fight.

General Jackson was in the city of New Orleans with a force of about six thousand men. He hastily built a parapet of earth and cotton-bales a few miles below the city, and planted his marksmen behind it.

On the 8th of January, 1815, the British Army, under Sir Edward Pakenham, advanced to storm the intrenchments. It met a terrible repulse. Jackson won a great victory, killing and wounding two thousand of the British, with a loss on the American side of eight men killed and thirteen wounded. Pakenham was killed. This disastrous defeat caused the British to retreat to their ships, and New Orleans was safe.

582. Peace. — A treaty of peace between Great Britain and the United States was signed on the 24th of December, 1814.¹ It is called the **treaty of Ghent**, from the city of that name in Belgium, where the articles were signed. It was ratified by the United States, February 17, 1815, and put an end to the "War of 1812," which had lasted a little over two years and a half.

583. War with Algiers. — During the war with Great Britain, the dey of Algiers had committed depredations on American commerce. To check these, **Decatur**, soon after the peace with England, was sent, with a fleet, into the Mediterranean.

Decatur captured two of the Algerine ships-of-war, and compelled the dey to sign a **treaty**. By this treaty he released all American prisoners, gave satisfaction for past offenses, and relinquished all claim to tribute in the future.

584. In the year 1816, a financial institution, called the **Bank of the United States**, was chartered, to continue for twenty years. We shall hear of this bank again. In this year **Indiana** was admitted into the Union as a state.

¹ It will be seen, therefore, that the Battle of New Orleans was fought nearly two weeks after the treaty of peace had been signed. There were no telegraphs in those days, and the "latest news from Europe" was always several weeks old.

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION, 1817-1825

585. The *fifth* President of the United States was **James Monroe**, of Virginia. He was inaugurated March 4, 1817. Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, had been chosen Vice President.

586. **Meaning of the Election.** — The election of President Monroe was not a triumph of either the Federalists or the Republicans.¹ He was elected almost unanimously. The war of the politicians stopped for a time. This period received the name of the "era of good feeling."



JAMES MONROE

587. **Important Facts.** — The cessation of the war and the industry of the people soon brought great **prosperity** to the United States. Commerce, manufactures, and agriculture revived and flourished wonderfully.

588. About the close of 1817, the **Seminole Indians** took the war-path and commenced hostilities against the inhabitants of Georgia. They were encouraged by the Spanish authorities of Florida. General Jackson was sent against the savages, and overran their country. He then marched into **Florida**, took the Spanish fort at St. Marks, and seized Pensacola.

589. **Mississippi** was admitted into the Union in 1817, **Illinois** in 1818, and **Alabama** in 1819.

590. Many persons blamed General Jackson for going into Florida because he was invading the territory of a friendly

¹ The Federalists, especially in New England, had opposed the war. Their party became very unpopular, and its candidates received but a very small vote.

power; but he was sustained by the government, and by a majority of the people. Out of Jackson's proceedings grew negotiations with Spain, which led to the acquisition of Florida. A **treaty** was entered into by which, for five million dollars, Spain ceded Florida to the United States.

591. In 1820, **Maine** was admitted into the Union as a state. (See page 81.)

592. In 1820, the question of admitting Missouri into the Union as a state arose. A very angry dispute sprang up as to whether she should be admitted as a slave state or a free state. This was finally settled by the **Missouri Compromise**, which, in 1821, admitted it as a slave state, but prohibited slavery in all territory west of the Mississippi and north of 36° 30' north latitude. Note the nature of the "Missouri Compromise"; it is important.

593. In the fall of 1820, President Monroe and Vice President Tompkins were reelected. Their second term of office began March 4, 1821.

594. During the year 1822, President Monroe, in a message to Congress recommending the recognition of the South American Republics, which had been struggling for independence against Spain, proclaimed what is known as the **Monroe Doctrine**. This is, that the American continents "are not to be considered as subject for future colonization by any European power."

595. In 1824, General **Lafayette** arrived in America, to pay a visit to the country which he had helped to make independent. He remained in this country for over a year, as the guest of the American people. He was received everywhere with the greatest honor and affection.

596. Monroe, having served two terms as President, followed Washington's example, and declined reelection.

J. Q. ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION, 1825-1829

597. The *sixth* President of the United States was **John Quincy Adams** of Massachusetts, son of the second President. He was inaugurated March 4, 1825. John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, had been chosen Vice President.

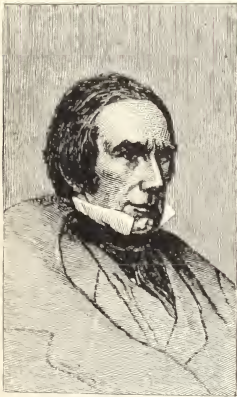
598. Meaning of the Election.

— In the latter part of Monroe's administration, the two political parties — Federal and Republican — were very much broken up. John Quincy Adams was a Republican, but became one of the leaders of that party which was afterwards called the **Whig party**.

There had been no less than six presidential candidates. As no one had a majority of electoral votes, the House of Representatives had the choice, and it chose J. Q. Adams.



JOHN QUINCY ADAMS



HENRY CLAY

599. **Important Facts.** — Adams's term of office was a period of peace and of rapid growth and **prosperity**. The Union now consisted of twenty-four states, and contained ten millions of population.

600. The 4th of July, 1826, was the fiftieth anniversary of American Independence. On that day two patriots, **John Adams** and **Thomas Jefferson**, died. This was noted as a very striking fact.

601. During Adams's administration there was a great deal said in this country about a **protective**

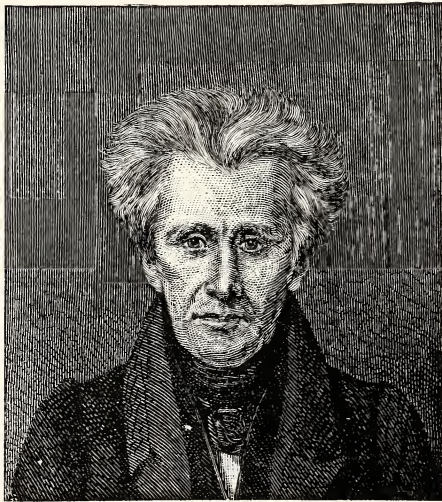
tariff. A tariff is a system of duties laid on goods imported from abroad. A protective tariff is a high duty laid on manufactured articles, for the purpose of protecting and encouraging the manufacture of similar articles at home.

A protective tariff was enacted by Congress in 1828. Henry Clay was the author of this policy, which took the name of the **American system**. It led afterwards to violent political disputes.

JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1829-1837

602. The *seventh* President of the United States was **General Andrew Jackson**, of Tennessee. He was inaugurated March 4, 1829. John C. Calhoun had been reelected Vice President.

603. Meaning of the Election. — The election of Jackson was a victory for the party opposed to the Whigs, represented by Adams and Clay. The party which elected Jackson was now generally called the **Democratic party**.



ANDREW JACKSON

604. Important Facts. — The chartering of the **United States Bank** has been mentioned. (See § 584.) It was now proposed to renew the charter. President Jackson, in his first message to Congress, took strong grounds against this renewal. Nevertheless, in 1832, Congress enacted The President **vetoed the**

that the charter should be renewed.

act ; and, as Congress did not pass the law over his veto, the charter was not renewed. The charter expired in 1836.

But before the charter expired, namely, in 1833, the President ordered that the government moneys, which had before been deposited in this bank, should be removed. This was done. Many persons denounced this act as a high-handed proceeding.

605. The year 1832 is notable for the **Black Hawk War**. The Western Indians, under Black Hawk, began hostilities against the people of Illinois. A battle was fought on the banks of the Mississippi, and the Indians were defeated. They were forced to make treaties by which they gave up large tracts of Western lands.

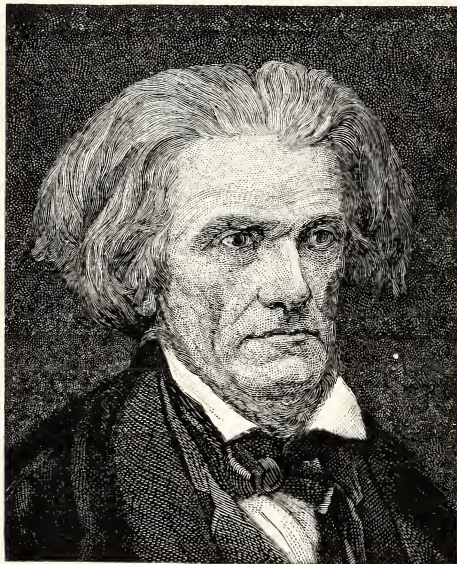
606. In 1832, Congress passed a new **Tariff Bill**, laying heavy protective duties on imported articles. This met with violent opposition. The opposition was particularly strong in the South, where the people did not manufacture much. They therefore wanted to get foreign goods as cheap as possible.

607. **South Carolina** led the resistance to the Tariff Bill. A convention of the people of that state said the law should not be heeded in South Carolina, that it should be null and void there. This was called **nullification**. John C. Calhoun was the strongest supporter of nullification.¹

President Jackson then issued a proclamation warning the people that the law would be enforced. South Carolina threatened to secede from the Union.

¹ Calhoun declared that the Constitution gave Congress no power to put heavy duties on some imports and light duties on others. Jackson, though a Democrat and a Southerner, maintained that when the Constitution gave Congress the power "to lay and collect duties," it must have been intended to confer full control of the subject, for otherwise the United States would have no power to defend themselves against foreign tariff laws hostile to American goods. As a matter of fact, the first Congress under the Constitution, sitting while the framers of the Constitution were still living, had levied discriminating duties for protective purposes.

608. It seemed likely that there would be war between the general government and the state of South Carolina. Fortunately, the matter was settled by **compromise**. Henry Clay got a bill passed in Congress providing for the gradual reduction of the duties. Thus the matter was peaceably settled.



JOHN C. CALHOUN

609. At the election in 1832, **Jackson** was re-elected President, and Martin Van Buren was elected Vice President of the United States.

610. In 1835, a war with the Seminole Indians, called the **Florida War**, broke out. This was a most troublesome contest. The Indians lurked in the swamps

and everglades, and thus kept up the war for seven years.

The cause of the war was an attempt by the United States government to remove the Indians to the west of the Mississippi. The Indians had previously made a treaty agreeing to remove to the **Indian Territory**, but this they now refused to do.

611. At the outbreak of the war, the Indians attacked a party of one hundred and seventeen United States troops, under Major Dade, and all his men, except four, were killed.

Several actions were fought during 1835 and 1836. Then General **Scott** took command. In 1837, Osceola, the chief of the Seminoles, came to the American camp, under a flag of truce. He was seized and imprisoned by General Jessup.

612. In December, 1837, Colonel **Zachary Taylor** defeated the Indians at Lake Okechobee. After the battle, the savages retired to the swamps, and kept up intermittent war till 1842. Then peace was established.

613. The great political questions during the latter part of Jackson's administration were the **bank and tariff questions**. Political feeling ran very high. Those who supported Jackson's administration and opposed the United States Bank and a protective tariff were now known as **Democrats**. Those who favored the bank and the tariff were called **Whigs**.

Arkansas became a state in 1836, and **Michigan** in 1837.

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1837-1841

614. The *eighth* President of the United States was **Martin Van Buren**, of New York. He was inaugurated March 4, 1837. Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, had been chosen Vice President.

615. Meaning of the Election. — The election of President Van Buren was a victory for the **Democrats**. It was a continuation of Jackson's policy.

616. Important Facts. — Soon after President Van Buren came into office, the country suffered great distress from a terrible crash in business and money matters. This is known as the **Panic of '37**. Nearly all the banks of the country had to suspend specie payment. This caused an immense number of failures and wide-spread suffering.

To remedy the trouble, an extra session of Congress met in September, 1837. Congress passed several bills, among which



MARTIN VAN BUREN

was one for issuing treasury-notes to the amount of ten million dollars. This did not bring much relief; but, after a while, the country grew out of its financial difficulties.

617. In 1837, a **Canadian** rebellion broke out. Many Americans crossed the line to help the patriots. This obliged the President to issue a proclamation that those who invaded Canada would lose the protection of the United States government.

618. In 1840, Congress passed what is called the **Sub-Treasury Bill**. This law was intended to provide for the safe-keeping of the public funds. Many opposed this measure.

HARRISON AND TYLER'S ADMINISTRATION, 1841-1845

619. The *ninth* President of the United States was **William Henry Harrison**, of Ohio. He was inaugurated March 4, 1841. John Tyler, of Virginia, had been elected Vice President.



WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON

620. Meaning of the Election.— The election of President Harrison was a triumph of the **Whig party**. The Whigs said that the distress of the country was in great part owing to the financial experiments of the Democratic administrations, and that the Sub-Treasury Law was wrong.

621. President Harrison had been just one month in office when he died. By the terms of the Constitution, Vice President **Tyler** succeeded him in the office of President.

622. Important Facts.—The Whigs, who elected Harrison and Tyler, expected to establish a new **United States Bank**; but bills passed by Congress for this purpose were vetoed by President Tyler when he came into office. The Whigs were very angry at this behavior on the part of the man they had put in office. Every member of President Tyler's Cabinet, except Daniel Webster, who was Secretary of State, immediately resigned.



JOHN TYLER

623. The **boundary of Maine**, which had caused much controversy between the United States and Great Britain, was settled in 1842 by two commissioners, Daniel Webster and Lord Ashburton.

624. In 1842, serious difficulties occurred in Rhode Island. The cause of the trouble was this: Many men wished to change the Constitution of Rhode Island (which was the old charter granted by Charles II.), and to form a new constitution. One party, headed by **Dorr**, favored the change; another party opposed it. Dorr and his friends took up arms, and it seemed as though there would be civil war. The President had to send troops to keep the peace. The new state constitution was adopted the same year.

625. During the latter part of Tyler's term, the country was much agitated by the question of the **annexation of Texas**. Texas had been a part of Mexico; but the Texans threw off the Spanish yoke in 1836, and established a republic of their own.

They now wished to come under the government of the United States. The free states strongly opposed the annexation of Texas, because it would add another slave state. The slave states favored the annexation for the same reason.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION, 1845-1849

626. The *eleventh* President of the United States was **James K. Polk**, of Tennessee. He was inaugurated March 4, 1845. George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania, had been chosen Vice President.



JAMES K. POLK

627. Meaning of the Election. — The election of President Polk was a triumph of the **Democratic party**. The Whigs had put up Henry Clay. Polk was pledged to the annexation of Texas. The Whigs were opposed to it. The Democrats won.

628. Early in President Polk's administration the northwestern boundary of **Oregon** was settled by treaty with Great Britain. The first systematic exploration of this region had been made by Lewis and Clarke, sent out in 1804. In 1811, John Jacob Astor made a settlement at Astoria on the Columbia River; hence, the United States claimed this territory. Great Britain, however, set up a rival claim to the North Pacific region, and in 1818 the two countries agreed to a treaty of joint occupancy. In 1846, it was agreed that the American possessions should extend as far north as 49°.

629. In January, 1845, Congress passed a bill for the annexation of Texas. The Republic of Texas approved the bill, July 4, 1845. Thus **Texas** became a state in the Union.

But Mexico still claimed Texas as a part of her territory. Besides this, the western boundary of Texas was in dispute. The Texans claimed the country westward to the **Rio Grande**. Mexico said the "pretended Republic of Texas" had never spread further westward than the **river Nueces**. The Mexicans prepared to defend what they considered their rights.

THE MEXICAN WAR

630. In the summer of 1845, **General Taylor** was ordered into the disputed territory. He formed his camp at Corpus Christi. Early the next year, he moved to the Rio Grande, opposite Matamoras. Here he built **Fort Brown**, now Brownsville. (For a general view of the scenes and operations of this war, see map on page 230.)

631. The war broke out in the following manner: On the 24th of April, 1846, **Captain Thornton**, with a party of dragoons, was sent up the river to reconnoiter. He fell into a Mexican ambuscade, and was compelled to surrender.

Soon after this the Mexicans attacked **Fort Brown**. General Taylor, who had taken his main body to Point Isabel, marched to the assistance of the garrison with twenty-three hundred men. On the 8th of May, he met and defeated six thousand Mexicans, under General Arista, at **Palo Alto**. Next day he attacked the Mexicans at **Resaca de la Palma**. The Mexican loss was one thousand; the American loss was only one hundred. On the 18th of May, Taylor crossed the Rio Grande and took possession of **Matamoras**.

632. The news of the capture of Thornton's party caused great excitement in the United States. On the 13th of May, Congress declared that war existed between the United States and Mexico. It was proposed to raise an army, and volunteers came forward in great numbers.

The United States government now planned an invasion of the Mexican possessions on **three lines**.

1. Taylor was to operate on the line of the **Rio Grande**, from Matamoras.

2. A column, under General Kearny, was to invade and conquer the Spanish possessions of **New Mexico** and **California**.

3. A column, under General Wool, was to enter the northern states of Mexico and conquer the state of **Chihuahua**.

The next month, Taylor advanced and occupied **Saltillo**, and at the same time a naval force took possession of Tampico.

A considerable part of Taylor's army was now moved to aid General Scott, who was to invade Mexico by way of Vera Cruz.

634. The Mexican commander-in-chief was General **Santa Anna**.¹ He had collected an army of twenty thousand men. With this force he advanced to meet Taylor's diminished numbers. The Americans met the Mexicans February 23, 1847, in the narrow mountain pass of **Buena Vista**, where they utterly defeated them. The victory of Buena Vista secured to the Americans the frontier of the Rio Grande, and left them free to direct their whole force against Vera Cruz.

635. Conquest of New Mexico and California. — The column of **Kearny**, designed for the invasion of New Mexico and California, collected at Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, in June, 1846.

The troops marched overland one thousand miles to **Santa Fé**, New Mexico. Thence Kearny sent a column, under Colonel Doniphan, southward into Chihuahua. Doniphan defeated the few Mexicans that opposed him, and reached Saltillo in safety.

With another column, Kearny started for the **California** settlements. While on the way, he learned that California was already in the possession of the Americans. He therefore sent back most of his forces to Santa Fé, and proceeded with a hundred mounted men to San Diego, California.

636. The circumstances under which California had been conquered were rather curious. A few months before the opening of the Mexican War, **Captain John C. Fremont**, of the Topographical Engineers, entered California with a small exploring party.

Fremont had been sent by the government to seek a new route to Oregon, farther south than the one usually traveled by emigrants. While in California, in 1846, and before he

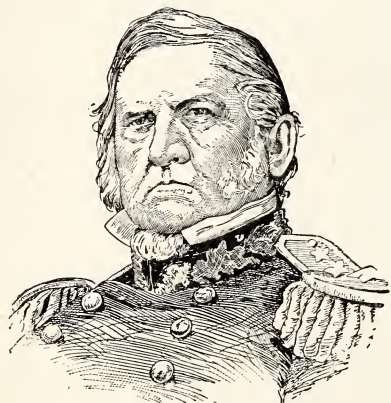
¹ Santa Anna was also President of the Republic of Mexico.

knew there was any war with Mexico, Fremont heard that the Mexican commander in California was raising a force to expel the American settlers from that province. About this time a message was sent to Fremont from Washington ordering him to protect American interests in California.

The American settlers flocked to Fremont's standard. They met and defeated the Mexicans in several conflicts in the valley of the Sacramento and compelled them to retire southward. By Fremont's advice, the American settlers in California declared their **independence** of Mexico, July 5, 1846.

Just at this time, Commodore Sloat, who had been cruising off the Pacific coast, and had lately heard of the declaration of war against Mexico, seized the port of Monterey, in California. Soon afterwards, Commodore Stockton took command

in place of Sloat. Fremont and Stockton together accomplished the overthrow of Mexican authority in California. This was completed by January, 1847.



GENERAL SCOTT

637. Scott's Campaign in Mexico.—Soon after the war with Mexico had begun, the war authorities at Washington determined to send another army against the *city* of Mexico. This column was put under the command

of General **Scott**, who became commander-in-chief in Mexico.

Scott's force made a landing near **Vera Cruz** early in the year 1847. The main body of Taylor's army was transferred to Scott's column soon after the victories of Monterey and Saltillo.

General Scott besieged the city of Vera Cruz in March, 1847. Vera Cruz was guarded by the strong castle of San

Juan de Ulloa. After a furious bombardment, the castle and city surrendered, March 29.¹

638. Now began the advance on the city of Mexico. The Mexican commander, Santa Anna, had collected a fresh army, and had stationed his force at the mountain pass of **Cerro Gordo**, to oppose the advance of the Americans towards the capital. On the 18th of April, the Americans stormed the works and routed the Mexicans.

The American column now continued its advance to **Puebla**, which was taken without a struggle. Here General Scott waited three months till reinforcements arrived.

639. In August, General Scott, with his army, now numbering about ten thousand men, resumed his march towards the city of **Mexico**. This capital was defended by thirty thousand Mexicans, intrenched in a series of works in the vicinity of the city.

In the latter part of August and the early part of September, 1847, the Americans defeated the Mexicans in the fortified camp of **Contreras**, at **Churubusco**, in the stone building called **Molino del Rey**, and at the castle of **Chapultepec**. The whole Mexican army was routed. On the 14th of September, General Scott and the American army entered the city of Mexico. The fall of the capital practically closed the conflict.

640. Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo.—The Mexican War was formally ended by the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, concluded February 2, 1848. Peace was proclaimed by President Polk on the 4th of July following.

This treaty ceded to the United States the vast territory now comprised in New Mexico, Utah, and California. In return, Mexico received a compensation of fifteen million dollars.

641. It was just about the time of this treaty that **gold** was discovered in California. Then began a remarkable rush from

¹ Two officers, who served under Scott in Mexico, afterwards achieved the highest military distinction—Ulysses S. Grant and Robert E. Lee.

all parts of the world to the Pacific coast. We shall learn fully of this in the chapter on California.

642. During Polk's administration three states were admitted into the Union,—Florida in 1845, Iowa in 1846, and Wisconsin in 1848.

TAYLOR AND FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATION,
1849-1853

643. The *twelfth* President of the United States was **General Zachary Taylor**, who had distinguished himself in the Mexican War. He was inaugurated March 5 (the 4th being Sunday), 1849. Millard Fillmore, of New York, had been chosen Vice President.



ZACHARY TAYLOR

644. Meaning of the Election.—The election of President Taylor was, in some degree, a triumph of the **Whig party**. The most exciting question had been whether or not slavery should be allowed in the new territories. There had been three candidates

in the presidential canvass of 1848. These were Martin Van Buren, Lewis Cass of Michigan, and Zachary Taylor of Louisiana. Cass was the Democratic nominee, and Taylor the Whig candidate. Van Buren was the candidate of the Free-Soilers; that is, of those men who were distinctly opposed to the extension of slavery. This party was not then numerous.

645. Important Facts.—The most important question at the commencement of Taylor's administration concerned the admission of the state of **California**, whether it should be admitted into the Union as a slave state or as a free state. This question was discussed with great bitterness by both political parties.

646. To settle the difficulty, Henry Clay proposed in Congress a **compromise bill**. This provided, —

1. That California should be admitted as a free state.
2. That the territory of Utah should be established without mention of slavery.

3. That the territory of New Mexico should be established without mention of slavery, and that ten million dollars should be paid to Texas for her claims to Mexican lands.

4. That the slave-trade in the District of Columbia should be abolished.

5. That a law should be passed for the arrest and return of fugitive slaves. This bill was passed by Congress, September, 1850.

647. On the 9th of July, 1850, President **Taylor** died, after having been in office sixteen months. Vice President **Fillmore** became

President. **John C. Calhoun** died in the same year. During the year 1852, both Henry Clay and Daniel Webster died.



MILLARD FILLMORE

PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION, 1853-1857

648. The *fourteenth* President of the United States was **Franklin Pierce**, of New Hampshire. He was inaugurated March 4, 1853. William R. King, of Alabama, had been chosen Vice President.

649. **Meaning of the Election.**—The election of President Pierce was a triumph of the **Democratic party**. The Whigs had put up General Winfield Scott as their candidate.

650. **Important Facts.**—In the early part of President Pierce's administration a new **boundary treaty** was made with

Mexico. By this treaty the United States government agreed to pay Mexico twenty million dollars in return for a part of what is now **Arizona**. This is called the **Gadsden purchase**. It brought the southern boundary of the United States considerably farther south than it had been by the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo.¹



FRANKLIN PIERCE

651. The most important and exciting events of President Pierce's administration were the **repeal of the Missouri Compromise** and the struggle in Kansas.

652. In 1854, Senator Douglas, of Illinois, proposed, in the United States Senate, a bill called the **Kansas-Nebraska Bill**. This bill provided for the organization of two territories, to be called Kansas and Nebraska; and in regard to slavery, which was the exciting question of the time, the people of these territories were to decide whether they would have slaves or not.

A great many people, especially in the North, opposed this measure. They said that the Missouri Compromise of 1820, had decided that there should be no slavery north of 36° 30', which included both Kansas and Nebraska. The passage of Senator Douglas's bill would be the **repeal of the Missouri Compromise**. In spite of all opposition, however, the bill became a law in May, 1854.

It was then the **struggle for Kansas** began. As the people of this territory were to decide whether it should be a slave state or a free state, a large number of settlers poured into the territory. Those from the Northern States wished to have Kansas *without* slavery; those from the South, *with* slavery.

¹ During this administration, the ports of Japan were opened to international trade.

This led to armed conflicts in Kansas. We shall learn more particularly about them in the history of Kansas.

653. During this period, the party opposed to slavery increased very much. The Whig party was now broken up and there was a reorganization of parties. Those opposed to slavery became known as the **Republican party**.

BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1857-1861

654. The *fifteenth* President of the United States was **James Buchanan**, of Pennsylvania. He was inaugurated March 4, 1857. John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, had been chosen Vice President.

655. Meaning of the Election.—The election of President Buchanan was a triumph of the **Democratic party**. The Republicans had brought forward as their candidate John C. Fremont. The Republican candidate received a very large number of votes, showing how strong the anti-slavery sentiment in the North had become. But a majority of the people of the United States did not think that the Constitution gave any right to interfere with slavery.



JAMES BUCHANAN

656. Important Facts.—During this administration three states were admitted into the Union,—Minnesota in 1858, Oregon in 1859, and Kansas in 1861. The important political facts of this administration bear such a close relation to the history of secession, that they will be treated in the chapter on the “War of the Secession.”

TOPICAL REVIEW

I. OF THE PRESIDENTS AND VICE PRESIDENTS FROM THE ADOPTION OF THE CONSTITUTION TO THE WAR OF SECESSION

1. **George Washington**, of Virginia; two terms; inaugurated April 30, **1789**. John Adams, Vice President.

2. **John Adams**, of Massachusetts; one term; inaugurated March 4, **1797**. Thomas Jefferson, Vice President.

3. **Thomas Jefferson**, of Virginia; two terms; inaugurated March 4, **1801**. Aaron Burr and George Clinton, Vice Presidents.

4. **James Madison**, of Virginia; two terms; inaugurated March 4, **1809**. George Clinton and Elbridge Gerry, Vice Presidents.

5. **James Monroe**, of Virginia; two terms; inaugurated March 4, **1817**. D. D. Tompkins, Vice President.

6. **John Quincy Adams**, of Massachusetts; one term; inaugurated March 4, **1825**. John C. Calhoun, Vice President.

7. **Andrew Jackson**, of Tennessee; two terms; inaugurated March 4, **1829**. John C. Calhoun and Martin Van Buren, Vice Presidents.

8. **Martin Van Buren**, of New York; one term; inaugurated March 4, **1837**. R. M. Johnson, Vice President.

9. **William H. Harrison**, of Ohio; died soon after inauguration, March 4, **1841**. John Tyler, Vice President.

10. **John Tyler**, of Virginia; filled out Harrison's term; inaugurated April 6, **1841**.

11. **James K. Polk**, of Tennessee; one term; inaugurated March 4, **1845**. George M. Dallas, Vice President.

12. **Zachary Taylor**, of Louisiana; died the year after inauguration, March 5, **1849**. Millard Fillmore, Vice President.

13. **Millard Fillmore**, of New York; filled out Taylor's term; inaugurated July 10, **1850**.

14. **Franklin Pierce**, of New Hampshire; one term; inaugurated March 4, **1853**. William R. King, Vice President.

15. **James Buchanan**, of Pennsylvania; one term; inaugurated March 4, **1857**. J. C. Breckinridge, Vice President.

16. **Abraham Lincoln**, of Illinois; two terms; inaugurated March 4, **1861**. Hannibal Hamlin and Andrew Johnson, Vice Presidents.

II. OF THE STATES FROM WHICH THE PRESIDENTS CAME

1. Of the first sixteen Presidents of the United States, **Virginia** had *five*, — Washington, Jefferson, Madison, Monroe, Tyler.

Massachusetts had *two*, — John Adams and John Quincy Adams.

New York had *two*, — Van Buren and Fillmore.

Pennsylvania had *one*, — Buchanan.

New Hampshire had *one*, — Pierce.

Ohio had *one*, — Harrison.

Tennessee had *two*, — Jackson and Polk.

Louisiana had *one*, — Taylor.

Illinois had *one*, — Lincoln.

2. Of these sixteen Presidents, eight were from **free states**, and eight from **slave states**.

3. The Presidents who served *two terms* were Washington, Jefferson, Madison, Monroe, and Jackson. The Presidents who died in office were Harrison, Taylor, and Lincoln. The Vice Presidents who then became Presidents were Tyler, Fillmore, and Johnson.

III. OF THE POLITICAL MEANING OF THE ELECTIONS

Washington, elected by **all parties**.

John Adams, elected by the **Federalists**.

Jefferson, elected by the **Republicans**.¹

Madison, elected by the **Republicans**.

Monroe, without much regard to party.

John Quincy Adams, elected by the **Federalists**.

Jackson, elected by the **Democrats**.

Van Buren, elected by the **Democrats**.

Harrison, elected by the **Whigs**.

Tyler, became President by death of **Harrison**.

Polk, elected by the **Democrats**.

Taylor, elected by the **Whigs**.

Fillmore, became President by death of **Taylor**.

Pierce, elected by the **Democrats**.

Buchanan, elected by the **Democrats**.

Lincoln, elected by the **Republicans**.

¹ See note, p. 199.

THE WAR OF SECESSION

CAUSES OF THE WAR

657. We are now to study the history of the **Civil War** in the United States. This war commenced with the firing on Fort Sumter, in April, 1861, and closed with the surrender of the Southern armies in April, 1865. It therefore lasted four years.

We may say of the War of Secession in the United States, that it was one of the most tremendous conflicts ever known. The struggle was waged by enormous armies, upon a vast territory, and was attended with fearful destruction of life. It was one of the most lamentable that ever occurred, because it arrayed in fratricidal strife the two sections of a people that had previously been the most happy and most prosperous on earth.

658. It was during the administration of President Buchanan, in December, 1860, that the **antagonism** between South and North came to a crisis in the secession of South Carolina from the Union. The example of South Carolina was soon followed by other Southern states.

This antagonism between North and South had its roots deep in our country's history. The seeds of the war were sown before the men who waged the war were born.

There was a difference of opinion respecting the nature of the United States government almost from the time the United States became a government. One class of statesmen said that the Federal Union was a **league** or confederation, which might be dissolved at the wish of the respective states. Another class of statesmen held that the Federal Union formed a **national government**, which could not be dissolved.

This was truly a very wide difference of opinion; but the love for the Union was strong in all sections of the country,

and this disagreement respecting the **theory** of the government would not probably have led to the dissolution of the Union, if important **material** questions had not arisen to give practical point to the disagreement.

659. Several such questions *did* arise. Thus the South wished **free trade**, while a large majority of the people of the North, especially those belonging to the great manufacturing states, desired a **protective tariff**. But the question which most widely divided the North from the South was the question of **slavery**.

At the time of the adoption of the Constitution, slavery existed in the Northern as well as in the Southern States. In the Northern States, the number of slaves was comparatively insignificant. In the South, they had been very numerous from early colonial times, owing to the fact that slave labor was profitably employed in the cultivation of tobacco and rice. The invention of the cotton-gin by Whitney, in 1793, soon made the cultivation of **cotton** the leading branch of Southern industry. This created a demand for large numbers of negroes.

It thus came about that the interests of the **Southern States** were very closely connected with slave labor. In the year 1860, the negroes of the South had increased to about four millions. In the **North**, on the other hand, where slave labor was not profitable, slavery soon died out. The new states of the Northwest filled up with free immigrants. Thus in the North opposition to slavery arose and steadily increased.

660. The opposing interests and sentiments on the subject of slavery led to a long **political struggle**. This contest began about 1820, with the "Missouri Compromise." It grew in bitterness from year to year, and finally resulted in the secession of the Southern States. Let us review the principal steps of this political struggle. These steps are:—

1. **The Missouri Compromise.**—This compromise, as we have seen (§ 592), grew out of a violent agitation on the slavery question, which

shook the whole country, in 1820, when the admission of Missouri as a state was brought up. The Missouri Compromise was supposed to be a complete settlement of the dispute between the slave states and the free states ; but it afterwards proved to be satisfactory to neither North nor South.

II. **The Fugitive-Slave Act.** — This law, passed by Congress in 1850, was to enable masters to recover their slaves escaping to a free state. It met with great opposition at the North.

III. **The Repeal of the Missouri Compromise.** — In 1854, a bill presented by Senator Stephen A. Douglas, rendering the Missouri Compromise null and void, was passed by Congress. This act, which had for its object the organization of territorial government in Kansas and Nebraska, provided that the people of the territories should be left free to adopt or exclude slavery as they pleased.

IV. **Formation of the Republican Party.** — The repeal of the Missouri Compromise caused the deepest excitement throughout the North. This resulted in the formation of a new party called the Republican party, the principal doctrine of which was opposition to the *extension* of slavery.

V. **The Kansas Struggle.** — The condition in which the territory of Kansas was placed by Mr. Douglas's bill with reference to the slavery question, made the soil of that territory the scene of a violent contest for its possession. The history of this struggle has already been seen. It served to still further imbitter both North and South.

VI. **The Political Campaign of 1856.** — In 1856, the subject of slavery was, for the first time, made the avowed issue between the opposing parties in a presidential campaign. John C. Fremont was the Republican candidate, and James Buchanan the Democratic candidate. The Democrats triumphed ; but the strength of the anti-slavery party was shown by the fact that Fremont received over 1,300,000 votes.

VII. **The Dred Scott Decision.** — In 1857, the Supreme Court of the United States decided that the Missouri Compromise was unconstitutional, and that slave-owners might take their slaves into any state in the Union. The people of the South looked on this as their right under the Constitution ; but the North regarded it as virtually establishing slavery throughout all the states, and converting it from a local into a national institution. In some of the Northern States, "Personal Liberty Laws," declaring freedom to slaves who came within their borders, were passed. These measures gave great offense to the people of the South, who said they showed, on the part of the Northern people, a want of good faith in carrying out the compromise of 1850.

VIII. **The John Brown Raid.** — In the fall of 1859, an event occurred which caused great excitement and bitterness at the South. This was a

mad scheme, devised by an old man named John Brown, who, with his sons, had taken an active part in the border warfare in Kansas. His scheme was to liberate the Southern slaves. With but twenty-one followers, he began by seizing the United States arsenal at Harpers Ferry, Virginia, October 16, 1859. But here he and his party were overpowered by the state and Federal troops. Most of the raiders were killed. John Brown and six of his associates were tried and convicted, and were hanged December 2, 1859. This raid served to inflame the minds of the people of the South; for though the great majority of the people of the North strongly condemned the conduct of Brown, his action was regarded by the South as a natural result of the Free Soil doctrine.

661. Such was the state of the country when the time came to nominate a candidate for the presidency to succeed Buchanan, in the spring of 1860. The people became divided into **four parties**, and each party nominated a presidential candidate to represent its principles.

These candidates and their "platforms" were:—

I. **Breckinridge**, candidate of the Southern Democracy. *Platform*: Any citizen has a right to migrate to any territory, taking with him anything that is property (including slaves), and Congress is bound to protect the rights of slave-holders in all the territories.

II. **Douglas**, candidate of the Northern Democracy. *Platform*: Slavery or no slavery in any territory is entirely the affair of the white inhabitants of that territory. They can have it if they choose, can exclude it if they choose, and neither Congress nor the people of the country outside of that territory have any right to meddle in the matter.

III. **Lincoln**, candidate of the Republican party. *Platform*: There is no law for slavery in the territories and no power to enact one, and Congress is bound to prohibit it in or exclude it from every Federal territory.

IV. **Bell**, candidate of the Union Constitutional party. *Platform*: The "Constitution of the country, the Union of the states, and the enforcement of the laws." This platform was somewhat vague, as it did not definitely touch the main question which was agitating the country.



STEPHEN A. DOUGLAS

662. During the months which intervened between the nomination of these candidates and the election, a political campaign marked by extraordinary excitement was carried on. The election took place on the 6th of November, 1860. That night the telegraph flashed all over the Union the tidings that the Republicans had triumphed, and that **Abraham Lincoln** was to be President of the United States.¹

663. There can be no doubt that at the time of Mr. Lincoln's election **the great majority** of the American people, North and South, sincerely loved the Union, and would have preferred to see it maintained at any sacrifice. The proof of this is, that the great majority of the popular vote in the presidential contest was cast in favor of the **conservative** candidates.

It is true there were extreme men on both sides. At the North there were the **Abolitionists**, who were bent on the destruction of slavery, even if the Constitution and the country were destroyed with it. But they were very few in number and took little part in the election. At the South there was another small party of extreme men, who were anxious for nothing but to see the South separated from the North.

664. The election of Abraham Lincoln was the signal for action by the leading **Secessionists**.

South Carolina headed the movement. A convention met, and on the 20th of December, 1860, formally dissolved the connection of South Carolina with the Union, by an **ordinance of secession**, passed by a unanimous vote.

The action of South Carolina was promptly imitated by several of the other Southern States—in the month of January, 1861, by Mississippi, Alabama, Florida, Georgia, and Louisiana; and on the first of February, by Texas,—so that

¹ The electoral vote was: For Lincoln, 180; for Breckinridge, 72; for Bell, 39; for Douglas, 12.

The popular vote was: For Lincoln, 1,857,610; for Breckinridge, 847,953; for Douglas, 1,365,976; for Bell, 590,631.

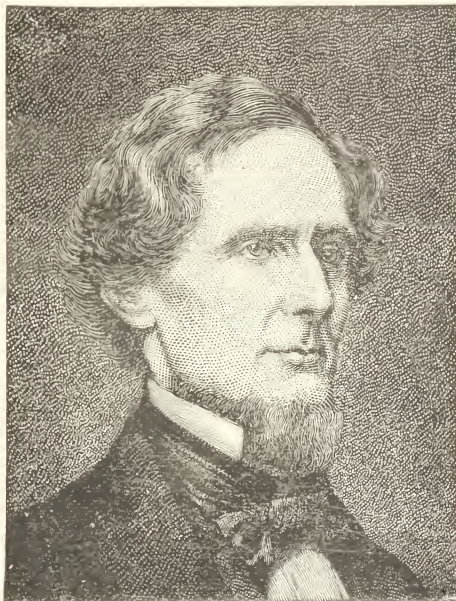
at the latter date the seven cotton states had withdrawn from the Union.

665. The position taken by President Buchanan was that neither he nor Congress had the right to coerce a state into the Union it had left.

Conservative men, North and South, it is true, still hoped that some compromise might be effected that would peacefully bring back the seceded states. During the winter numerous efforts were made to bring about such a compromise, but they were futile.

666. On the 4th of February, 1862, a convention of the seceded states met at Montgomery, Alabama, and there adopted a Constitution and organized a government under the name of the **Confederate States of America**. **Jefferson Davis**¹ was chosen President, and Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia, Vice President.

The seceding states seized most of the forts, arsenals, custom-houses, ships, and other Federal property within their boundaries. At the time of the inauguration of



JEFFERSON DAVIS

¹ Jefferson Davis was born in Kentucky, June 3, 1808. He graduated from the West Point Military Academy in 1828, entered Congress in 1845, and two years later was promoted to the Senate. He was a colonel in the Mexican War, and distinguished himself by his bravery. He was Secretary of War under Pierce's administration. In 1857, he again entered the Senate, where he remained until the outbreak of the Civil War.

President Lincoln, March 4th, 1861, there remained in the South, in the possession of the United States forces, only Fort Sumter, in Charleston Harbor, Fort Pickens, near Pensacola, and the forts off the southern extremity of Florida.

LINCOLN'S INAUGURATION

667. The *sixteenth* President of the United States, was **Abraham Lincoln**, inaugurated March 4, 1861. Hannibal Hamlin, of Maine, had been chosen Vice President.

In his Inaugural Address, President Lincoln set forth his views of the great question which rent the country. He declared that no state could lawfully withdraw from the Union, disavowed any intention of interfering with slavery in the South, and proclaimed that it would be his duty to "hold, occupy, and possess the places and property" belonging to the Federal government in the South; that is, the forts, arsenals, etc., which had been seized by the seceders.



ABRAHAM LINCOLN

668. The tone of this address was taken by the Secessionists as a challenge to war. The Southern Congress at Montgomery



MAP SHOWING
STATES IN SECESSION
 during the
CIVIL WAR

SCALE:
 0 50 100 150 200 250 Miles

began the organization of an army. Many Southern-born officers of the United States army and navy joined the Confederate or Secessionist service. **General Beauregard** was placed in command of the Confederate forces numbering about four thousand men, that were already investing Fort Sumter, in Charleston Harbor.

669. **Fort Sumter** was held by a garrison of eighty men, under Major Anderson. At the time of the secession of South Carolina, in December, 1860, he was stationed at Fort Moultrie, but, a few days afterwards, he withdrew to Fort Sumter as a place of greater security.

When President Lincoln was inaugurated, the situation was such that Fort Sumter would very soon have to be evacuated, on account of the want of provisions, or else the government at Washington would have to get supplies and reinforcements to Fort Sumter.

670. It is believed that at first the President and his advisers inclined to the withdrawal of the garrison from Fort Sumter, and the **Southern commissioners** who had been sent to Washington understood that it was not the intention of the government to reinforce the fort. But early in April, it was resolved to send a fleet with supplies to Major Anderson.

As soon as this design became known, Beauregard was instructed by the Montgomery authorities to demand the **evacuation of Fort Sumter**. He was ordered, if this demand was not complied with, to reduce it by force.

The demand was made on the afternoon of the 11th of April. Major Anderson refused to comply with it. Early on the morning of the 12th, fire was opened on Fort Sumter from the land batteries which had been erected around it. The bombardment was kept up for thirty-four hours. At the end of this time the fort was surrendered by Major Anderson, April 13. It is a remarkable fact that no one on either side was killed.

671. The news of the fate of Fort Sumter produced intense excitement throughout both North and South. At the North all differences in politics were forgotten. The stars and stripes, waving from every house-top and steeple, were the symbol of the united North's determination to uphold the supremacy of the general government.

On the day following the evacuation of Fort Sumter, **President Lincoln issued a proclamation** calling for seventy-five thousand men to serve for three months. The answer to this call was immediate and enthusiastic on the part of all the free states. Volunteers from all quarters at the North began to hurry forward to the capital, and in a very short time a large force was assembled around Washington. The veteran Winfield Scott was general-in-chief.

672. On the 19th of April, a Massachusetts regiment on its way through **Baltimore** was attacked by a mob. Three soldiers were killed and several wounded. The soldiers returned the fire, killing and wounding a number. This was the first blood shed in the war.

At the South excitement ran equally high. A call made by the Montgomery authorities for thirty-five thousand additional troops was responded to with the greatest alacrity.

673. Up to the time of the bombardment of Fort Sumter, only the seven cotton states had seceded.

The eight other slave states, Virginia, Maryland, Delaware, North Carolina, Kentucky, Tennessee, Missouri, and Arkansas, including much the larger half of the Southern population, had stood aloof from the secession movement, hoping for peace, and resolving not to side with the seceded states, unless coercion should be used.

As these eight states had not withdrawn from the Union at the time of Mr. Lincoln's proclamation, he called on each of them for its **proportion of troops**, but from all came defiant replies, refusing to furnish any troops.

674. **Virginia** passed an ordinance of secession on the 17th of April.

Arkansas passed an ordinance of secession, May 6.

North Carolina passed an ordinance of secession, May 20.

Tennessee passed an ordinance of secession, June 8.

The other slave states were Delaware, Maryland, Kentucky, and Missouri. In these states secession had to encounter a powerful opposition. The result was that they were **held in the Union.**

The South was greatly strengthened by the adhesion of Virginia. As soon as that state had withdrawn from the Union, the government of the "Confederacy" was removed from Montgomery to **Richmond.**

675. It was soon seen that Virginia, in the East, and the Western border states of Kentucky and Missouri, would be the theater of the war which all recognized as now inevitable. From North and South armed forces were hurried forward to dispute the possession of those states.

CAMPAIGNS OF 1861

676. Operations in the East.—The situation of the Union forces in Virginia, at the close of the month of May, was this:—

A large army had collected around Washington, under the veteran **General Scott.** During the night of the 23d of May, a strong column was thrown across the Potomac at Washington, and took possession of Arlington Heights and Alexandria, in Virginia.

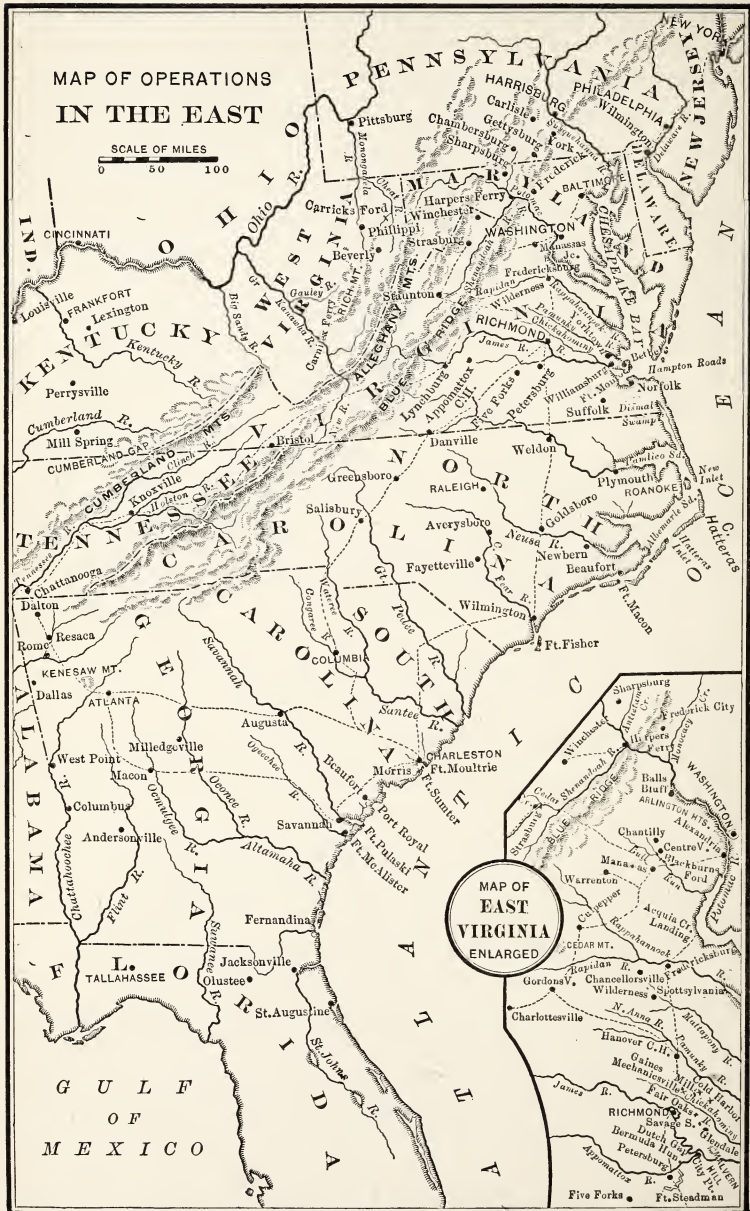
A body of twelve thousand troops, under **General Butler,** held possession of Fortress Monroe, on the Yorktown peninsula.

A column, under **General Patterson,** was posted near Harpers Ferry, in West Virginia.

A corps of Ohio militia and Unionist West-Virginians under the command of **General George B. McClellan,** had crossed the Ohio River into West Virginia.

MAP OF OPERATIONS IN THE EAST

SCALE OF MILES
0 50 100



677. The situation of the Confederate force in Virginia, at the same period, was this: —

The principal army was gathered in the vicinity of Manassas Junction, Virginia, and was under the command of **General Beauregard**.

There was a force on the Peninsula (at Yorktown and Big Bethel), under **General Magruder**, to hold Butler in check.

There was a force, under **General Joseph E. Johnston**, in the Shenandoah Valley, confronting the corps of Patterson.

There was a force in West Virginia, holding the strong positions in that mountain region, and prepared to resist the advance of McClellan.

678. McClellan's West Virginia Campaign. — It was in West Virginia that the opening conflict occurred. An encounter took place, June 3, at **Philippi**. The Union force was successful.

679. McClellan then followed up the campaign by the action at **Rich Mountain**, July 11, in which he forced the Southern troops to retreat. In two stands made by them at **Carricks Ford** and **Beverly** they were again overwhelmed. Before the close of July the campaign was ended, and the Confederates, for the time being, abandoned West Virginia.¹

680. Soon after the conflict thus begun in the mountains of West Virginia, an encounter took place between the opposing forces on the Peninsula. General Butler, the commander of the Union forces, sent forward from Fortress Monroe, Virginia, a body of troops, which attacked a Confederate force at **Big Bethel**, Virginia, June 10. Butler's troops were repulsed with loss. In the Shenandoah Valley, the column of Patterson and that of Johnston watched each other without engaging in any action of note.

681. The Bull Run Campaign. — Meantime the attention of both North and South was centered on the two main armies, — the Northern force, called the Army of the Potomac, and the

¹ The operations of the West Virginia campaign were of no great magnitude or importance; but their success served to encourage the North, and soon after led to McClellan's appointment to the command of the main Union army in Virginia. The Union army in West Virginia numbered about 30,000; the Confederate force, less than 10,000.

Southern force, called the Army of Northern Virginia. The former consisted of about thirty-five thousand men, and was under the immediate command of **General Irwin McDowell**, General Scott, though still general-in-chief, being too old and infirm to take the field. The latter force, under the command of Beauregard, occupied a position at Centerville and Manassas Junction, covering the approach to Richmond.

Richmond, as the capital of the Southern Confederacy, became the grand "objective point" which the Army of the Potomac was to capture. The whole North was extraordinarily excited on this subject, and raised the cry of "On to Richmond!" General Scott, yielding to this pressure, ordered General McDowell to make a forward movement. This was begun July 16. After some preliminary skirmishing at **Centerville** and **Blackburns Ford**, the Union army, early on Sunday morning, July 21, reached **Bull Run**, behind which the army of Beauregard was posted.

Having crossed the stream, the Union army opened the conflict. A severe battle ensued, lasting the greater part of the day. It was fought with much stubbornness on both sides. It seemed that the Union army would carry the field; but, in the afternoon, the Confederates, reinforced by Johnston's column from the Shenandoah Valley, fell upon the right flank of the Union army, which was thrown into great disorder. The troops then fled, panic-stricken, to Washington.¹ This battle is commonly called the **First Battle of Manassas**.

The principal result of the battle was to convince the country that a real and terrible war was upon it; not a trifling affair, as many people had imagined. Both sides recognized this fact, and set to work forming armies on a gigantic scale. President Lincoln called out half a million troops.

¹ The official Southern loss in the battle of Bull Run was 378 killed, 1489 wounded, and 30 missing; total, 1897.

The official Union loss was 481 killed, 1011 wounded, and about 1500 prisoners; total, in round numbers, 3000 men.

682. The army around Washington was placed under command of **General McClellan**. He began to organize, arm, and discipline his force. By the autumn of 1861, the Army of the Potomac numbered over one hundred and fifty thousand men. The Southern army also received large additions. It continued to hold its position, under Beauregard, at Manassas Junction.

683. During the remainder of the year 1861, the main armies in Virginia did not again join battle. The only military operation in the east during these months was the battle of **Balls Bluff**, Virginia, which resulted disastrously to the Union side.¹

684. Operations in the West. — Military operations in the West during 1861 were confined to the state of **Missouri**. In this state, as in the other border state of Kentucky, the population was divided between Unionists and Secessionists.

The Secessionists made great efforts to secure the state to the Confederacy, and pushed up troops from Texas and Arkansas into Missouri. The two most important actions in the Missouri campaign of 1861 were the engagement at **Carthage** and the battle of **Wilson's Creek**, in both of which the Union columns were forced to retreat.

685. The only other operation in Missouri during this year was the action at **Belmont**, November 7. **General Ulysses S. Grant** made an expedition down the Mississippi, from Cairo to Belmont. After destroying a Secessionist camp at that point, his force was attacked by troops sent over from the Confederate fortified camp at Columbus, on the Kentucky side of the Mississippi, opposite Belmont. Grant's force was compelled to take to its gunboats and make its way back to Cairo.

686. Naval and Coast Operations. — Soon after the outbreak of the war, a **blockade** of the Southern ports was declared by

¹ This encounter took place October 21. A force of two thousand men was thrown across the Potomac at Balls Bluff, where it was assailed by a body of Confederates, and repulsed with severe loss. The Union commander, General Baker, of California, was killed in this action.

President Lincoln, and measures were taken to render it as effective as possible. The navy of the United States was very small at first, but many ships were chartered or purchased. The number of vessels, however, was insufficient to close up the Southern ports completely, so that blockade runners had little difficulty in passing in and out, and it was a long time before the blockade was rendered effective.

The South was almost destitute of naval resources, but it contrived to fit out a number of privateers to prey upon the commerce of the North. Of these, the most successful during this year was the *Sumter*, under command of Captain Semmes.

The importance of the possession of the principal Southern ports led to the fitting out of several naval expeditions during the year 1861. The first of these was under Commodore Stringham and General Butler, who, on the 29th of August, took the forts at **Hatteras Inlet**, on the North Carolina coast.

A second expedition, on a much larger scale, under Commodore Dupont and General Thomas W. Sherman, captured the earthworks commanding **Port Royal**, South Carolina, November 27. A military force was landed at Hilton Head, and this point became afterwards an important center of naval operations against the Southern ports.

687. Foreign Relations. — Soon after the outbreak of hostilities, the British government issued a **proclamation of neutrality** (May 13), acknowledging the South as a belligerent power. France soon after did the same.

This caused much hard feeling at the North. At the same time the South said that England did not go far enough, and claimed recognition by European powers as an **independent nation**. Many people at the South hoped that England, which suffered greatly, owing to the stoppage of her cotton supply, would acknowledge Southern independence and break the blockade. But England went no further than to acknowledge the "belligerent rights" of the South.

688. An event which happened towards the close of the year 1861 came near plunging the United States into a war with England. This event was the celebrated **Trent affair**.

Mason and **Slidell**, two Confederate commissioners to the British government, ran the blockade, and at Havana took passage on board the *Trent*, an English mail-steamer. The day after leaving (November 8), the *Trent* was stopped by the United States war-vessel *San Jacinto*, commanded by **Captain Wilkes**. Mason and Slidell were seized and carried to Fort Warren.

When the tidings of this seizure reached England, the British government demanded the surrender of the envoys, and began preparations for war. But war was avoided, for the United States government gave up Mason and Slidell. The reason why the government gave them up was because the United States had all along, and especially during the War of 1812, taken a position respecting the **rights of neutral ships** that did not justify Captain Wilkes in taking the Confederate commissioners from the *Trent*.

CAMPAIGNS OF 1862

689. Operations in the West.—The military operations of the year 1862 opened in the West.

The situation of the opposing armies in the West, at the beginning of 1862, was this:—

The **Confederates** held a defensive line running from the Mississippi River eastward to the Cumberland Mountains. The left was at Columbus, on the Mississippi. Forts Henry and Donelson guarded the Cumberland and Tennessee rivers. A considerable army at Bowling Green covered the great railroad lines southward to Nashville. The right flank was held by a force posted at Mill Spring, Kentucky. General Albert Sydney Johnston was in command of the Southern forces in the West.

690. On the **Union side**, there was an army at Cairo, Illinois, and vicinity, under General Grant. Bowling Green, Kentucky, was threatened by an army under General Buell. The force at Mill Spring, Kentucky, was threatened by a body of troops under General G. H. Thomas. General Halleck was general-in-chief of these Western forces.

691. The campaign of 1862 opened with an attack on the Southern force at **Mill Spring**, Kentucky, in the first month of the year. General Thomas was successful, and the Southern general, Zollicoffer, was killed.

692. The second action of the campaign was a mixed land and naval expedition made against **Forts Henry** and **Donelson**, in Tennessee. A flotilla of gunboats built in the West was under the command of Commodore Foote; the land force was under General Grant. The fleet sailed up the Tennessee to Fort Henry (February 6). That fort surrendered after a brief fight. A large part of the Confederate garrison escaped to Fort Donelson.

General Grant now advanced on Fort Donelson, and appeared before it on the 12th of February. After several severe engagements, the garrison, consisting of about nine thousand men, **capitulated** on the morning of the 16th of February.

693. The capture of these forts was considered a very severe blow to the South. This was so, not only on account of the actual loss of men, but because the opening up of the Cumberland and Tennessee rivers to the Union gunboats destroyed the whole defensive line taken up by the Confederates. General Albert Sydney Johnston had to abandon Kentucky and a large part of Tennessee. He retired at first to **Murfreesboro**, Tennessee. The Union army, under Buell, followed up closely, and on the 23d of February took possession of **Nashville**.

694. While the capture of Donelson thus shook the center of the Confederate defensive line, it also endangered its left,

that is, the stronghold of Columbus, Kentucky. This place the Confederates immediately abandoned, and moved down to Island No. 10 and New Madrid. **Columbus** was occupied by the Union army, March 22. The Western operations of 1862 opened brilliantly for the Union armies, and served to encourage the whole North.

695. The Battle of Shiloh. — A new campaign was now prepared. Albert Sydney Johnston, during the month of March, united all his scattered forces at Corinth, and resolved to strike a blow at the Union army under General Grant. That army, after the capture of Fort Donelson, was moved to Pittsburg Landing, on the Tennessee River. The Union army, under Buell, was ordered to move from Nashville and unite with Grant's army.

Before these forces could be united, the Southern army moved up secretly from Corinth, and fell upon Grant's army at **Pittsburg Landing**. The result was the fierce battle of **Shiloh**, Tennessee, fought April 6. The Confederates numbered about forty thousand men; the Union army, fifty-seven thousand.

The assailants were successful in the onslaught, and drove the Union army from the field and down to the shelter of the gunboats. But **General Albert Sydney Johnston** was killed, and during the afternoon Buell's army came up; so that when, on the following morning, an advance was made by the Union army, the Confederates retired to Corinth, Mississippi.¹

696. Beauregard, who came into command of the Southern forces on the death of Johnston, remained in Corinth till the Union armies, now under General Halleck, had worked their way cautiously up to near that point. Then Beauregard evacuated **Corinth**. It was occupied by the Union army, May 30.

697. In the meantime, in consequence of the retreat of the Confederates, several of their defensive points on the

¹ The Union loss in the battle of Shiloh was nearly 15,000; the Confederate loss was 10,699, killed, wounded, and missing.

Mississippi fell,—**Island No. 10**, on the 7th of April; **Fort Pillow**, on the 4th of June; and the city of **Memphis**, two days afterwards.

698. Bragg's Invasion of Kentucky.—After the capture of Corinth, Grant's army remained for a time stationary. It held a long line from Memphis, Tennessee, to Huntsville, Alabama. Buell's army was detached, and sent to gain possession of the important point of **Chattanooga**, Tennessee.

The main Confederate army of the Southwest, under **General Bragg** (who succeeded Beauregard), had meantime been secretly transferred eastward from Corinth and concentrated at Chattanooga. Buell's army was approaching that place in the month of August, 1862, when suddenly Bragg pushed with his whole army northward towards the Ohio River. This movement compelled Buell to retreat rapidly to **Louisville**.



GENERAL BRAGG

699. At the same time that Bragg's army moved northward, another column, under **General Kirby Smith**, advanced from Knoxville into Kentucky. The two Southern armies remained in central Kentucky during the month of September. They overran the state, and their foraging parties gathered vast quantities of supplies. They failed, however, to cause a general uprising in the state; and as the Union army was soon largely reinforced, Bragg and Smith retreated towards **Chattanooga** at the end of September.

700. Buell's army pursued Bragg through Kentucky. At **Perryville**, Kentucky, an action was fought October 8, in which the Union army had the advantage; but Bragg escaped to Chattanooga.

701. The Union army, now under **General Rosecrans**, went forward as far as **Nashville**, where it occupied a fortified position. Soon afterwards the army of Bragg moved north

from Chattanooga, and planted itself at **Murfreesboro**, Tennessee, a few miles south of Nashville.

702. Battle of Murfreesboro. — Near the close of December, 1862, General Rosecrans advanced from Nashville to attack Bragg. The result was the battle of Murfreesboro.

The action began on the morning of the 31st of December. The Confederates attacked, and, falling upon the right flank of the Union army, forced it from the field. The fight was continued all day in a very determined manner on both sides. When night came, the action was still indecisive.

The following day (January 1, 1863) there was a little fighting, but neither side gained a decided advantage. There was more fighting on the 2d, but at the close of the bloody contest it was still a "drawn battle." However, the Union army held possession of Murfreesboro and the field of battle, and Bragg retired and took position on Duck River, a few miles south.¹

703. Other Western Operations. — While the main armies of the West were thus operating in Kentucky and Tennessee in the summer and fall of 1862, the opposing forces in Mississippi were carrying on some minor operations.

When Bragg and Buell went to Tennessee, Grant was left behind to hold the position of **Corinth** and **Iuka**, in Mississippi. On the Confederate side, Generals Price and Van Dorn remained to watch this force. Towards the close of September, Price and Van Dorn made assaults on Corinth and Iuka, but they were not able to dislodge the Union troops, whose position was strongly fortified.

704. In the early part of 1862, a severe battle was fought far west of the Mississippi. This was at **Pea Ridge**, Arkansas. The Southern force was under General Van Dorn; the Union

¹ In the battle of Murfreesboro, or "Stone River," as it is sometimes called, the Union army numbered 47,000, the Confederate army 35,000, men. The Union loss was very heavy, nearly 14,000 men; while the Confederate loss was heavy also, over 10,000 men killed, wounded, and missing.

army was under General Curtis. Van Dorn was defeated in the action which took place March 7 and 8.

705. Eastern Operations.—From the Western campaigns of 1862 we now turn to the Virginia campaigns of that year.

It has been seen that the Army of the Potomac was organized in the vicinity of Washington during the fall and winter of 1861. General George B. McClellan was in chief command. In the spring of 1862, he had formed an army of nearly **two hundred thousand men**.

The Southern army, now under General J. E. Johnston, still lay at Manassas Junction, Virginia.

General McClellan's plan was not to attack Johnston's army at Manassas, but to transfer his force by water to the Yorktown peninsula and approach Richmond by that line. McClellan began in March, 1862, by making a feint of an advance on Manassas.

Johnston retired southward towards Richmond. The Army of the Potomac was then brought back to Alexandria and moved by water to **Fortress Monroe**, on the Peninsula.

706. The Peninsular Campaign.—On the 4th of April, 1862, the Army of the Potomac began to move up the Peninsula. It was soon brought to a halt by the fortifications of **Yorktown**. A delay took place there which gave General Johnston time to bring his whole army into Yorktown.

A month was spent in erecting batteries before Yorktown. Johnston then quietly evacuated the place and retired towards Richmond. McClellan took possession of Yorktown, May 4. He then pushed forward after the retreating army.

The next day, the rear of Johnston's army was overtaken at



GEN. G. B. McCLELLAN



GEN. J. E. JOHNSTON

Williamsburg, Virginia. Here an action took place, May 5. It was somewhat of a success for the Union army, but Johnston made good his retreat.

707. The Army of the Potomac now advanced to the **Chickahominy**, in Virginia. McClellan placed the army partly on one side of the Chickahominy, partly on the other. The left was at Bottoms Bridge, the right at Mechanicsville.

No action took place till the last day of May. The Southern commander then attacked that part of McClellan's army that was on the south side of the Chickahominy. The action is called the battle of **Fair Oaks**. It was not decisive.

708. The battle was renewed the next day, June 1. McClellan was more successful, and the Confederates retired nearer to Richmond. In this action, General J. E. Johnston was wounded, and **General Robert E. Lee** took command of the Southern army in Virginia.

McClellan did not now advance on Richmond. He was waiting for the aid of another Union army which was under **McDowell**, and which had moved from the Potomac to Fredericksburg, whence it was to come down and assist the army besieging Richmond.

709. In addition to McDowell's army, there were two other Union forces in Virginia. These were **Fremont's** force in southwestern Virginia, and **Banks's** force in the Shenandoah Valley.



"STONEWALL" JACKSON

While the Army of the Potomac was lying waiting, the Confederate commander sent "**Stonewall**" **Jackson** on a raid northward. Jackson first struck a blow at Fremont, which caused that officer to retreat. He then fell upon Banks's force at **Strasburg**, Virginia, and, punishing it severely, sent it to the Potomac. McDowell's army was also obliged to retire from Fredericksburg, Virginia, so as to oppose Jackson.

When Jackson had thrown back the three Union forces, he hastily put back to join Lee. The Union forces of McDowell and Banks and Fremont followed Jackson up the Shenandoah Valley; but they could not head him off. These stirring events took place in the latter part of May and the early part of June.

710. On his return from this raid, Jackson was ordered by Lee to move secretly down upon the right flank of the Union army at Mechanicsville, Virginia. This he did, June 25. The next day, Lee, from Richmond, crossed the Chickahominy, and, uniting with Jackson, attacked that part of McClellan's army that was on the north side of the Chickahominy. The result was the battle of **Gaines Mill**, Virginia, June 27.

In this battle, the Union troops were driven from their positions with heavy loss. They were with difficulty able to cross the Chickahominy and join the part of the army which lay on the south side.

711. The result of Gaines Mill was to deprive McClellan of his base of supplies on the York River, and compel him to seek a **new base** on the James River. The retreat was marked by the battles of **Savage Station** (June 29), **Glendale** (June 30), and **Malvern Hill** (July 1). In the last action, Lee's army met a repulse. This gave McClellan the opportunity of withdrawing to Harrison's Landing, on the James River.

Thus McClellan's Peninsula campaign failed of its object — to capture Richmond. However, Lee's loss was greater than McClellan's. Lee lost about twenty thousand killed, wounded, and missing; McClellan lost about eighteen thousand.

712. Lee's Invasion of the North. — Soon after the retreat of the Union army, the Confederates, in August, 1862, began to move towards Washington. Between Lee and the Potomac there was an army of about fifty thousand men, made up of the forces lately under Fremont and Banks and McDowell, and now united under General John Pope. This army was guarding the line of the **Rapidan**.

713. Jackson, leading the advance of the Southern army, attacked Banks's force at **Cedar Mountain**, Virginia, August 9. Banks was able to hold Jackson in check for some time; but when the main Confederate force arrived, Banks had to retreat. Lee pressed heavily upon Pope, compelling him to retreat northward from every position.

The most bloody combat of this campaign occurred near the old Bull Run battle-ground. This action, called the **Second Battle of Manassas**, took place August 29 and 30. Pope's army was utterly defeated.

714. When it became known that Lee was pressing northward, McClellan was ordered to ship the Army of the Potomac back to Washington. A part of the army got up and was forwarded to take part in the second Bull Run battle; but Pope's army was overwhelmed and reeled back to **Washington**. The last action was at **Chantilly**, Virginia, September 1. Here the Union generals, Kearny and Stevens, were killed.

The broken army of Pope was united with the Army of the Potomac at Washington, and the whole put under McClellan.

Lee now, instead of advancing straight on Washington, crossed the Potomac above, and marched to **Frederick City**, Maryland, and from there westward. McClellan moved up the Potomac to meet the Confederates.

715. At **South Mountain**, Maryland, Lee left a force to dispute the passes in the range of hills, while he sent Jackson to capture the Union garrison at **Harpers Ferry**, West Virginia. McClellan's force, after a vigorous fight at South Mountain, carried the passes, September 14. But before McClellan could press forward to save Harpers Ferry, the garrison of twelve thousand men was surrendered to Jackson, September 15.

716. Lee now united his forces behind Antietam Creek, near the town of Sharpsburg, Maryland. McClellan moved up and engaged the Confederates in the great battle of **Antietam**, September 17. The combat raged all day. Both armies were

much shattered, but the Union army held the ground, and Lee was compelled to recross the Potomac into the Shenandoah Valley.

The Union army did nothing till November. Then McClellan crossed the Potomac and moved southward, on the east side of the Blue Ridge. The Confederates retreated up the Shenandoah Valley.

In the midst of this movement, McClellan, at Warrenton, was ordered to deliver up the command of the Army of the Potomac to **General Ambrose E. Burnside**.

717. Operations on the Rappahannock.—General Burnside moved the army to the Rappahannock, opposite **Fredericksburg**. His plan was to march on Richmond by that route. Lee threw his army into Fredericksburg, and made the hills in the rear of the town strong with earthworks.

Burnside crossed the Rappahannock, December 11 and 12, and fought the sanguinary battle of **Fredericksburg**, Virginia, December 13. The Union army was defeated, with a loss of about eleven thousand men.

718. It is thus seen that, during the year 1862, the results of the war in Virginia were, on the whole, highly favorable to the Confederates, while in the West they were highly favorable to the Union army.

719. Naval Operations.—In the spring of 1862, a powerful fleet of armed vessels, under Commodore David G. Farragut, was fitted out to capture the important city of **New Orleans**. A military force, under General Benjamin F. Butler, was to aid in the operation.

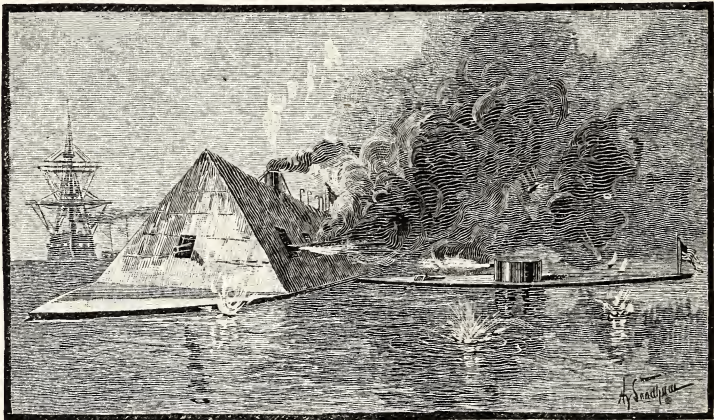
The fleet passed up the Mississippi to **Forts Jackson** and **St. Philip**, which defended the passage to New Orleans. **Farragut**, after bombarding these forts for six days, ran past them with his gunboats, April 24.

In this action, the fleet had not only to engage the forts, but had to meet the Confederate rams and fire-rafts. In a

grand naval combat, Farragut was completely successful. The fleet approached New Orleans, which was abandoned by the Confederate force. On the 28th of April, the city was surrendered, and the army, under General Butler, took military possession of it.

720. During the year 1862, several other important naval actions and coast operations took place. The most remarkable of the naval combats was the fight between the *Merrimac* and the *Monitor*, in Hampton Roads.

The *Merrimac* was a Confederate iron-clad war-ship, which had been constructed at Norfolk. On the 8th of March, this formidable vessel burst out upon the Union fleet, near the mouth of James River. It destroyed the sloop-of-war *Cumberland* and the frigate *Congress*. It seemed that nothing could stop its devastating career. During the night, the *Monitor* arrived from New York. The *Monitor* was a new and peculiar iron-clad war-ship, constructed by Captain Ericsson.



ACTION BETWEEN THE MONITOR AND THE MERRIMAC

In the morning, the *Monitor*, commanded by Captain Worden, attacked the *Merrimac*, and after a fierce fight compelled the

Confederate iron-clad to retire damaged to Norfolk. Two months later, when McClellan had captured Yorktown, General Wool took Norfolk, and the Confederates destroyed the *Merrimac*.

721. On the Atlantic coast there were several important land and naval expeditions during the spring of 1862. The first was under General Burnside and Commodore Goldsborough. The fleet and force, on the 8th of February, captured **Roanoke Island**. On the 14th of March, General Burnside captured **Newbern**, North Carolina. During March, an expedition captured **St. Augustine, Fernandina**, and other points in Florida. On the 11th of April, **Fort Pulaski**, at the mouth of the Savannah River, was reduced by General Gillmore. On the 26th of April, **Fort Macon**, North Carolina, was surrendered to the Union forces under Commodore Goldsborough.

During this year, immense havoc was committed on the commerce of the North by the *Florida* and the *Alabama*, two cruisers which were permitted by the British government to pass into the service of the Confederates.

CAMPAIGNS OF 1863

722. On New Year's day of 1863, President Lincoln issued the **Emancipation Proclamation**, which declared free all the slaves within the borders of the Confederate States.

723. Operations in the East.—The opening of the year 1863 found the two great armies in Virginia in the same position they held immediately after the battle of Fredericksburg. Lee's army occupied Fredericksburg, while the Army of the Potomac was posted on the north side of the Rappahannock.

About the end of January, General Burnside was relieved of the command of the Army of the Potomac, and it was given to **General Joseph Hooker**.

724. Battle of Chancellorsville. — The Army of the Potomac was recruited, and, at the end of April, Hooker moved to attack Lee. Hooker said his plan was, not to assail the strong works of Fredericksburg, but to cross the Rappahannock about twenty miles above Fredericksburg, and, by moving on Lee's communications with Richmond, compel the Confederates to fight in the open field.

The bulk of the Union army was accordingly marched to Chancellorsville, Virginia, about ten miles southwest of Fredericksburg. This compelled Lee to draw most of his force away from Fredericksburg and go to meet Hooker. The result was the great battle of **Chancellorsville**. The heaviest engagements were fought on the 2d and 3d of May. In these, the Confederates inflicted terrible loss on the Union army, and Hooker was forced to recross the Rappahannock, May 5.

The North felt this disaster very much, for Hooker's army was double the Southern force, — ninety thousand to about forty-five thousand. The Union loss was over seventeen thousand killed and wounded.

It was in this battle that the famous "Stonewall" Jackson was mortally wounded through mistake, in the darkness, by one of his own men.

725. Invasion of Pennsylvania. — Lee now resolved on a second invasion of the North. He drew forces from the South, and brought his army up to about seventy thousand men. With this powerful and high-spirited army he struck northward. This move compelled Hooker to fall back so as to protect Washington.

Lee's object was to carry the war into the Northern States. He accordingly moved from Fredericksburg to Harpers Ferry, West Virginia. Here he crossed the Potomac and advanced northward up the Cumberland Valley.

The Union army, after reaching Washington, marched to Frederick City, Maryland. Here Hooker was superseded by **General George G. Meade**.

726. The van of Lee's army pushed up to the Susquehanna, and took the towns of **York** and **Carlisle**, in Pennsylvania. The Army of the Potomac hastened forward to meet the invading force. The two great armies encountered each other, July 1, 1863, and the result was the tremendous battle of **Gettysburg**, Pennsylvania.

This action, the greatest of the war, lasted during the first three days of July. The Union army was strongly posted on a hill-slope near the town. The Confederates attacked this position with great fury during the 2d and 3d of July, but each time they were repulsed. The Confederate loss in killed, wounded, and missing was over thirty thousand men.

Lee retreated after this battle. He recrossed the Potomac, moved up the Shenandoah Valley, and took position on the south side of the **Rapidan**. The Army of the Potomac followed up and placed itself on the north side of that stream. In this situation, the two armies confronted each other, without any event of importance, during the remainder of the year 1863.

727. Operations in the West. — At the commencement of the year 1863, there were in the West two Union armies. There was the Army of the Cumberland, under **Rosecrans**, at Murfreesboro, Tennessee, where we saw a great battle taking place on the last day of 1862 and the first day of 1863. The Confederate army opposed to Rosecrans was under Bragg, and lay a few miles south of Murfreesboro.

In northern Mississippi was the Army of the Tennessee, under General Grant. It held the line of the Memphis and Charleston Railroad, the right at Memphis, Tennessee, the left at Corinth, Mississippi. The Confederate army opposed to Grant was under General Pemberton, who held the line of the Tallahatchie.

728. Opening of the Mississippi. — The great object of the army under General Grant was the **opening of the Mississippi**

River. In consequence of the capture of the Confederate strongholds at Island No. 10, Columbus, and Memphis, and the opening of the Lower Mississippi by the capture of New Orleans, all that was required for the unlocking of the Mississippi was the capture of the fortified river-posts of **Vicksburg** and **Port Hudson**.

729. General Grant had, at the close of the year 1862, sent a column, under General W. T. Sherman, to assault the works north of Vicksburg, but they proved too strong to be taken.

Early in 1863, Grant moved his army to the **west side of the Mississippi**, and took position at Millikens Bend, a few miles north of Vicksburg. The months of February and March were spent in trying a number of plans for capturing the Confederate stronghold.

The bold plan which was at last adopted was as follows: The transports were to run past the Vicksburg batteries, while the army marched down the *west* side of the Mississippi to far below Vicksburg, then crossed in the transports to the east side, and attacked the stronghold from the rear.

730. This plan was successfully carried out. The transports ran past the batteries during the night of April 22. A week later, the army crossed to **Grand Gulf**, and from there marched on the rear of Vicksburg.

During this movement, Grant met and defeated the Confederates under Pemberton in five actions. Pemberton then retired to his works in Vicksburg, and Grant laid siege to them.

731. The **siege of Vicksburg** lasted for six weeks. Pemberton had hoped that General J. E. Johnston, who was hovering about the rear of the Union army with a small force, would relieve him. Johnston could do nothing. The Vicksburg garrison must either starve or surrender. **Pemberton capitulated**, July 4, 1863, with twenty-seven thousand prisoners.

732. While Grant was besieging Vicksburg, General Banks, who had succeeded Butler in command of the Gulf army, was laying siege to **Port Hudson**. That place could not hold out after Vicksburg had yielded, so it was surrendered, July 9. By these operations the Mississippi was opened throughout its length.

733. The capture of Vicksburg took place at the same time as the decisive battle of Gettysburg. These successes caused great rejoicings throughout the North, and made final triumph seem much more likely than it had ever seemed before.

734. Rosecrans's Campaigns. — The Army of the Cumberland, under **Rosecrans**, lay at Murfreesboro until June, 1863. It then advanced southward. Bragg's force retreated before it, and went back towards Chattanooga. In several partial actions which took place, the Union army was successful.

735. The operations in southern Tennessee continued till the middle of September. Rosecrans then crossed the Tennessee River. While he took possession of Chattanooga (abandoned by Bragg) with part of his force, the Confederates engaged his main army in the great battle of **Chickamauga**, a few miles south of Chattanooga.

The battle of Chickamauga was fought September 19 and 20. The Union army was defeated; but **General G. H. Thomas** and his army fought so bravely that they were able to retire and fortify themselves in Chattanooga.

Bragg succeeded in shutting up Rosecrans's army in **Chattanooga**, and nearly starved it out; but **Sherman** came with troops from Vicksburg, and **Hooker** brought a corps from Virginia. Grant was put in command of all the Western armies, and went to Chattanooga.

736. The siege of Chattanooga was raised by a great battle. It was begun November 23, and continued the next two days. The Confederates were attacked at **Lookout Mountain**, Tennes-

see, and on **Missionary Ridge**, Tennessee. They were defeated and forced to flee southward.

737. The next thing done by Grant was to send Sherman to relieve **East Tennessee**. That region had been taken possession of by an army under Burnside in the summer of 1863. But Longstreet succeeded in shutting up Burnside's army in Knoxville. Longstreet was repulsed in an assault (November 30), and when he heard of Sherman's advance he retreated into Virginia. East Tennessee, the population of which was largely Unionist, was after this held permanently.

738. Operations against Charleston. — In April, 1863, **Admiral Dupont** sailed from Port Royal, South Carolina, with an iron-clad fleet for the capture of **Fort Sumter** and **Charleston**. The iron-clads attacked the fort, April 8, but were so much damaged by the heavy shot that they had to retire.

During the summer, land and naval forces under **General Gillmore** and **Admiral Dahlgren** attacked the defenses of Charleston, but without success. An assault on Fort Wagner, on Morris Island, was repulsed with great loss.

Afterwards Gillmore, by means of very heavy guns, battered Fort Sumter into a heap of ruins; but the Confederate garrison still held the work. With long-range cannon, Gillmore threw shells into Charleston. These operations all failed.

739. Draft Riot. — During the session of Congress which ended in March, 1863, the Conscription Act became a law. Under this act the President ordered a draft for three hundred thousand men. This led to a riot in New York City (July 13), by which one hundred and fifty lives were lost and a very large amount of property was destroyed.

740. Summing Up. — At the close of 1863, the Union forces held possession of the Mississippi River, of the states of Missouri, Arkansas, Kentucky, and Tennessee, and of a large portion of Mississippi, Louisiana, and Florida.

CAMPAIGNS OF 1864

• **741. Operations in the East.** — The Virginia campaign of 1864 opened in the month of May. Ulysses S. Grant had been made lieutenant-general and commander of all the armies. He left Sherman in command of the Western forces, and transferred his headquarters to the Army of the Potomac, which was still under the immediate command of General Meade. General P. H. Sheridan was put in command of the cavalry.

In the month of May, 1864, Lee was still guarding the line of the Rapidan. The Army of the Potomac crossed the Rapidan, May 4, and met the Confederates in the stubborn and bloody battle of the **Wilderness**, Virginia. The combat lasted during the greater part of three days, without decided victory on either side.

742. Grant now tried by a flank movement to march on Richmond. Lee moved faster and planted his army at **Spottsylvania**, Virginia, behind earthworks. The Army of the Potomac tried during two weeks to carry these works. The most important success was won by **General Hancock**, who took part of the Confederate line and captured about four thousand prisoners.

743. Giving up the attempt against Spottsylvania, Grant made another flank movement to get between Lee and Richmond; but Lee confronted the army at the **North Anna River**.

744. A repetition of the same movement brought the Army of the Potomac up to the line of the Chickahominy. Here it met a very disastrous repulse in the battle of **Cold Harbor**. Finding that he could not approach Richmond from the north side, Grant made a change of base. He threw his army across the James River. Lee then fell back within the intrenchments of Richmond and Petersburg.

745. The series of battles from the Rapidan to the James is called the **Overland Campaign**. It lasted six weeks, from the beginning of May to the middle of June. It cost the Union army sixty thousand men. The Confederate loss was less than one third that number. The end of the campaign was that the Union army was brought up against the strong works of Petersburg and Richmond.

746. At the same time that the main Virginia army moved against Lee, in May, two coöperative movements were begun. A column under **General Sigel**, afterwards under **General Hunter**, marched down the Shenandoah Valley. It met a Confederate force and was defeated. Hunter marched against **Lynchburg**, Virginia, but it was too strong to be taken; so Hunter retreated into the mountains of West Virginia.

747. The second coöperative column was under **General B. F. Butler**. While Grant was attacking Lee at Spottsylvania, Butler's column was taken up the James River in transports and landed at **City Point** and **Bermuda Hundred**. His object was to capture Petersburg, but this purpose was foiled. When the Army of the Potomac had fought its way to the Chickahominy, most of the "Army of the James," as Butler's force was called, joined it at Cold Harbor.

748. The Union commander by swinging across the James hoped to capture **Petersburg** before it was strongly fortified. An immediate assault was made on getting up in front of that place, June 18. It was repulsed, as were also several other attacks, made during the next few days.

749. General Grant now saw that the Confederates would have to be worn out. He therefore sat down to a long siege. Lee occupied an extended line of about thirty miles, running from southwest of Petersburg to northeast of Richmond. The Union army built an elaborate system of works and entered on the operations of the siege.

750. During the **siege of Petersburg and Richmond**, which lasted from June, 1864, to April, 1865, a great number of actions and several important battles took place. Sometimes one side was successful, sometimes the other; but there was no grand decisive combat.

An operation from which a great deal was expected was the exploding of a tremendous **mine** of powder, which had been run under one of the Confederate forts before Petersburg. The mine was fired July 30, and carried the earthwork into the air. A storming column then advanced to press through to Petersburg, but the troops were repulsed with great loss.

751. Siege of Washington.—In July, Lee, having stopped Grant before his lines, and the Shenandoah column of Hunter having been driven into West Virginia, sent a column northward under General Early to threaten and, if possible, capture **Washington**.

Early crossed the Potomac into Maryland, where he defeated a force of Union militia, under General Lew Wallace, at **Monocacy**, July 9, and then advanced to the works around Washington.

Finding the Washington works stronger than had been expected, Early returned to Virginia. He took with him great booty from Maryland and Pennsylvania, and burned the town of **Chambersburg**, Pennsylvania, July 30.

752. Sheridan's Valley Campaign.—A force under General Wright, detached by Grant from the Army of the Potomac, and sent to protect Washington, followed Early's army into the Shenandoah Valley. It took position a little south of Harpers Ferry.

To command this valley army Grant sent General Sheridan. He began an active campaign against Early in the month of September. The battle of **Winchester**, Virginia, took place September 19. The Confederates were defeated and retired southward.

753. Sheridan advanced and took position at **Cedar Creek**, Virginia. Here Sheridan's army (he being absent) was attacked by Early, October 19, and routed. After retreating some

miles, a stand was made, Sheridan arrived, and late in the day the Union army, in turn, routed the Confederates, who were now too feeble to again assume the offensive. Grant ordered Sheridan to lay waste the fertile Shenandoah Valley, so that the Confederate army should have nothing to live on.



GENERAL SHERIDAN

754. Operations in the West. — When Grant, in May, started on the march from the Rapidan to Richmond,

Sherman, commanding the western Union army, advanced from Chattanooga to march on **Atlanta**, Georgia. The Confederate army of the West was now under General J. E. Johnston, whose army lay at **Dalton**.

Sherman began the advance, May 6. Instead of attacking his opponent, Sherman made a series of **flank movements**. The result was that Johnston was obliged to evacuate position after position, till finally he crossed the **Chattahoochee** and retired within the works of Atlanta about the middle of July.

755. During this march, several important actions took place. The most notable were **Resaca** (May 14 and 15), **Dallas** (May 25-28), and **Kenesaw Mountain** (June 22 to July 3), in Georgia.

756. The Confederate authorities were dissatisfied with Johnston's retreating policy, and superseded that officer by **General Hood**.

757. While Sherman was preparing to attack Atlanta, Hood made three furious **assaults** on the Union army, July 20, 22, and 28. These were not successful, for Sherman swung round, got between Hood and Atlanta, and occupied that city, September 2.

758. Hood now adopted a bold plan. He moved back over the route over which Sherman had advanced, and, by seizing Sherman's line of supplies, compelled the army to fall back. The plan, however, did not succeed; for Sherman, after following Hood some distance, sent **General George H. Thomas**, with a large force, to oppose Hood, while he himself returned to Atlanta and prepared to start on his march southward to the sea. There were thus carried on at the same time two campaigns,—Hood's campaign against Thomas, and Sherman's march through Georgia.



GENERAL SHERMAN

759. **Hood's Campaign.**—The immediate object of Hood was the capture of **Nashville**, Tennessee. Here Thomas concentrated his forces.

While Hood was marching upon Nashville, and one of the Union columns, under **General Schofield**, was falling back on the same place, an encounter took place at **Franklin**, Tennessee, November 30. Here Hood met a severe repulse, in which he lost many officers.

The Confederates now advanced and laid siege to **Nashville**. After a fortnight of preparation, the Confederates were suddenly attacked by Thomas, December 15, and severely handled. The action was renewed the next day, when Thomas won a

victory. Hood had to retreat, and, being pursued by Thomas, his army suffered so terribly that it was never good for much after this.

760. Sherman's March. — While Hood was making his disastrous campaign against Thomas, Sherman, cutting his communications with the North and burning Atlanta, set off on his **march through Georgia**. His object was, by moving through the interior of the Confederacy and destroying all supplies, to deprive the Confederates of the means of sustaining their armies.

Sherman started from Atlanta in the middle of November. He cut a wide swath of desolation through the South. The Confederates had no army to offer any serious resistance. Thus in less than a month Sherman reached the sea, near Savannah. The only obstacle, **Fort McAllister**, Georgia, was taken by assault. This done, the Union army was put in communication with the Union fleet off the coast. Fort McAllister was taken December 13; **Savannah**, December 21. This ended Sherman's campaign of 1864.

761. Other Operations. — We have seen the history of the two main campaigns of 1864. But there were several other operations during this year not directly connected with the great armies. These were: —

First, The Union General Seymour made an expedition from Port Royal, South Carolina, to Florida. In an engagement at **Oulustee**, Florida, February 20, he was defeated.

Second, In February, General Sherman, before he went to Chattanooga, made an expedition from Vicksburg to destroy the railroads in **northern Mississippi**. This was only in part successful. The Confederate **General Forrest** defeated Sherman's cavalry column, and then entered on a raid into Tennessee. He attacked and captured **Fort Pillow**, which had a garrison mostly composed of negro troops. A number of them were massacred.

Third, General Banks, in March, led an expedition from New Orleans into the **Red River Country**, Louisiana. He was aided by a fleet, under Admiral Porter. Two actions were fought: the first, **Sabine Cross Roads**, April 8, being a Confederate victory; and the second, **Pleasant Hill**, indecisive. The expedition was given up.

762. Naval Operations. — In July, 1864, an expedition, consisting of a powerful fleet, under **Admiral Farragut**, and a land force, under **General Granger**, was sent against **Mobile**. The harbor of Mobile was defended by **Forts Morgan** and **Gaines**, and by a Confederate fleet.

Farragut succeeded in running the gauntlet of the forts with the loss of but one vessel. He engaged the Confederate iron-clad, the *Tennessee*, which was disabled and captured. The land and naval force afterwards took the forts, and thus got possession of Mobile Bay. The city, however, did not surrender till the spring of 1865.

763. A similar coast expedition was made against the Confederate stronghold of **Fort Fisher**, North Carolina, which commanded the entrance to the port of Wilmington. Admiral Porter with a fleet, and a land force under General Butler, attacked the fort in December. The bombardment did not accomplish anything, and an assault by the land force was repulsed. The expedition then returned to Fortress Monroe. The following month General Terry assaulted Fort Fisher, and captured it January 15.

764. Immense loss was caused to American commerce during this year by certain Confederate cruisers, built in England. The most destructive of these vessels was the *Alabama*, commanded by Captain Semmes. The career of this famous ship was, however, terminated in a naval battle, fought off the harbor of Cherbourg, France. The United States vessel *Kearsarge*, Captain Winslow, attacked and sank the *Alabama* in June.

765. Another interesting naval operation was the destruction of the Confederate iron-clad *Albemarle*, at Plymouth, North Carolina. This was accomplished by Lieutenant Cushing, who fastened a torpedo to the *Albemarle*, which exploded and sank her.

766. In the fall of 1864, **Abraham Lincoln** was reelected President, and Andrew Johnson was elected Vice President. The candidate of the Democrats was **General George B. McClellan**.

THE FINAL CAMPAIGN

767. The military situation at the opening of 1865 was such that it was believed the war could be ended in one campaign in the spring. Sherman had almost destroyed the Western army of the Confederates, and had done immense havoc. The only formidable army consisted of Lee's veterans, still lying behind the earthen parapets around Petersburg and Richmond. But even this army was reduced to less than forty thousand men, and the South was exhausted, whereas Grant's army was a hundred thousand strong.

768. Sherman's Operations. — The campaign of 1865 was begun by Sherman. Turning northward from Savannah, February 1, Sherman found nothing to oppose his march to join Grant, save a small Confederate force which General J. E. Johnston had hastily gathered.

The first point to which Sherman marched was **Columbia**, South Carolina. This he captured with little difficulty, and burned, February 17. This move compelled the Confederates to **evacuate Charleston**, February 18.

769. From Columbia, Sherman advanced on **Fayetteville**, North Carolina. Near **Averysboro** he defeated a Confederate force, and at **Bentonville** he fought a successful battle against Johnston. On the 23d of March, Sherman's army entered

Goldsboro, where he was joined by forces under Generals Schofield and Terry. Johnston thereupon withdrew his army to **Raleigh**.

In the meantime, General Thomas sent a cavalry column under General Wilson, who rode through Alabama, capturing towns and destroying railroads.

770. Operations in Virginia. — We have seen that the great army under Grant, in the summer of 1864, was engaged in the siege of Petersburg and Richmond. During the autumn and winter, a number of engagements were fought between the two armies. The most important of these were fought to the south and west of Petersburg. The object of these movements was to work round on the Confederate right flank and seize the **South Side Railroad**. They were not successful in the main design.

771. The spring campaign of 1865 in Virginia was opened by Sheridan. With a strong cavalry column he rode through the **Shenandoah Valley**, capturing most of the remnants of Early's force. At the same time Stoneman made a raid in southwestern Virginia.

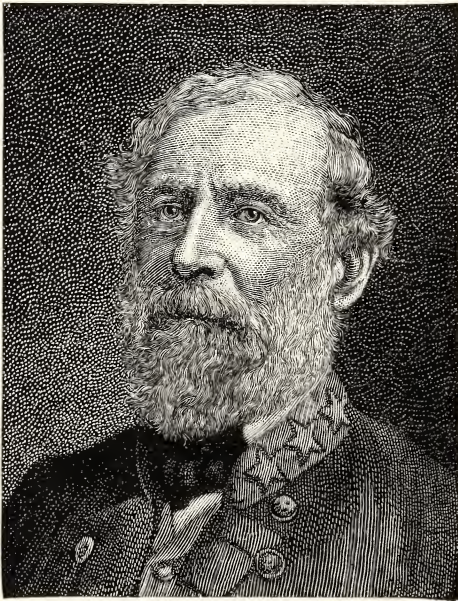
Sheridan swept down to the James River, where he destroyed the canal and tore up the railroads, and joined the Army of the Potomac near Petersburg, March 26.

Lee's situation was now almost hopeless. He was surrounded by overwhelming numbers. Lee, however, did not give up. On the contrary, he planned an assault on the Union lines. This assault was made March 25, and resulted in the capture of **Fort Steadman**, Virginia; but the Confederates were soon driven out.

772. Grant opened the final campaign by sending a force, under Generals Sheridan and Warren, to assail the right flank of the Confederates. The result was the battle of **Five Forks**, Virginia, April 1. The Confederate force was defeated.

773. An attack was then made along the whole line of works in front of **Petersburg**, Virginia, April 2. The line was carried at several points. During the night, Lee abandoned **Petersburg** and **Richmond**, which were entered by the Union army, April 3.

774. Lee with his diminished army retreated westward. His hope was to join Johnston in North Carolina. A hot pursuit was immediately begun by the forces of Grant. Several partial engagements were fought during the long chase. At last the Confederate army was completely surrounded at **Appomattox Court-House**, Virginia. Here Lee surrendered, April 9.



GENERAL ROBERT E. LEE

775. Sherman had engaged Johnston at **Raleigh**, which city he entered, April 13. At this time General Johnston heard of Lee's surrender. As he knew that further resistance was now hopeless, he

opened a correspondence with Sherman, and the result was the surrender of Johnston's army, April 26. By the end of May, all the Confederate forces had surrendered, and **the Civil War** was at an end.

776. The tidings of Lee's surrender caused the greatest joy throughout the North; but in the midst of the rejoicings a terrible event happened. **President Lincoln** was assassinated in the theater at Washington on the evening of April 14. The

man who did the deed was a desperate and probably an insane man named John Wilkes Booth. Mr. Lincoln died the next morning. Booth fled into Maryland, but was overtaken and shot by one of his pursuers.

On the same night on which Mr. Lincoln was shot, **Secretary Seward** was stabbed while lying ill in bed in Washington.

Some time after the surrender of the Confederate armies, **Jefferson Davis** was captured in Georgia. He was carried to Fortress Monroe, where he was kept a prisoner for a long time; but he was finally liberated.

777. At the end of May a two days' review of the armies of Sherman and Grant was held at Washington. These armies numbered about two hundred thousand men. The disbanding of the armies then began, and one million men retired from the camp and bivouac to the pursuits of peaceful life.

778. During Lincoln's administration two new states were admitted into the Union,—West Virginia formed from a division of Virginia in 1863, and Nevada in 1864.



TOPICAL REVIEW

I. OF THE CAMPAIGNS

I. The principal events of the campaign of **1861** were:—

In the East:—

Fort Sumter, S.C., surrendered April 13.

McClellan's successful **West Virginia campaign** in June and July.

Repulse of the Union army at **Big Bethel**, Va., in June.

Battle of **Bull Run**, Va., Confederate victory, July 21.

Battle of **Balls Bluff**, Va., Confederate victory, October 21.

In the West:—

Action at **Carthage**, Mo., Confederate victory, July 5.

Action at **Wilson's Creek**, Mo., Confederate victory, August 10.

Action at **Belmont**, Mo., Confederate victory, November 7.

II. The principal events of the campaigns of 1862 were:—

In the West:—

Capture of **Fort Henry**, Tenn., Union victory, February 6.

Capture of **Fort Donelson**, Tenn., Union victory, February 16.

Occupation of **Nashville**, Tenn., by Buell, Union victory, February 23.

Occupation of **Columbus**, Ky., by the Union fleet, March 22.

Battle of **Shiloh**, Tenn., April 6 and 7; first day, Confederate victory; second day, Union victory.

Capture of **Island No. 10**, in the Mississippi, Union victory, April 7.

Capture of **Corinth**, Miss., Union victory, May 30.

Capture of **Memphis**, Tenn., Union victory, June 6.

Bragg's **invasion of Kentucky**, August and September; Confederate success.

Retreat of the Confederates, and battle of **Perryville**, Ky., Union success, October 8.

Battle of **Murfreesboro**, Tenn., December 31, 1862, and January 2, 1863; indecisive at first, but field held by the Union army.

Attacks on **Corinth**, Miss., and **Iuka**, Miss., in September 19 and October 4; Union successes.

Battle of **Pea Ridge**, Ark., March 7, 8; Union victory.

In the East:—

Movement of the Army of the Potomac to the **Peninsula** in April.

Capture of **Yorktown**, Va., Union victory, May 4.

Action at **Williamsburg**, Va., Union victory, May 5.

Battle of **Fair Oaks**, Va., May 31 and June 1; indecisive.

Jackson's raid, causing the retreat of Fremont, Banks, and McDowell, latter part of May and early part of June; Confederate success.

Battle of **Gaines Mill**, Va., Confederate victory, June 27.

The **seven days' retreat**, ending with **Malvern Hill**, Va., July 1; Confederate success, but Confederate check at Malvern.

Lee's **invasion of the North**, overwhelms Pope latter part of August and first part of September. Confederate success.

Action at **South Mountain**, Md., Union victory, September 14.

Surrender of **Harpers Ferry**, W.Va., Confederate victory, September 15.

Battle of **Antietam**, Md., Union victory, September 17.

Battle of **Fredericksburg**, Va., Confederate victory, December 13.

Capture of **New Orleans**, La., Union victory, April 24; surrender of the city, April 28.

III. The principal events of the campaigns of 1863 were:—

In the East:—

Battle of **Chancellorsville**, Va., May 2 and 3; Confederate victory.

Lee's **invasion of Pennsylvania**, in June.

Battle of **Gettysburg**, Pa., July 1, 2, and 3; Union victory.

In the West:—

Siege of **Vicksburg**, Miss., and surrender, July 4; Union victory.

Surrender of **Port Hudson**, La., July 9; Union victory. These operations resulted in the opening of the Mississippi.

Rosecrans's advance movement through **Tennessee**, June, July, and August; Union victory.

Battle of **Chickamauga**, Ga., September 19, 20; Confederate victory.

Siege of Chattanooga, Tenn., raised by battle of **Missionary Ridge**, Tenn., November 23, 24, and 25; Union victory.

Operations in **East Tennessee**, in November; Union victory.

Naval attack on **Fort Sumter**, S.C., by Dupont, in April; Confederate victory.

IV. The principal events of the campaigns of 1864 were:—

In the East:—

Grant's **overland campaign**, begun in May; marked by battles of **Wilderness**, Va., **Spottsylvania**, Va., **North Anna River**, Va., and **Cold Harbor**, Va.; indecisive. On the one hand, terrible destruction in the Union army; on the other, Lee compelled to retreat to Petersburg and Richmond.

Attack on **Petersburg**, Va., June 18; Confederate victory.

Operations by **Sigel's** (afterward's Hunter's) column in the Shenandoah Valley, in May and June; Confederate victory.

Butler's advance against Petersburg, Va., in May; Confederate victory.

The **mine affair** before Petersburg, Va., July 30; Confederate victory.

Siege of **Washington**, D.C., in July, Union victory; but battle of **Monocacy**, Md., Confederate victory.

Sheridan's **Valley campaign** in September; battle of **Winchester**, Va., September 19; Union victory.

Battle of **Cedar Creek**, Va., October 19, at first, Confederate victory; afterwards, Union victory.

In the West:—

Sherman's campaign from Chattanooga, Tenn., began May 6.

Retreat of Johnston, accompanied by the battles of **Resaca**, Ga., **Dallas**, Ga., and **Kenesaw Mountain**, Ga., in May and June.

Hood's attacks on Sherman's army in front of **Atlanta**, Ga., in the latter part of July; Union successes.

Hood's **northward movement** in August.

Sherman occupied **Atlanta**, Ga., September 2.

Battle of **Franklin**, Tenn., November 30; Union victory.

Battle of **Nashville**, Tenn., December 15, 16; Union victory.

Sherman's **march to the sea** in November.

Capture of **Fort McAllister**, Ga., December 13.

Capture of **Savannah**, Ga., December 21.

V. The principal events of the final campaigns (1865) were:—

In the South:—

Sherman's **northward march** from Savannah, begun Feb. 1.

Columbia, S.C., taken, February 17.

Charleston, S.C., falls, February 18.

Union successes at **Averysboro**, N.C., and **Bentonville**, N.C. March 15, 18.

Arrival of Sherman's army at **Goldsboro**, N.C., March 23.

In the East:—

Sheridan moves down the **Shenandoah Valley** and joins Grant, March 26.

Lee's attack on **Fort Steadman**, Va., March 25; Union victory.

Battle of **Five Forks**, Va., April 1; Union victory.

Attack on the works of **Petersburg**, Va., April 2; Union victory.

Capture of **Petersburg**, Va., and **Richmond**, Va., April 3.

Confederate retreat to **Appomattox Court-House**, Va. Surrender of Lee's army, April 9.

Surrender of Johnston's army, April 26.

II. OF GENERAL FACTS OF THE STRUGGLE

I. There were various calls made for troops during the war. The total number called for was **2,942,748**. The total number of troops obtained was **2,656,553**. Of these about **1,490,000** were in actual service. The term of service varied: some were called for three months, some for six months, others for one, two, and three years.

About 208 war vessels were constructed during the four years, and 118 vessels were purchased and converted into war ships. The total cost of these vessels amounted to \$19,000,000.

II. The war was carried on by means of paper money called **greenbacks**. These were first issued in 1862. At this time all the banks of the United States had suspended specie payments. As the war went on, gold began to command a premium; that is, greenbacks began to depreciate. In 1864, gold rose as high as 280.

III. The expenditures of the government were enormous. In 1864 and 1865, they amounted to over three and a half millions of dollars *per day*. The expenditures of the government during the last year of the war were more than the whole expenditures of the government from the inauguration of Washington to the inauguration of Buchanan. The national **debt** at the end of the war was over **\$ 2,749,000,000**, and most of it bore interest at the rate of from 5 to 7½%. More than half of this vast indebtedness has already been paid and the credit of the government has become so firmly established that the rate of interest on nearly the entire national debt is at 3% and less at the present time.

IV. The Confederates also carried on the war by means of paper money. About the middle of the war this money began to depreciate very much. Before the close of the contest, Confederate notes had become nearly worthless.

V. For the relief of the sick and wounded soldiers, charitable organizations were established. The **Sanitary Commission** and the **Christian Commission** did their work of benevolence on a very large scale. The people contributed millions of dollars to their support.

VI. On the Union side, it is estimated that three hundred thousand were either killed in battle or died from disease in the field. About the same number of Confederate soldiers lost their lives. About four hundred thousand more soldiers, including both armies, were crippled or disabled for life.

ADMINISTRATIONS SINCE THE WAR

JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1865-69

· 779. The death of Lincoln made Vice President **Andrew Johnson**, of Tennessee, the *seventeenth* President of the United States. He was inaugurated the day of Lincoln's death, April 15, 1865.



ANDREW JOHNSON

780. As already related, the Civil War was brought to a conclusion in the early days of President Johnson's administration. The most important matter now pressed on the attention of the government was the adaptation of things to a state of peace. The question first in importance was the **reconstruction** of the Southern States, — on

what terms should the seceded states be restored to their former relations to the Union.

781. **Important Facts.** — President Johnson, in May, 1865, issued a **Proclamation of Amnesty** to all persons who had been engaged in the War of Secession, except to certain specified classes. For the late Confederate States he appointed "provisional governors," who were ordered to call conventions of the people of the Southern States to reëstablish the relations of those states with the Federal government. The states were required to rescind their ordinances of secession, declare void all debts contracted in support of the War of Secession, and vote to adopt an amendment to the Constitution proposed by Congress, abolishing slavery.

These requirements were complied with by the Southern States. The amendment to the Constitution abolishing slavery,

called the **Thirteenth Amendment**, was, on the 18th of December, 1865, announced by Secretary Seward as having been duly ratified by the legislatures of twenty-seven states. It therefore became a part of the Constitution.

782. But it was soon manifest that there was a disagreement between Congress and the President on the subject of reconstruction. Congress was not willing that the seceded states should come back to the Union on these terms. Congress required that the freedmen (the blacks who had been slaves) should have certain **civil rights** conceded to them, and it required that certain other conditions, all of which were embodied in the **Fourteenth Amendment**, should be complied with.

President Johnson opposed these requirements, and insisted that the Southern States should be admitted into the Union on what they had already done. The conditions imposed by Congress were very distasteful to the people of the South, who thought, with President Johnson, that they should be restored to their place in the Union without further stipulations.

The disagreement between Congress and the President became very bitter, and lasted till 1867, when **the policy of Congress prevailed**. During all this time the Southern States were ruled by provisional governors.

783. The war left a **public debt** amounting, in June, 1865, to about \$ 2,700,000,000. The interest on this amounted to over \$ 130,000,000 a year, most of it payable in gold. It was necessary to devise means to meet this yearly interest, and also to meet the regular expenses of the government.

A system of **revenue** was devised which, by means of duties on imported articles, and by taxes on manufactures, incomes, etc., enabled the treasury to meet all demands. The Secretary of the Treasury under President Johnson was Hugh McCulloch. He adopted a plan of "contraction" which in three years extinguished many millions of the public debt. Congress, to strengthen the confidence of holders of **government bonds** in

the good faith of the United States, passed a resolution in December, 1865, declaring that "the public debt must and ought to be paid, principal and interest."

784. The relations of the United States with **France** in regard to Mexico formed another important question in Johnson's administration. During our war, Napoleon sent an army which defeated the Mexican Republicans in 1863. He made the **Archduke Maximilian** "Emperor" of Mexico. The United States, having its hands full during the war, could do nothing. But at the close of the war, Secretary Seward demanded of Napoleon that the French troops should be withdrawn from Mexico. He found it best to do this. The Mexicans then rose against Maximilian and his retainers, and conquered them. The end was that Maximilian was shot in June, 1867.

785. The quarrel between the President and Congress increased in bitterness during the year 1866. In February and March, 1867, Congress passed a **reconstruction act** over the President's veto, and other acts prescribing the mode in which the Southern States might be admitted into the Union. Congress decreed that until the Southern States should comply with these terms, they must be ruled by military governors. These terms were considered very hard by the Southern people, and they complained bitterly of military rule. It was not till two or three years afterwards that the terms were accepted in all the Southern States.

786. In March, 1867, Congress passed what was called the **Tenure of Office Bill**. This bill demanded that all those civil officers whose appointment by the President required the consent of the Senate should not be removed from office without the Senate's permission. It was designed to prevent President Johnson from getting rid of officers unfavorable to his policy.

787. In the summer of that year, soon after the adjournment of Congress, the President suspended from office Mr. Stanton, Secretary of War, and appointed General Grant to assume

the duties of the office. When Congress met again, they reinstated Secretary Stanton. The President issued an order removing him; but Stanton would not yield.

788. Congress now determined to impeach President Johnson. The House of Representatives, January 24, 1868, brought in articles of **impeachment**, charging the President with violating the Tenure of Office Act and with other misdemeanors. After a long trial before the Senate, President Johnson was acquitted. It requires, by the Constitution, a two-thirds vote to convict on impeachment. One vote was lacking.

789. The year 1866 was signalized by the successful laying of an ocean telegraph cable from Ireland to Newfoundland. The success of the enterprise was due to Cyrus W. Field of New York, who labored untiringly for its achievement. Two previous attempts, made in 1858 and 1865, had proved in the end unsuccessful, but Mr. Field, notwithstanding great discouragements, persevered until he accomplished his end.

790. On the 24th of June, 1868, Arkansas, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and North and South Carolina were readmitted to the Union. During this administration one new state was also admitted to the Union, — Nebraska, in 1867.

791. By a treaty made in March, 1867, with the Russian government, the United States acquired the territory of **Alaska**. The sum of \$7,200,000 in gold was paid for it.

792. In 1868, an embassy from the Chinese Empire visited the United States, and a treaty was made promising security of life, liberty, and property to the people of either nation while in the territory of the other, and granting valuable commercial privileges.

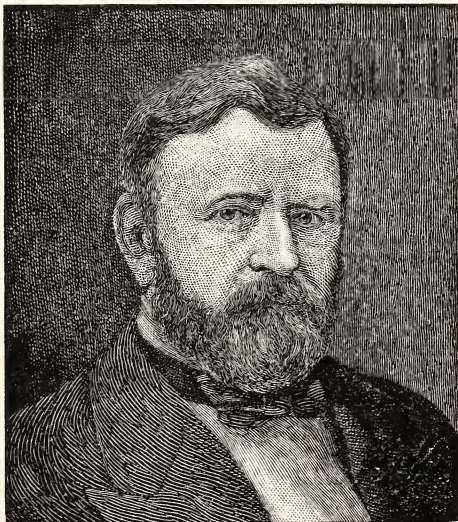
793. In the presidential campaign of 1868, the Democrats nominated for President **Horatio Seymour**, of New York. The Republicans nominated **General Grant**. Grant was elected, with Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana, as Vice President.

GRANT'S ADMINISTRATION, 1869-1877

794. The *eighteenth* President of the United States was U. S. Grant, inaugurated March 4, 1869.

795. Meaning of the Election.—As General Grant was in harmony with the Republican party, the contest between the two branches of the government was at an end, and both North and South looked forward to a better state of things.

796. Important Facts.—In February, 1869, a month before President Grant's inauguration, Congress agreed to recommend to the legislatures of the different states what is called the **Fifteenth Amendment**. Its design was to give the negroes suffrage, and provided that "the right of the citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or any state on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude."



ULYSSES S. GRANT

797. In 1870, three fourths of the states had agreed to the Fifteenth Amendment, and

it was declared to be part of the Constitution, March 30.

798. During the first year of Grant's administration the last of the seceded states were restored to the Union. The suffering South began to recover from the wounds of the war. It was blessed with good crops; and with material prosperity a much better feeling arose.

799. The **Ninth Census** of the United States, taken in 1870, showed a population of thirty-eight and a half millions.

800. In February, 1871, a **joint High Commission** of ten members, consisting of distinguished British and American statesmen, assembled at Washington to adjust the claims growing out of the depredations upon our commerce during the War of Secession, by Confederate cruisers built in English shipyards. The result was an amicable settlement, known as the **treaty of Washington**.

Under this treaty the questions in dispute were referred to a **Board of Arbitration** appointed by the friendly Powers. This board convened at Geneva, Switzerland, in 1872, and awarded to the United States as damages from England the sum of fifteen and a half million dollars.

801. The burning of the city of Chicago took place in the autumn of 1871. The area of the conflagration extended over two thousand acres. Many lives were lost; and much valuable property was destroyed.¹

802. In the presidential election of 1872, **General Grant** was again elected President by the Republican party. Henry Wilson, of Massachusetts, was chosen Vice President.

803. Meaning of the Election. — The issues of the campaign were largely based upon the Republican plan for the reconstruction of the Southern States, which comprised, among other measures, the elevation of the negro race to the rights of citizenship.

804. The **Modoc War** occurred in the spring and winter of 1873. Its cause was the removal, against their will, of the Modoc Indians from their lands in Oregon to a new reservation. After an heroic resistance the Indians were finally surrounded. A conference was held between them and a government Peace

¹ In 1872, another great conflagration took place in the city of **Boston**, destroying property estimated at the value of seventy-five million dollars.

Commission. While it was in progress the savages treacherously murdered General Canby and another member of the Commission. The Modocs were then besieged, and surrendered after a brief struggle. Their chief, Captain Jack, and the other leaders of the band, were tried by court-martial and executed in October, 1873.

805. One of the most disastrous **financial panics** ever known in the history of the country took place in the fall of 1873. It caused wide-spread failure and stagnation among manufacturing and mercantile enterprises, and its effects were grievously felt by all classes of people.

806. The celebration of the **first hundred years** of the independence of our country assumed a national character in the great **International Exposition** opened at Philadelphia, May 10, 1876, and continuing until November following. Buildings of the most elaborate character were erected, and the products of all nations were exhibited in great variety and profusion.

807. The year 1876 was noted also for another **Indian War**. The Sioux tribe had for years refused to adhere to the terms of their treaties, and persisted in leaving their reservations, in destroying property, and in murdering defenseless persons.

The government made war upon them, one of the tragical results of which was the massacre, June 25, 1876, in the Big Horn Mountains, on the Upper Yellowstone River, of General Custer and his entire command of over two hundred and fifty soldiers. The war continued during the summer and fall, when the remaining bands of the Indians, under the chiefs Sitting Bull and Crazy Horse, retreated across the frontier to Canada.

808. The people of **Colorado** ratified their constitution, July 1, 1876, and immediately afterwards the President of the United States issued his proclamation declaring that territory a state.

HAYES'S ADMINISTRATION, 1877-1881

809. The *nineteenth* President of the United States was **Rutherford B. Hayes**, of Ohio, inaugurated March 5, 1877. William A. Wheeler, of New York, had been chosen Vice President.

810. Meaning of the Election. — The election of President Hayes was a triumph of the Republican party.

811. Important Facts. — Both the Republican and Democratic parties claimed to have elected their candidates. Owing, however, to irregularities in the elections in South Carolina, Florida, Louisiana, and Oregon, Congress, for the first time since the foundation of the Republic, could not declare a result.

812. An adjustment of the question was reached through a High Court known as the Electoral Commission. This was appointed by Congress, and consisted of five members from the United States Senate, five from the United States House of Representatives, and five from the United States Supreme Court.



RUTHERFORD B. HAYES

813. In his inaugural address, President Hayes foreshadowed a policy of reconciliation towards the Southern States, and took strong grounds in favor of Civil Service reform.

814. Southern Policy. — Early in this administration, President Hayes's policy of conciliation was carried into effect by the withdrawal of the United States troops, which had been employed in Louisiana and South Carolina to uphold the Republican state governments.

815. In the summer of 1877, the country was disturbed by a great **railroad strike**. At various points the strike took the form of riots, to suppress which the militia and regular troops were called out; and at Pittsburg, Pennsylvania, more than one hundred lives were lost before the disturbance was quelled.

During the summer of 1878, an epidemic of **yellow fever** of great malignity visited a portion of the Southern States. This visitation called out the sympathy of the whole American people, and from all parts of the country supplies and medicines were forwarded to the afflicted districts, and heroic bands of nurses and physicians volunteered their services.

816. Foreign Affairs. — The most important foreign relations during this administration were with Great Britain and China.

The rights of citizens of the United States to fish off the coast of the maritime provinces of British America having given rise to disputes, a **commission was appointed**, in accordance with the provisions of the treaty of Washington, to adjudicate the matter. The commissioners sat at Halifax in the summer of 1878, and decided that the United States should pay to Great Britain the sum of \$ 5,500,000 for the fisheries privilege during twelve years.

With China our negotiations had relation to commerce and **Chinese immigration** to the United States, and resulted in two treaties satisfactory to both nations.

817. Financial Affairs. — Soon after the commencement of the war of secession, the government and the banks, in consequence of the demand for vast sums of money in the prosecution of the war, were forced to suspend specie payments (that is, to cease paying in gold and silver), and to substitute therefor **paper money**. The result of this measure was that gold sold at a premium, which went on increasing till, in July, 1864, one dollar in gold was worth \$ 2.85 in currency. As the financial condition of the government steadily improved, this premium

gradually declined, till gold reached par, and specie payments were resumed, January, 1879.

818. The **Tenth Census** of the United States was completed in 1880 ; it showed a population of over fifty millions (50,152,866), being an increase of over eleven millions in ten years.

819. Presidential Canvass. — In the summer of 1880, nominations were made of presidential candidates. The Republicans nominated General J. A. Garfield, of Ohio, for President, and Chester A. Arthur, of New York, for Vice President. The Democrats nominated General Winfield S. Hancock, of Pennsylvania, for President, and William H. English, of Indiana, for Vice President.

The canvass was conducted on both sides with great energy and ardor, and resulted in favor of the Republican candidates.

GARFIELD AND ARTHUR'S ADMINISTRATION, 1881-1885

820. The *twentieth* President of the United States was **James A. Garfield**, of Ohio, inaugurated March 4, 1881. By his wise and prudent conduct President Garfield speedily won the confidence and respect of the people of all parties and sections.

821. Death by Assassination. — All the high hopes bound up in the new President were doomed to disappointment by his assassination four months after his inauguration. While in the railroad depot in Washington (July 2, 1881), President Garfield was shot by an assassin, who was probably insane.



JAMES A. GARFIELD

The wound was not immediately fatal, but after lingering for nearly eighty days on a bed of sickness, watched by the sympathy of the whole civilized world, the President died, September 19. His death was widely deplored, and he was buried with imposing ceremonies at Cleveland, Ohio.

The stability of American institutions and the law-abiding character of the American people were shown by the peaceful passage of the executive power into the hands of his constitutional successor.



CHESTER A. ARTHUR

822. Chester A. Arthur the *twenty-first* President took the oath of office a few hours after the death of President Garfield, and at once issued an address to the people, in which he declared his purpose of acting in the spirit and carrying out the policy of his predecessor.

823. The position of a Vice President called by an emergency to assume the duties of the chief magistrate of the Republic is always a trying one. In this difficult situation President Arthur managed wisely and well, and by a judicious exercise of the executive functions, won the respect of his countrymen.

824. State of the Country. — Arthur's administration was not marked by any great measures of foreign or domestic policy. Our country remained at peace with all the world, while the marvelous progress of the United States suffered no interruption. It is to be noted, however, that this was a period of depression in trade and industry, and among all classes the complaint of "hard times" was often heard.

825. Centennial Celebrations. — During this presidency there occurred various interesting centennial celebrations in com-

memoration of the hundredth anniversary of important events in our Revolutionary history.

One of these was the celebration (October 19, 1881) of the centennial of the surrender of Lord Cornwallis and the British army at Yorktown, Virginia — the crowning victory of the Revolution. The last centennial took place in New York City, November 26, 1883, in commemoration of the evacuation of that city by the British army, which had held it during nearly the entire period of the war.

826. Illustrious Dead. — Two distinguished men died during this period — Henry Wadsworth Longfellow (March, 1882), the sweetest singer in the choir of American poets, and Ralph Waldo Emerson (April, 1882), whose philosophic writings have for two generations had an extensive influence.

827. The presidential campaign was conducted with great ardor during the summer of 1884. The Republican candidates were James G. Blaine for President and John A. Logan for Vice President. The Democratic candidates were Grover Cleveland for President and Thomas A. Hendricks for Vice President. Besides these, Benjamin F. Butler was candidate of the Greenback or People's Party and John P. St. John of the Prohibition Party. In the election which took place in the following November, Cleveland and Hendricks received a majority of the electoral votes.

CLEVELAND'S FIRST ADMINISTRATION, 1885-1889

828. The *twenty-second* President of the United States was Grover Cleveland, inaugurated March 4, 1885.

829. Meaning of the Election. — This election was a triumph for the Democratic party. During the twenty-four years between the inauguration of Abraham Lincoln, in 1861, and the inauguration of Grover Cleveland, in 1885, an unbroken line

of Republican presidents filled the chair of the National Executive. The accession of a Democratic administration was, therefore, a memorable event.



GROVER CLEVELAND

830. Labor troubles were numerous during this administration. In the fall of 1885, Chinese laborers were attacked and some were killed by white laborers in Wyoming, Washington, and Oregon. Troops were called out to quell the disturbance. In May, 1886, while the police were trying to preserve order at a gathering of discontented laborers in the streets of Chicago, some anarchists in the crowd threw dynamite bombs, which killed several of the officers and wounded many people. During the same year, serious strikes occurred in several of the trades in New York City, while in the Southwest a strike of the employees of the Missouri Pacific Railway paralyzed the traffic in that section for several weeks.

831. Notable Deaths. — In November, 1885, the Vice President, Thomas A. Hendricks, died at his home in Indianapolis, Indiana. During this administration the country also lost by death two Ex-Presidents, General Grant and Chester A. Arthur, and also a number of eminent men who had been candidates for the offices of President and Vice President; General George B. McClellan, Horatio Seymour, Samuel J. Tilden, W. S. Hancock, Charles F. Adams, and John A. Logan.

832. The first administration of Cleveland was notable for drawing the lines on which party contests were to be made for a number of years thereafter. The president in his messages to Congress advocated important changes in the tariff laws, and the result was a prolonged discussion in Congress

and during the ensuing political campaigns. A tariff bill called after the author, the "**Mills Bill**," and embodying the President's views, was presented to Congress, but failed to pass both houses. Its effect, however, was to fix the issues of the two succeeding presidential campaigns, and to make Cleveland the candidate of his party in both.

833. Foreign Relations. — Important treaties with Great Britain were under consideration during this administration regarding fisheries both on the Atlantic and Pacific coasts. A treaty for the government of Samoa under joint protectorate of the United States, Great Britain, and Germany was concluded; and by order of the president a force of marines was sent to the Isthmus of Panama to protect American interests at that point.

834. Important Laws. — Soon after the death of Vice President Hendricks, Congress passed a law fixing the succession of the presidency among the Cabinet officers, in case of the death of the President and Vice President. Another important law provided for the counting of presidential votes by Congress, and for the settlement of contests in case disputed returns are made by any state. Congress passed a bill creating an Inter-state Commerce Commission to regulate commerce between the states; a new department of the government was established called the department of Agriculture; and an enabling act was passed providing for the admission into the Union of South Dakota, North Dakota, Montana, and Washington.

835. Presidential Canvass. — In the campaign of 1888, the Republican candidates were Benjamin Harrison for President and Levi P. Morton for Vice President; the Democratic candidates were Grover Cleveland and Allen G. Thurman; Clinton B. Fisk was the candidate for the Prohibition Party, and Anson J. Streeter for the Union Labor Party. In the November elections, 1888, the victory went to the Republican candidates, Benjamin Harrison and Levi P. Morton.

HARRISON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1889-1893

836. The *twenty-third* President, **Benjamin Harrison**, was the grandson of the ninth President, and was inaugurated March 4, 1889.

837. Meaning of the Election. — The election of Harrison was a triumph of the Republicans, who desired a protective tariff system and reciprocity.



BENJAMIN HARRISON

838. Important Facts. — One of the first acts of the new President was to throw open to public settlement a fertile region in the heart of Indian Territory, the Indian title to which had been secured by the United States. Thousands of settlers who had been encamped without the boundaries of this region in anticipation of its opening rushed into it at noon of April 22, 1889, and within a few days thirty thousand people had selected homes in **Oklahoma**. The following spring this region, with greatly enlarged boundaries, was organized into the territory of Oklahoma.

839. In 1889, the new states of **Washington, Montana, North Dakota, and South Dakota**, and in 1890, **Idaho and Wyoming**, were admitted into the Union, thus increasing the number of states to forty-four.

840. Among the **important laws** passed by Congress were new tariff laws enacted in the interest of protection and reciprocity, an international copyright law, a law greatly extending the pension list, and a law increasing the compulsory purchase of silver bullion by the government from twenty-four millions to fifty-four millions of dollars annually.

841. The Eleventh Census was taken in June, 1890. It showed the population of the country to be about sixty-three million—an increase of thirteen million in ten years. The “center of population” had moved westward to the vicinity of Greensburg, in Decatur County, Indiana.

842. Trouble with the Sioux Indians in North and South Dakota occurred late in 1890, which culminated in a battle at Wounded Knee, in the latter state in December. About two hundred Indians were killed before they could be disarmed by the United States troops.

843. Foreign Relations.—In October, 1889, upon invitation of the United States Government, an international congress met at Washington, whose object was to secure more international and commercial relations between the United States and the several countries of Central and South America. This was known as the **International American Conference**. It continued its sessions until April, 1890, and recommended various policies to advance the objects of the conference. Among these were the arbitration of differences between nations; reciprocity in trade; uniform quarantine regulations, customs administration, coinage, weights and measures. As a result of the conference and of subsequent legislation, various treaties were negotiated between the United States and some of the nations represented.

An arrangement was made with Great Britain to refer to arbitration, an international dispute respecting the right of the United States to prohibit the killing of the fur seal in the open waters of **Bering Sea**.

During the civil war in **Chile**, there were serious complications involving the interests of the United States, but these were peaceably adjusted by diplomatic means.

844. Presidential Canvass.—In November, 1892, the elections for President and Vice President took place. The candidates

were: Democrats, Grover Cleveland for President, and Adlai Stevenson for Vice President; Republicans, Benjamin Harrison for President, Whitelaw Reid for Vice President; People's Party, James B. Weaver and James G. Field; and Prohibition Party, John Bidwell and James B. Cranfill.

Cleveland was elected President. He had been nominated three times in succession.

CLEVELAND'S SECOND ADMINISTRATION, 1893-

845. The *twenty-fourth* President of the United States was Grover Cleveland, inaugurated March 4, 1893. He was the first President to serve two terms which were not in succession.

846. Meaning of the Election. — The election of President Cleveland was a triumph for the Democratic party, the main issue being the tariff. The Democrats were in favor of a modification of the recently enacted tariff laws and a reduction of duties. Cleveland received a large majority of both electoral and popular votes.

847. The President's Policy. — In his Inaugural Address the President expressed his views regarding several important public questions. He declared that nothing is more vital to our supremacy as a nation than a sound and stable currency; he advocated the extension of Civil Service Reform; he urged a humane treatment of the Indians, calculated to promote their advancement and civilization; and declared himself pledged to tariff reform and an equitable system of federal taxation.

848. Columbian Anniversaries. — On the 27th of April, 1893, there occurred a great naval review in New York harbor, under the auspices of the United States government, to which all the nations of the earth were invited to send their war-ships. The review was under the command of Admiral Gherardi of the United States Navy, and, including the United States, eleven

of the great maritime powers of the world were represented by about forty war-ships. There were also present three caravels, built by the Spanish government as nearly as possible upon the same lines as the three ships that constituted the fleet of Columbus four hundred years before, and named respectively *Pinta*, *Nina*, and *Santa Maria*.

On May 1st, 1893, the **World's Columbian Exhibition** was opened in Chicago with impressive ceremonies. This exhibition had been for several years in preparation, and the industries of the world and its progress in arts, sciences, and literature during the period since the discovery of America, were amply represented.

NOTE. — It will be observed that the next paragraph number (on page 306) is 900. The numbers between 848 and 900 have been reserved to admit of the insertion of new matter as the growth of the history may demand.

THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY AND GULF STATES

THE NORTHWESTERN STATES

900. The thirteen original states all lay along the comparatively narrow strip of territory upon the Atlantic coast. At the close of the Revolutionary War, the vast country beyond the Alleghanies and along the Gulf of Mexico, which had before been sparsely settled, became a part of the United States.

Emigrants from the old states soon began to cross the Alleghanies into the fertile domain of the West. As population increased, the region was divided into states, which, one by one, were admitted into the Union.

901. These states were admitted in the following order:—

- | | | |
|----------------|---------------------------|------------------|
| 1. Kentucky | 8. Alabama | 15. Wisconsin |
| 2. Tennessee | 9. Missouri | 16. Minnesota |
| 3. Ohio | 10. Arkansas | 17. Kansas |
| 4. Louisiana | 11. Michigan ¹ | 18. Nebraska |
| 5. Indiana | 12. Florida | 19. South Dakota |
| 6. Mississippi | 13. Texas | 20. North Dakota |
| 7. Illinois | 14. Iowa | |

902. This great group of twenty states contains the majority of the population, and covers the larger part of the territory of the United States. The history of the founding and growth of these states is of great interest and importance to all Americans.

903. We shall first take up the history of the **Northwestern States**. These states are:—

1. Ohio; 2. Indiana; 3. Illinois; 4. Michigan; 5. Iowa; 6. Wisconsin; 7. Minnesota; 8. Kansas; 9. Nebraska; 10. South Dakota; 11. North Dakota.

¹ Michigan is not, strictly speaking, one of the Mississippi Valley states, as only a few square miles on the upper peninsula are drained into the Mississippi, but it is here included among these states for convenience of classification.



MAP SHOWING
ACQUISITION AND DISTRIBUTION
OF
TERRITORY.

904. The whole valley of the Mississippi was taken possession of by the French during the seventeenth century. Father Marquette, Joliet, La Salle, and others explored from the Great Lakes, by the water-routes of the Ohio, Wabash, and Illinois Rivers, to the Mississippi. The whole country received the name of **Louisiana**. French forts, trading-posts, and missionary stations soon dotted the lines of travel from the St. Lawrence to New Orleans.

905. Around these trading-posts and missions grew up settlements. In 1682, a Jesuit mission was established at **Kaskaskia**, on the Mississippi (in the present state of Illinois). In 1712, it had become quite a village, and was regarded as the French capital of the "Illinois country." In 1700, a French settlement was made at **Detroit**. About 1750, a military post was made at **Vincennes**, on the Wabash River (in the present state of Indiana). Here, also, a settlement grew up. **Peoria**, in Illinois, is another old French settlement.

906. The **treaty of Paris**, which closed the French-and-Indian War in **1763**, ceded to England all the French territory between the Alleghanics and the Mississippi, except the island and city of New Orleans.

907. The **treaty of Paris**, which ended the Revolutionary War in 1783, transferred this extensive country to the United States. In 1803, the United States government acquired, by **purchase from France**, the domain west from the Mississippi to the Rocky Mountains. For this, France received fifteen million dollars.

908. Several of the original thirteen states (Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, and Virginia) claimed extensive belts of the **Western country**. They based these claims on the fact that their old charters described the colonial grants as extending "from the Atlantic Ocean to the South Sea."

909. In 1786, the different states gave up their claims to their Western territory to the general government. Congress,

in 1787, organized the region north of the Ohio into a territory called the **Northwest Territory**. The ordinance organizing this territory declared that slavery was not to be allowed in it. Thus it was that, when the various states north of the Ohio and east of the Mississippi were admitted into the Union, they came in as free states.

910. The ordinance provided that a certain number of **future states**, from three to five, should be formed from this territory, and admitted into the Union when they should have a population of 60,000 each.

OHIO

911. The *first* of the Northwestern States to be admitted to the Union was **Ohio**. It takes its name from that of the river which forms its southern boundary.

912. The first explorations in Ohio were made by French pioneers, but no permanent settlements were made by them, as Ohio was not in the direct line of their trading-routes along the Great Lakes and the Mississippi River.

913. Ohio was first settled by a company of **New England** pioneers, under General Rufus Putnam, who, in April, 1788, established themselves at a point on the Muskingum River, which they called **Marietta** after the queen of France, Marie Antoinette.

914. In July, 1788, the colony was strengthened by another company, also from New England. They had come by land with their wagons and stock to Wheeling, whence they passed down the river in flat-boats to the settlement on the Muskingum.

915. The **early settlers** of Ohio were intelligent, hardy, and upright New Englanders, men of a character calculated to promote the welfare of such a community. The settlement which afterwards grew into the "Queen City" of **Cincinnati** was founded in the year 1789.

916. At this period the woods and prairies of Ohio swarmed with Indians. Among them were the Shawnees, Miamis, Wyandots, and many other tribes. These were hostile to the whites, who rapidly increased in numbers and now began to overrun their hunting-grounds.

In 1790, hostilities broke out. Several encounters took place, in which the Indians were successful. General St. Clair, who had been appointed governor of the Northwest Territory, at the head of the frontier troops, fought a battle in November, 1791. He was defeated, with a loss of over eight hundred men killed and wounded. Afterwards General Anthony Wayne was put in command of the forces, and defeated the Indians. The war continued till 1795, when General Wayne made a treaty of peace which forever "buried the hatchet" in Ohio.

917. The increase of the population of the Northwest Territory was very rapid. In 1800, it had 45,000 inhabitants.

918. The settlers were from New England, the Middle States, and Virginia. Large numbers went from Connecticut to what was called the **Western Reserve**, a part of Connecticut's charter claim, which that state had *reserved* when she gave up her Western lands to Congress. A large part of this "Reserve" was sold to a Connecticut company, in 1795. Moses Cleveland was the surveyor, and in honor of him the chief city of the Reserve was named.

Cleveland was founded in 1796. In the same year, Cincinnati contained over one hundred log-cabins and about six hundred inhabitants.

919. In 1800, the Northwest Territory was divided, the western part taking the name of the **Indiana Territory**. In 1803, the eastern part had a sufficient population (60,000) to be admitted as a **state**, and accordingly, in that year, it came into the Union, under the name of the state of **Ohio**.

920. The population of Ohio, by the census of 1890, was 3,672,316.

INDIANA

921. The *second* of the Northwestern States was **Indiana**. The name "Indiana" means "Indian's Ground."

922. Indiana was first explored by a party of French missionaries who, toward the close of the seventeenth century, sailed up the Great Lakes from Canada, and, landing upon the south shore of Lake Michigan, explored the neighboring country. It was at this time a vast wilderness of forests and plains inhabited by the Miami Confederacy. The tribes of Indians which composed this nation lived in the valleys of the principal rivers. The present sites of Fort Wayne, Lafayette, and Vincennes were centers of Indian population.

In 1702, some French Canadians descended the Wabash River and established trading-posts at **Vincennes** and other places. From 1787 to 1800, Indiana was part of the Northwest Territory.

923. In 1800, Congress made out of the western part of the Northwest Territory a separate territory called "**Indiana Territory**," which at first included all of the Northwest Territory except Ohio, and had already considerable population.

924. The settlers early became involved in difficulties with the Indians. The famous **Tecumseh** was chief of the Shawnees. He and his brother, "The Prophet," persuaded the red men to unite in a league to prevent the extension of white settlements in that quarter.

Several encounters took place, in which the Indians were victorious. But, in 1811, General W. H. Harrison, the governor of the territory, defeated the savages in a fierce battle near the mouth of the **Tippecanoe** River.

925. In 1809, Indiana was reduced to its present limits, and in 1816 it was admitted as a **state** into the Union. Its subsequent growth has been rapid, and its **population**, by the census of 1890, was 2,192,404.

ILLINOIS

926. The *third* of the Northwestern States was **Illinois**. It takes its name from one of the western Indian tribes.

927. The region was first visited by the Jesuit explorer La Salle in 1680. The first settlement was made by French traders and missionaries at **Kaskaskia** in 1682.

928. Illinois was at first a part of the Northwest Territory, and when Indiana Territory was organized in 1800, Illinois was a part of that territory. In 1809, Illinois was organized as a **separate territory**, including the present states of Wisconsin, Illinois, and part of Minnesota.

929. In 1818, Illinois was admitted with its present limits as a **state** into the Union.

930. The **deposits of lead** in the Illinois country, in the neighborhood of Galena, were known and worked even in the French times. About the year 1826, the mining and smelting of lead were begun on a large scale, and the business attracted much attention, and caused a great rush of population to that region. Illinois continued to receive a large share of the tide of westward emigration, and the rich farming-lands of the state were very attractive to settlers.

931. Illinois showed her progressive spirit by taking a leading part in the construction of **railroads**. The first railroad from Lake Michigan to the Mississippi was the Chicago and Rock Island, opened in 1854. The Illinois Central Railroad was of great influence in settling and developing this state.

932. The city of **Chicago** is an example of the remarkable growth of the West. In 1831, it was an insignificant trading-station, amid the wigwams of Indians. Now it has a population of 1,099,850, and is the greatest food-market in the world.

933. The **population** of Illinois, at the last census, was 3,826,351.

MICHIGAN

934. The *fourth* of the Northwestern States was **Michigan**. It derives its name from Lake Michigan, "Michigan," being the Indian for "great lake."

935. The first settlements in Michigan were made by the French at **Sault Ste. Marie, Mackinaw, Port Huron, and Detroit**.

936. From 1787 to 1800, Michigan was a part of the Northwest Territory. In 1800, it became a part of the territory of Indiana, and in 1805, it was organized as a separate **territory**. At one time it extended westward to the Missouri River, including the present states of Wisconsin, Minnesota, and Iowa and part of Dakota.

937. During the War of 1812, the nearness of Michigan to Canada caused it to be invaded by the British. It has been seen that the British came up to attack Detroit in the mid-summer of 1812. Hull surrendered his whole army and the territory of Michigan to the British. The victory of Perry on Lake Erie, and of Harrison on the Canada shore, in 1813, restored Michigan Territory to the United States.

938. In 1818, a great immigration to Michigan took place, in consequence of the sale of large areas of **public land**.

939. In 1837, Michigan came into the Union as a **state**¹ with its present limits. She had, some years before, sufficient population for admission, but Congress would not receive her on account of some trouble about the boundary between Michigan and Ohio.

940. The **population** by the census of 1890, was 2,093,889.

¹ When Michigan was organized as a territory the Upper Peninsula was not included in its boundaries. When the territory asked to become a state, it claimed, under an act of Congress known as the Ordinance of 1787, a certain portion of Ohio which includes the port and site of Toledo. This was resisted by Ohio and Congress gave the Upper Peninsula to the new state instead.

IOWA

941. The *fifth* of the Northwestern States was **Iowa**. It was called after the river of the same name, being the Indian for "drowsy ones."

942. A small French settlement was made in this territory, in 1788, by a Canadian named Dubuque, who settled in this region and engaged in lead-mining. But as Iowa was in the "Far West," it was late in receiving American emigration.

The first permanent settlement was made in 1833, in the vicinity of **Burlington**. From this period, population grew far more rapidly than in any previous territory.

943. Iowa came into the possession of the United States through the Louisiana Purchase of 1803. When, in 1804, this purchase was divided into the Territory of Orleans and the District of Louisiana, Iowa became part of the District of Louisiana, which was placed under the jurisdiction of Indiana Territory; but next year that district was organized as a distinct territory. In 1812, the name was changed to Missouri Territory. From 1834-35, Iowa was part of Michigan Territory, and from 1836-38, part of Wisconsin Territory. It was organized as a separate **territory** in 1838, and included a large part of the present state of Minnesota and the whole of North and South Dakota.

944. In 1846, Iowa was admitted as a **state**, but the western and northern portion of the former territory remained Iowa Territory till 1849. When Minnesota Territory was organized in 1849, it received a portion of the state of Iowa on the north, while at the same time Iowa was enlarged by the addition of part of Iowa Territory, and received its present limits.

945. Iowa's history, during the past quarter of a century, has been one of marked progress in every respect. Its **population**, by the census of 1890, was 1,911,896.

WISCONSIN

946. The *sixth* of the Northwestern States was **Wisconsin**. It was called after the river of the same name, which is the Indian for "gathering of the waters."

947. Wisconsin was penetrated by the early French missionaries, traders, and trappers, who frequently crossed its borders from 1634-73. The first actual settlement was made at **Prairie du Chien**, that is, *prairie-dog*, so called after a family of the Fox Indians, who formerly lived there.

948. From 1787 to 1800, Wisconsin was part of the Northwest Territory; in 1800, it became part of the territory of Indiana; and in 1805, part of Michigan Territory. In 1836, the **territory** of Wisconsin was formed out of a part of Michigan. It at first embraced the present states of Iowa and Minnesota, but it gave up Iowa and most of Minnesota in 1838.

949. In 1848, Wisconsin was admitted into the Union as a **state** with its present limits. By the census of 1890, its **population** was 1,686,880.

MINNESOTA

950. The *seventh* of the Northwestern States was **Minnesota**. It was called after the river of the same name, which signifies "cloudy water."

951. The first European to explore Minnesota was Louis Hennepin, a Franciscan priest, who, in 1680, with a party of French fur-traders, ascended the Mississippi to the Falls of St. Anthony. That part of the state *east* of the Mississippi River was ceded to the United States by England at the close of the Revolutionary War in 1783, and has belonged successively to the Northwest Territory, and to the territories of Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, Wisconsin, and Minnesota. The part *west* of the Mississippi was included in the Louisiana

Purchase of 1803, and has belonged in turn to the District of Louisiana, and to the territories of Missouri, Michigan, Wisconsin, Iowa, and Minnesota.

952. The first white settlement was made in 1812. It was founded by a party from the Red River country, in the British Possessions. In 1838, there were two or three log-cabins on the site of the present flourishing capital of **St. Paul**.

953. In 1849, Minnesota was organized as a **territory**. It comprised nearly twice its present area, extending to the Missouri and White Earth rivers. At this time the region was a mere wilderness, over which the Dakotas or **Sioux** roamed. In 1851, they ceded to the United States all their lands west of the Mississippi as far as the Sioux River.

954. From this time population increased so rapidly that, in 1858, Minnesota came into the Union as a **state** with its present limits. The portion west of the Red River remained Minnesota Territory till 1861, when it was merged into the territory of Dakota.

955. The prosperity of Minnesota is continually increasing. Its **population**, by the census of 1890, was 1,301,826.

KANSAS

956. The *eighth* of the Northwestern States was **Kansas**. It was called after the river of the same name, which signifies "smoky water."

A party of Spaniards under Coronado explored this region in 1541, and in 1719, the French traversed it and laid claim to it. The greater portion of it came into the possession of the United States in 1803 by the Louisiana Purchase, but part of southwestern Kansas was Mexican territory till 1848.

957. Kansas first came prominently into notice in 1854, when Senator Douglas introduced into Congress his famous Kansas-Nebraska Bill for the **territorial organization** of Kansas

and Nebraska. It provided that the question whether these territories should be slave or free should be determined by their inhabitants. The bill became a law.

958. A great rivalry now sprang up between the South and the North on the subject of colonizing Kansas. Large parties of Free-Soil men poured into Kansas from the East and the Northwest, and "Emigrant Aid Societies" were formed to colonize it with antislavery inhabitants. The South sent *its* representatives also. From the neighboring state of Missouri large bands of armed men crossed the borders.

959. It was not long before bloodshed began between the two classes of settlers. Murders were numerous, and for years Kansas was a scene of **lawless violence**. Each side strove for the mastery, and, at one time, there were two capitals and two constitutions in Kansas.

960. After long contention, the antislavery party triumphed, and Kansas was admitted as a **free state**, January 30, 1861.

961. The **growth** of Kansas has been extraordinarily rapid. The construction of the Pacific Railroad has thrown open the fertile prairies of this state for hundreds of miles west of the Missouri River. The vast buffalo-ranges have given place to corn-fields and settlements.

The **population**, by the census of 1890, was 1,427,096.

NEBRASKA

962. The *ninth* of the Northwestern States was **Nebraska**. Nebraska is an Indian word. *Nebraska*, like Kansas, was organized as a **territory** in 1854.

963. The early history of Kansas covers the early history of Nebraska. It formed successively parts of the territories of Louisiana and Missouri. Nebraska Territory was organized in 1854, including part of Dakota, Montana, most of Wyoming, and the northwestern part of Colorado.

In 1861 and 1863, the extent of Nebraska was greatly diminished by the setting off of the territories of Dakota, Colorado, Wyoming, and Montana.

964. The general interest in the political fate of Kansas for some years drew the tide of immigration to that quarter rather than to Nebraska, but after the close of the Civil War a very strong emigration set in toward Nebraska, which was admitted as a **state** in 1867.

Since that time the growth of the state has been very rapid, especially since the construction of the **Union Pacific Railroad**, which crosses it from east to west.

965. By the census of 1890 the **population** was 1,058,910.

THE DAKOTAS

966. The *tenth* and *eleventh* of the Northwestern States are **South Dakota** and **North Dakota**. Dakota is an Indian word meaning "allied." Up to the time of white settlement, the eastern sections of the region now occupied by the two states were inhabited by the Chippewa and Ojibwa Indians, and the western sections by the Mandans and other bands now nearly extinct. Like other parts of the Northwest, this region was early penetrated by French explorers and voyagers, who left traces of their language in permanent names of natural features.

967. In 1804-5, the Missouri River was ascended by Lewis and Clarke, and many points are recognized from their description. In 1861, the **territory** of Dakota was organized, including in addition to the present states of North and South Dakota, Montana and parts of Wyoming, Idaho, and Nebraska. With the exception of a small area afterwards transferred to Nebraska, the territory was reduced to the present limits of the two states in 1868.

968. In 1880, a movement was begun for the organization of a state government, and the admission of the territory into

the Union as a state. There was also an agitation at this time for the division of the territory into two parts, and the admission of one or both of these parts as states. Nothing, however, was effected in this direction until 1889, when the territory was divided, the southern part being admitted into the Union as the state of South Dakota, and the northern part as North Dakota.

SOUTH DAKOTA

969. South Dakota was first settled by immigrants from the south and east along the line of the Missouri River and its tributaries. Immigration was very slow, until railroads entered the territory in 1872. Thereafter the growth was more rapid, the settlements now following the course of the railroads instead of the rivers, as they had done at first.

970. South Dakota was admitted into the Union as a state in 1889. Its **population**, by the census of 1890, was 328,808.

NORTH DAKOTA

971. The first white settlers in North Dakota came from British America and located in the Red River Valley in 1812-13. For a long time thereafter settlement was very slow, because the lands to the east and south were not fully occupied. For many years the business and political relations of the inhabitants were with the agencies of the Hudson Bay Company and their settlements on the Red River and in the region around Lake Winnepeg.

In 1872, the Northern Pacific Railroad crossed the Red River at Fargo, and in 1873, it was extended as far as the Missouri River at Bismarck. Thereafter the settlements grew rapidly along the line of the railroads and through the river valleys.

972. North Dakota was admitted into the Union as a state in 1889. Its **population**, by the census of 1890, was 182,719.

THE SOUTHWESTERN STATES AND FLORIDA

973. The Southwestern States were formed mostly from territory ceded to the United States by Virginia, North Carolina, and Georgia, and from the Louisiana Purchase, the only exception being Texas, part of the Texan Annexation.

Florida came into the possession of the United States by purchase from Spain in 1819.

The states of this group are: 1. Kentucky; 2. Tennessee; 3. Louisiana; 4. Mississippi; 5. Alabama; 6. Missouri; 7. Arkansas; 8. Texas; 9. Florida.

KENTUCKY

974. The first of the Southwestern States was **Kentucky**. Kentucky was the first of the states beyond the Alleghanies admitted into the Union. The name is derived from an Indian word meaning "dark and bloody ground."



EARLY KENTUCKY SETTLERS

975. Kentucky was the ancient hunting ground for both northern and southern tribes of Indians. There is evidence

that the Mound Builders lived there in considerable numbers. About the year 1760, Dr. Thomas Walker, of Virginia, explored and named the Cumberland Mountains and the Cumberland River. The range and river were so called after his patron, the Duke of Cumberland. Dr. Walker also explored the upper part of the Kentucky River, and gave it the name of **Louisa**, in honor of the Duchess of Cumberland.

976. A few years later, the bold pioneer, **Daniel Boone**, ranged over the mountains from North Carolina, where he lived, into the Kentucky country. It was through the efforts of Boone and some of his friends that Kentucky was first settled.

The earliest permanent settlements in Kentucky were made in the first year of the Revolutionary War, 1775. The spring before, James Harrod had built the first log-cabin in the valley of the Kentucky.

Boonesboro was founded in 1775. In the same year a local government was organized and the name **Transylvania** was given to the new country.

The settlements at first suffered greatly from the Indians, who were very hostile. Many dreadful deeds were done in early times, — deeds which gave peculiar significance to the name *Kentucky*.

977. In 1776, the Kentucky region was made a **county of Virginia**, and came under the protection of the Old Dominion.

978. After the close of the war of the Revolution, the era of Kentucky immigration began. Virginians and North-Carolinians, especially, went there in large numbers. By the year 1784, the population had grown to 30,000. **Louisville**, **Lexington**, and other villages had been founded.

979. Kentucky's connection with Virginia continued till 1792, when it was admitted as a **state** into the Union. Its **population**, by the census of 1890, was 1,858,635.

TENNESSEE

980. The *second* of the Southwestern States was **Tennessee**. The state is called after the river of the same name, signifying the "river of the big bend."

981. The Tennessee country was originally a part of North Carolina, for North Carolina claimed territory westward to the Mississippi.

In 1777, the legislature of North Carolina organized the **county of Washington**, which comprised the whole of what is now the state of Tennessee. In the next year, a colony of refugees from the tyranny of the British in Carolina penetrated the wilderness and located themselves on the Cumberland River, near the site of **Nashville**. That city was founded in 1784. *

982. In 1790, North Carolina ceded to the United States the whole region now forming the state of Tennessee. It was then organized under the name of the "**Southwest Territory**."

983. By 1796, the population had increased sufficiently to entitle Tennessee to enter the Union as a **state**. The **population**, by the census of 1890, was 1,767,518.

LOUISIANA

984. The *third* of the Southwestern States was **Louisiana**, which took its name from the territory of Louisiana, which was named in honor of Louis XIV.

985. Louisiana was first visited by La Salle in 1691. The first settlement was made in 1699, at **Iberville**. In 1717, Louisiana was purchased by the Mississippi Company, and in the same year **New Orleans** was founded. Louisiana next became a crown possession of France. It was transferred to Spain in 1762, but ceded back to France in 1800.

986. The name "Louisiana" was originally given by the French to the whole of their extensive possessions in the Mississippi Valley.

987. In 1803, the United States bought from France all the French possessions *west* of the Mississippi. This included from the Gulf of Mexico north to the British possessions, and westward from the Mississippi to the Rocky Mountains and the Mexican possessions.

988. In 1804, the country forming the present state of Louisiana was organized as the **Territory of Orleans**. The remainder of the country was first called the "**District of Louisiana**," and later the "**Territory of Louisiana**." Out of the latter were afterwards formed the states of Missouri, Arkansas, Kansas, Nebraska, Iowa, North Dakota, South Dakota, and parts of Montana, Wyoming, Colorado, and Minnesota.

989. At this time the "Territory of Orleans" contained a considerable population of French, who had settled there from early times. **New Orleans** had been founded in 1718, and was now a large and flourishing French city.

990. In 1812, Louisiana was received into the Union as a state. Her population, by the census of 1890, was 1,118,587.

MISSISSIPPI

991. The *fourth* of the Southwestern States was **Mississippi**. It is called after the river of the same name, signifying the "father of waters."

992. Mississippi was traversed by De Soto in 1540, and visited by La Salle in 1682, but no permanent settlement was made there until 1716, when Bienville founded **Natchez**.

993. The colony was originally a part of French Louisiana, and was ceded to the English in 1763. After the Revolutionary War, the region west of Georgia to the Mississippi River was claimed as part of Georgia, except the southern portions,

which were part of the Spanish province of West Florida. Spain claimed these as her own until 1819, when they passed with the rest of Florida under the authority of the United States, to which they had, in fact, been forcibly annexed seven years before.

994. Mississippi was organized as a **territory** in 1798, and was subsequently enlarged by various additions so as to include all of the present states of Alabama and Mississippi. Georgia surrendered her claims to this territory in 1800.

995. In 1817, the "Territory of the Mississippi" was divided, and the **western portion** of it admitted into the Union as the **state** of Mississippi. Its **population**, in 1890, was 1,289,600.

ALABAMA

996. The *fifth* of the Southwestern States was **Alabama**, called after the river of the same name, meaning "here we rest."

997. De Soto made the first explorations within the present limits of Alabama in 1540. The first settlement was made by the French near Mobile Bay in 1702, and in 1711, they founded **Mobile**.

998. After the Revolution, Alabama, north of latitude 31°, belonged first to Georgia and South Carolina; then to Mississippi Territory, and lastly to Alabama Territory. The part south of the thirty-first parallel was claimed and occupied by Spain from 1780 until 1812, when it was forcibly occupied by the United States, as part of the Louisiana Purchase, and attached to Mississippi Territory, to which the rest of the state then belonged. By the purchase of Florida from Spain, in 1819, the difficulty was adjusted.

999. In 1817, the territory of Mississippi was divided, and the eastern portion was organized as the **territory** of Alabama.

1000. In 1819, Alabama was admitted into the Union as a **state**. Its **population**, by the census of 1890, was 1,513,017.

MISSOURI

1001. The *sixth* of the Southwestern States was **Missouri**. It is called after the river of the same name, which signifies "muddy water."

1002. In 1541, De Soto, the Spanish explorer, with his followers, entered Missouri by the valley of the White River, they being the first white men to set foot on the soil of the state. Later, the whole valley of the Mississippi was claimed by the French, under the name of "the province of Louisiana." **Fort Orleans**, near where Jefferson City stands, was built by the French in 1719. **St. Genevieve** was settled in 1755, and **St. Louis** in 1764.

1003. Missouri was part of the "Louisiana Purchase." After the organization of the "Territory of Orleans," in 1804, Missouri formed part of the "District of Louisiana." In 1812, it took the name of **Missouri Territory**, and the *state* of Missouri was a *part* of that territory.

1004. In 1820, Missouri applied to Congress for admission into the Union as a state. It was then proposed in Congress that **slavery should be prohibited** in Missouri, if she was admitted as a state. This led to a very hot discussion of the whole question of slavery, and arrayed the friends and opponents of slavery in bitter political strife.

The matter was at length settled by a **compromise**. It was agreed that slavery should be allowed in Missouri, but should be prohibited in all the territory of the United States north and west of the northern boundary of Arkansas. This arrangement is known as the "Missouri Compromise."

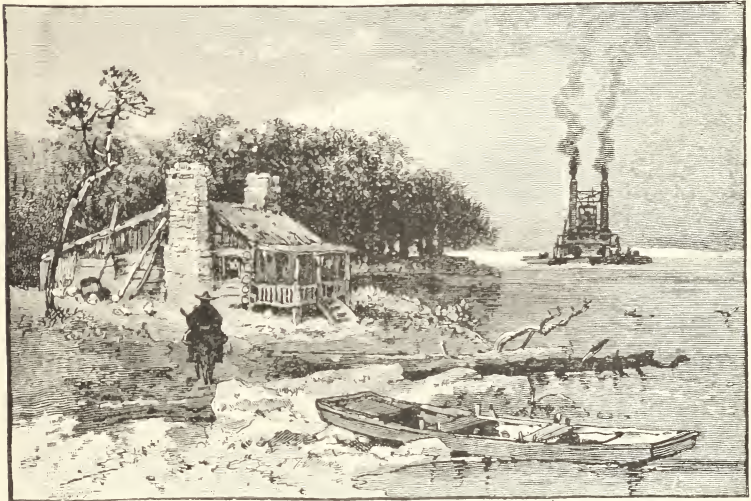
1005. By this law, Missouri came into the Union as a **state**¹ in 1821. Her **population**, by the census of 1890, was 2,679,184.

¹ That part of the former territory which was not made a portion of the state retained the name Missouri Territory until 1854. The state did not receive its present limits until 1835.

ARKANSAS

1006. The *seventh* of the Southwestern States was **Arkansas**, named after a tribe of Indians.

1007. De Soto, in 1541, was the first white man to land in what is now known as the state of Arkansas; he explored the country as far as Hot Springs. In 1673, Marquette and Joliet explored the mouth of the Arkansas River, and, in



SCENE ON THE ARKANSAS

1682, La Salle explored and claimed possession of the country in the name of France.

The first permanent settlement within the limits of the state was made by the French at **Arkansas Post** in 1685. Arkansas was a part of the Louisiana Purchase of 1803; of the District of Louisiana in 1804, and of Missouri Territory in 1812. In 1819, it was organized as a separate **territory**.

1008. In 1836, it was admitted as a **state**. The **population**, in 1890, was 1,128,179.

TEXAS

1009. The *eighth* of the Southwestern States admitted into the Union was Texas.

1010. Texas was originally claimed as a part of the Spanish-American possessions. The Spaniards had made settlements there as early as 1715.

When the United States bought Louisiana from France, Americans claimed Texas as a part of that purchase. But when the United States bought Florida of Spain, in 1819, the government agreed to give up to Spain all its claim to Texas.

1011. In 1821, Mexico and Texas declared themselves independent of Spain. After this, a large American immigration into Texas began. Texas remained **under Mexican rule** till 1835.

In 1835, the people of Texas resisted the Mexican rule. Santa Anna tried to subdue them. The result was a war, which lasted during 1835 and 1836. The Texans were victorious.

1012. In 1836, Texas declared herself **independent** of Mexico. General Sam. Houston was in command of the Texan army, and succeeded in utterly defeating Santa Anna. Houston then became President of the Republic of Texas.

1013. Soon after this, Texas asked to be **annexed** to the United States. The question of the annexation of Texas was brought prominently before the American people in the presidential contest of 1844. James K. Polk, who was elected President, **urged the annexation** of Texas.

1014. In 1845, Texas was admitted as a **state**¹ into the Union. Its **population**, by the census of 1890, was 2,235,523.

¹ Texas originally claimed a large territory beyond its present limits, reaching to the head-waters of the Rio Grande on the west, and to the forty-second parallel on the north. In 1850, the state ceded to the United States all its claim to this territory for the sum of \$10,000,000 in bonds, with which its state debt was paid. As originally constituted, the area of the state was over 375,000 square miles, — greater than that of the original thirteen states.

FLORIDA

1015. Florida does not properly belong to the group of Southwestern States, since it is the most southeastern state in the Union. It derives its name from the fact that the discoverer,¹ De Leon, landed on the *pascua florida*, or flowery Easter, of 1512.

1016. The first permanent settlement was made in 1565, when St. Augustine (the oldest city in the United States) was founded by Spanish colonists. The country was held by Spain until 1763.

1017. The English colonists of Georgia and Carolina waged continuous war upon Florida. In 1763, Florida was ceded to Great Britain in return for Havana, which had been captured by the British the previous year. Most of the Spaniards thereupon left the country, and vigorous efforts were made by the British government to promote settlement by liberal grants of land to settlers. Thus, the twenty years of British settlement accomplished more in improving Florida than the two hundred years of Spanish rule had done.

In 1783, Great Britain, feeling that she herself could no longer hold Florida, and desiring to prevent the United States from obtaining control of it, ceded it back to Spain. The greater part of the English thereupon left the province.

1018. In 1819, the United States purchased from Spain, for five million dollars, the entire region including Spanish East Florida and West Florida.²

¹ Although we have no record of any landing made on the soil of Florida prior to De Leon's, yet from maps published as early as 1502 we know that a Spanish expedition (probably the one commanded by Pinzon, for which Americus Vesputius was astronomer) had sailed along the coast and had made a rough outline of the form of the peninsula. This expedition probably reached the coast of Florida late in 1497 or early in 1498.

² West Florida originally comprised the extreme southern portions of Alabama, and Mississippi, and most of Louisiana east of the Mississippi River.

Settlement and progress were greatly impeded by constant troubles with the Seminole Indians, which resulted in the Seminole War of 1835.

1019. East Florida was organized as a **territory** in 1822. In 1845, it was admitted as the **state** of Florida. Since 1865, it has had a large immigration from the north.

1020. The **population** of Florida, according to the census of 1890, was 391,422.

TOPICAL REVIEW

I. OF THE FOUNDING OF THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY AND GULF STATES

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Kentucky , admitted 1792 . | 11. Michigan , admitted 1837 . |
| 2. Tennessee , admitted 1796 . | 12. Florida , admitted 1845 . |
| 3. Ohio , admitted 1803 . | 13. Texas , admitted 1845 . |
| 4. Louisiana , admitted 1812 . | 14. Iowa , admitted 1846 . |
| 5. Indiana , admitted 1816 . | 15. Wisconsin , admitted 1848 . |
| 6. Mississippi , admitted 1817 . | 16. Minnesota , admitted 1858 . |
| 7. Illinois , admitted 1818 . | 17. Kansas , admitted 1861 . |
| 8. Alabama , admitted 1819 . | 18. Nebraska , admitted 1867 . |
| 9. Missouri , admitted 1821 . | 19. North Dakota , admitted 1889 . |
| 10. Arkansas , admitted 1836 . | 20. South Dakota , admitted 1889 . |

II. OF THE ORIGIN OF THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY AND GULF STATES

1. The whole region between the Alleghanies and the Mississippi, with the exception of Florida, which belonged to Spain, and the city and island of New Orleans, which belonged to France, came into the possession of the United States by the treaty which closed the war of the Revolution in 1783.

2. This region was organized into two territories, the **Northwest Territory** and the **Southwest Territory**.

3. The Northwest Territory was divided in 1800. **Ohio**, in 1803, became a state; the rest of the Northwest Territory, after 1800, took the name of **Indiana Territory**.

4. In 1816, the present state of **Indiana** was formed out of Indiana Territory. Indiana Territory was divided into the following states: **Illinois**, organized into Illinois Territory, 1809, and admitted as a

state, 1818; **Michigan**, organized as a territory, 1805, and admitted as a state, 1837; **Wisconsin**, organized as a territory, 1836, and admitted as a state, 1848.

5. The Southwest Territory, formed in 1790, was first divided by the organization of Kentucky as a **County of Virginia**; but in 1792, **Kentucky** was admitted as a state. In 1796, **Tennessee** was formed out of the Southwest Territory. In 1800, the **Territory of Mississippi** was organized. This formed two states: **Mississippi**, admitted as a state in 1817; and **Alabama**, organized as a separate territory in 1817, and admitted as a state in 1819.

6. The "**Louisiana Purchase**" was made in 1803. By this the United States acquired from France the vast region stretching westward from the Mississippi to the Rocky Mountains, except Texas.

7. In 1804, the Louisiana Purchase was divided into the "**Territory of Orleans**" and the "**District of Louisiana.**" In 1812, the "Territory of Orleans" was admitted into the Union as the state of **Louisiana**.

8. The "**District of Louisiana,**" organized in 1805 as the "**Territory of Louisiana,**" which name was changed to Missouri Territory in 1812, was divided into the following states:¹ **Missouri**, admitted as a state in 1821; **Arkansas**, organized as a separate territory in 1819, and admitted as a state in 1836; **Iowa**, organized as a separate territory in 1838, and admitted as a state in 1846; **Minnesota**, organized as a territory in 1849, and admitted as a state, in 1858; **Kansas**, organized as a territory, in 1854, and admitted as a state in 1861; **Nebraska**, organized at the same time as Kansas, and admitted as a state in 1867; **South Dakota** and **North Dakota**, formed from the territory of Dakota, organized in 1861, divided into two states, admitted in 1889.

9. **Texas** did not spring from the "Louisiana Purchase." It had an independent origin. The Texans, in 1836, threw off the Mexican yoke and founded an independent Republic, which in 1845 was admitted as a state.

10. **Florida** did not spring from the Southwest Territory. It was a Spanish possession, purchased by the United States in 1819, organized as a territory in 1812, and admitted as a state in 1845.

¹ All of Montana and parts of Wyoming and Colorado were also formed from the Louisiana Purchase. These will be treated of in the next chapter.

THE PACIFIC STATES

1021. We have learned of the origin and formation of two groups of states, the Northwestern States and the Southwestern States. There is a third group, known as the **Pacific States**, which we must now consider.

Most of the Pacific States were formed from the territory acquired by the **Louisiana Purchase** and by the **Mexican Cession**, the exceptions being Oregon, Washington, and Idaho.

1022. We have already learned what states were formed from the Louisiana Purchase.

1023. The Mexican War was ended by the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo. By this treaty the United States acquired the vast territory including New Mexico and California, known as the **Mexican Cession**. The United States agreed to pay Mexico fifteen millions of dollars, and assume the debts of Mexico to American citizens, amounting to three millions more.

By this treaty the boundary between Mexico and the United States was to be the Rio Grande, from its mouth to New Mexico; thence to the river Gila; that river to its junction with the Colorado; then in a straight line to the Pacific, at a point ten miles south of San Diego. Soon afterwards, the United States acquired by the **Gadsden Purchase** a considerable strip of the territory of northern Mexico, including a good part of Arizona.

1024. Oregon, Washington, and Idaho were formed from a strip of territory in the extreme northwest which had for some time been claimed by the United States. This region was bounded on the north by Canada, on the east by the Louisiana Purchase, on the south by the Mexican Cession, and on the west by the Pacific Ocean. The United States based its claims to this territory upon the following facts:

First, Captain Gray of Boston discovered the Columbia River, which crosses this region, in 1792.

Second, though little was known of this region at the time, it was claimed as part of the Louisiana Purchase of 1803.

Third, in 1804-5, an exploring party, under **Lewis and Clarke**, descended the Columbia River to the Pacific Ocean.

An extensive fur-trade was soon begun, and in 1811, the American Fur Company made a settlement at Astoria, at the mouth of the Columbia River. Parts of this territory were claimed by Spain and Great Britain, but Spain withdrew her claim by the treaty of 1819, and England, by the treaty of 1846.

1025. The Pacific States were admitted in the following order:—

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. California | 5. Washington |
| 2. Oregon | 6. Montana |
| 3. Nevada | 7. Idaho |
| 4. Colorado | 8. Wyoming |

CALIFORNIA

1026. The *first* of the Pacific States was **California**, named from an old Crusader romance. The acquisition of California grew out of the war with Mexico, 1846-48.

1027. It has been seen that the peninsula of California, Upper or *Alta* California, and the region of New Mexico, were first **explored by the Spaniards**. These explorations began within fifty years after the discovery of America by Columbus.

It has also been noted that the bold English navigator, Sir Francis Drake, visited the coast of California in 1579. He spent part of that summer in the fine harbor which is now known as the Bay of San Francisco. Drake named the whole region New Albion, and claimed the country for the sovereign of England. The English, however, never did anything to make good this claim, and California remained a **Spanish** possession.

1028. The Spaniards made their first settlement in Upper California, at **San Diego**, in 1769. San Diego was the first of a series of Missions which the Spanish Catholic missionaries established in California, from San Diego to San Francisco.

Into these the Indians were gathered, and the Catholic priests taught them the arts of civilization. They cultivated the vine, the olive, and the fig, and lived in spacious houses, built of *adobe*, or sun-dried bricks.

1029. In 1822, Mexico threw off the yoke of Spain, and became an **independent Republic**. Upper California was then made a Mexican province.

1030. The first American settlers found their way into California about 1843. At this time, the region had a small population of Spaniards, Mexicans, and Indians. California was visited only by an occasional ship, which went away freighted with hides and tallow.

1031. In 1846, the war between the United States and Mexico began. The Americans in California immediately raised the "bear flag," and asserted their **independence of Mexico**. The result of this was a series of contests with the Mexican authorities. It has already been seen that, at this time, **Captain Fremont**, who had been sent West to survey a new route to Oregon, arrived in California. Fremont united with the Americans, who were successful in several encounters with the Mexicans. In July, 1846, Commodore Sloat, then commander of the United States fleet on the Pacific coast, hearing of the declaration of war, took possession of **Monterey**. A little later, Stockton superseded Sloat. He took San Diego, and, aided by Fremont, captured **Los Angeles**.

General Kearney reached California in time to take part in the battle of **San Gabriel**, January 8, 1847. This action overthrew the Spanish power, and established the authority of the United States in California.

1032. It was just before the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo was concluded (January 19, 1848), that the **first discovery of gold** in California took place, — a discovery which resulted in founding a great state on the Pacific coast.

The first gold was found on the American fork of the



THE DISCOVERY OF GOLD

Sacramento River. The news of the discovery reached the states, and it soon spread throughout the world that California was the golden land, the true "El Dorado."

An extraordinary rush of immigration to California now set in. In 1849, between the months of April and December, nearly **forty thousand** emigrants arrived at the port of San Francisco. In 1850, California contained a population of 100,000.

1033. California was soon ready to become a state. In September, 1849, a convention met at Monterey and formed a free state Constitution. Congress admitted California as a **state** September 9, 1850.

1034. The object for which the flocks of emigrants crowded to California was to dig gold. Nearly all who went into the business realized handsome profits. The amount of gold taken out in California was enormous. Between 1849 and 1870, it is calculated at over \$ 1,000,000,000. This great increase of the "circulating medium" has deeply **influenced the trade** of the whole world.

1035. The history of California may be divided into two periods, — the period of "gold and experiment," and the period of "wheat and growth."

The first period began with the discovery of gold, and lasted till about 1860. During this period the great object of the people was to accumulate a fortune and return "home." The second period began when the population ceased to be exclusively a mining population and commenced to develop the **agricultural resources** of the state.

After some years it was found that the yearly returns derived from the export of wheat were fully equal to the value of the gold produced.

1036. By the great Pacific Railroad, completed in 1869, California is connected with the cities of the Atlantic coast. By the steamers of the Pacific Mail Company it reaches out to the shores of Asia. These lines of commerce, with its gold-fields and wheat-fields, form the sure basis of California's prosperity.

1037. The **population** of California, by the census of 1890, was 1,208,130.

OREGON

1038. The *second* of the Pacific States was **Oregon**, which is a Spanish name meaning "wild marjoram."

1039. The coast of **Oregon**, though occasionally visited by navigators from early times, did not attract much attention until near the close of the last century. As early as the year

1788, two trading-ships from Boston, under Captains Kendrick and Gray, visited the Oregon coast.

1040. As we have seen, in 1792, Captain Gray discovered the great river of Oregon, which he named the *Columbia*, in honor of Captain Kendrick's ship. At this time this North Pacific country did not belong to any nation.

When the United States acquired from France the great territory of Louisiana, in 1803, President Jefferson sent an exploring party, under **Lewis and Clarke**, to the head waters of the Missouri River and thence across to the Pacific.

These bold explorers, with a party of men, set out in 1804. They explored to the very head of the Missouri River, a distance of three thousand miles, then crossed to the head waters of the Columbia, and down that river to its mouth. This was the **first systematic exploration** of this region.

1041. The report of this exploration led John Jacob Astor, a far-seeing merchant of New York, to plan a settlement on the Oregon coast, with the view of **fur-trading**. Mr. Astor sent out one party across the continent and another by sea, and in 1811 a settlement was made on the southern bank of the Columbia. This settlement was named **Astoria**.

The British became very jealous of this American settlement and set up a claim to the North Pacific region. By treachery Astoria was given up to the British "Northwest Fur Company" in 1812. The United States continued to assert its claim to that country. A great deal of correspondence on the subject between the two governments resulted. At last, in 1818, the United States and England agreed to a **joint occupancy** of the whole territory for ten years. In 1828, the treaty of joint occupancy was renewed, to terminate on either party's giving a year's notice.

1042. Up to this time, the number of Americans in Oregon was trifling, and the first beginnings of **real settlement** were

made in 1834. In that year, a little band of Methodist missionaries established themselves in the lovely valley of the Willamette. Here they were joined by others, and several mission stations were founded.

No settlement of the conflicting claims of the British and Americans to this region was made till 1846. It was then agreed by a treaty that the American possessions should extend as far north as latitude 49°. Out of the area of Oregon were afterwards formed the states of **Oregon, Washington, and Idaho**. Oregon was organized as a **territory** in 1848.

1043. The growth of Oregon was very slow until after the discovery of gold in California. In 1850, Congress passed a law giving lands to settlers in Oregon. The country then began to fill up.

1044. In 1859, Oregon was admitted as a **state**. Since the completion of the Pacific Railroad, the growth of Oregon has been exceedingly rapid. It has great resources and remarkable attractions for settlers. The **population** of Oregon, by the census of 1890, was 313,767.

NEVADA

1045. The *third* of the Pacific States was **Nevada**, which is a Spanish name meaning "snow-covered mountains."

1046. The soil of Nevada was part of the extensive territory acquired by the United States from Mexico by the treaty of Guadaloupe Hidalgo, in 1848. When the present boundaries of California were marked off, in 1849, the newly acquired region to the east was organized as **Utah Territory**. This embraced what is now the state of Nevada.

1047. While Nevada was a part of Utah, it received a small Mormon population. These first actual settlers went to Nevada in 1848. The population was very small, however, till the period of the first great **silver discovery** in 1859, when it

increased rapidly. A number of towns were founded, among which Virginia City and Carson took the lead.

1048. Nevada was made a separate **territory** in 1861. The territorial government continued till 1864, when Nevada was admitted into the Union as a **state**.

1049. The prosperity of Nevada is based chiefly on its production of silver. It has some of the richest silver mines in the world. The **population**, by the census of 1890, was 45,761.

COLORADO

1050. The *fourth* of the Pacific States was **Colorado**, which derives its name from the Spanish, meaning "red."

1051. The territory included within the borders of Colorado was acquired, partly from the French¹ through the "Louisiana Purchase" in 1803, and partly from Mexico through the "treaty of 1848."

1052. The discovery, in 1859, that gold existed in large quantities in this region caused a great rush of immigration. Colorado was organized as a **territory** in 1861. It was formed from parts of Kansas, Nebraska, New Mexico, and Utah. After its organization as a territory, its growth was, for some years, rather slow, owing to the fact that the gold was found to exist mostly in combination with other metals, and was difficult to extract.

1053. Three facts, however, soon led to the rapid growth of the territory. First, the healthful **climate**, with its dry, pure

¹ Prior to the acquisition of that part of the territory which came to us from France, no important explorations or researches had been made in this region. In 1803, the government sent out a small expedition under Lieutenant Pike. Later, in 1819, Col. S. H. Long led another expedition. Neither of these, however, made any foothold or discovery of importance. Private enterprises, as late as 1832, were unsuccessful in the accomplishment of any good results; and it was not until Captain Fremont, in 1842 and 1844, had made surveying and exploring expeditions, that the government knew anything of the character of its newly acquired domain.

air, was found admirably adapted to the cure of diseases of the lungs and throat. Second, the fine **pasture lands** made it the best stock-raising region in the country. Third, it was discovered that the **plains**, when irrigated, were the richest and most arable in the land.

1054. Colorado was admitted into the Union as a **state** in 1876. The **population**, by the census of 1890, was 412,198.

WASHINGTON

1055. The *fifth* of the Pacific States was **Washington**, named after George Washington, first president of the United States.

1056. When Oregon was admitted into the Union as a state in 1859, it did not include either Washington or Idaho. Washington had been organized as a **territory** in 1853. It then included all of its present area, and also Idaho and parts of Wyoming and Montana. In 1863, the limits of Washington were fixed as they now are, Idaho being set off as a separate territory.

1057. The main causes of the growth of Washington have been the completion of the Pacific Railway, and the settlement of the boundary dispute with Great Britain. This dispute was finally brought to a decision favorable to the American claim, through the arbitration of the German emperor in 1872.

1058. Washington was admitted into the Union as a **state** in 1889. The **population**, by the census of 1890, was 349,390.

MONTANA

1059. The *sixth* of the Pacific States was **Montana**, which derives its name from the Spanish *montaña*, a mountain.

1060. What is now Montana was bought from France in 1803 as part of the vast region then called Louisiana. Lewis and Clarke crossed this area twice on the famous expedition of the next year.

1061. Montana has since belonged, all or in part, to Oregon, Washington, Nebraska, Dakota, and Idaho. It became a **separate territory** in 1864.

1062. In 1876-77, great trouble was experienced with the Indians, principally the Sioux and Cheyennes. These difficulties, however, were soon adjusted.

1063. Some deposits of gold were discovered as early as 1852. Twenty years later, rich mines of both gold and silver were opened. These attracted a progressive class of settlers, and have added largely to the wealth of Montana. Besides mining, lumbering and stock-raising are profitable industries. The Northern Pacific Railroad passes through the state from east to west, and the rivers afford hundreds of miles of navigable waterways.

1064. Montana was admitted into the Union as a **state** in 1889. The **population**, by the census of 1890, was 132,159.

IDAHO

1065. The *seventh* of the Pacific States was **Idaho**, an Indian name meaning "gem of the mountains."

1066. Idaho was once a part of Washington Territory. It was set off as a **territory** by itself in 1863. At that time it embraced all the area of Montana and part of Wyoming, but was reduced to its present limits in 1868, when Wyoming was organized as a territory.

A mission was established at **Cœur d'Alène** in 1842, but Idaho remained an unpeopled wilderness till 1860. The building of railroads, and the discovery of deposits of the precious metals then led to active settlement.

1067. The Northern Pacific Railroad now crosses the northern part of the state, and the southern part has railway connection with the Union and Central Pacific roads.

1068. Idaho was admitted into the Union as a **state** in 1890. The census of that year gave it a **population** of 84,385.

WYOMING

1069. The *eighth* of the Pacific States was **Wyoming**, the name being Indian for "an extensive plain."

1070. Wyoming, like the neighboring states of Montana and Idaho, was, till the middle of this century, an almost unknown wilderness.

Twenty years ago the mining prospector discovered **gold and silver** in the mountains, and settlement began. The Union Pacific Railroad was built across the southern part of Wyoming, and towns sprang up along its route. In 1868, it was organized as a **territory**.

1071. Wyoming became a **state** in 1890. By the census of that year, the **population** was 60,705.

Wyoming is the first state admitted to the Union in which women may vote and hold office on an equality with men.



TOPICAL REVIEW

I. OF THE FOUNDING OF THE PACIFIC STATES

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. California , admitted 1850 . | 5. Washington , admitted 1389 . |
| 2. Oregon , admitted 1859 . | 6. Montana , admitted 1889 . |
| 3. Nevada , admitted 1864 . | 7. Idaho , admitted 1890 . |
| 4. Colorado , admitted 1876 . | 8. Wyoming , admitted 1890 . |

II. OF THE ORIGIN OF THE PACIFIC STATES

1. The region covered by the Pacific States came into the possession of the United States by the **Louisiana Purchase** of 1803; by the **Mexican Cession** of 1848; by the **Texan Cession** of 1850; by **discovery** and **exploration**, and by **treaties** with Spain and England.

2. From the region acquired by the **Mexican Cession**¹ were formed the state of **California**, admitted in 1850; **Nevada**, organized as a territory in 1861, admitted as a state in 1864; part of **Colorado** organized as a territory in 1861, admitted as a state in 1876, and part of **Wyoming**.

3. From the territory acquired by the **Louisiana Purchase** were formed part of the state of **Colorado**; **Montana**, organized as a territory in 1864, admitted as a state in 1889; part of **Wyoming**, organized as a territory in 1868, admitted as a state in 1890.

4. The United States based its claims to the territory in the extreme **northwest** upon the first discovery of the Columbia River, 1792; contiguity to the Louisiana Purchase, 1803; first systematic exploration, by Lewis and Clarke, 1805; first settlement in Astoria, 1811; which claims were allowed by Spain in treaty of 1819, and by Great Britain in treaty of 1846. From this region were formed **Oregon**, organized as a territory in 1848, admitted as a state in 1859; **Washington**, organized as a territory in 1853, admitted as a state in 1889; and **Idaho**, once a part of Washington Territory, set off as a separate territory in 1863 (then including Wyoming), reduced to its present limits in 1868, and admitted as a state in 1890.

5. The southwestern part of the state of **Colorado** was ceded to the United States by **Texas** in 1850, and this cession also included a part of the territory of New Mexico.

¹ The Mexican Cession of 1848 also included the present territories of Utah and Arizona, and part of the territory of New Mexico.

A CENTURY OF PROGRESS

To be read :

The Declaration of Independence which was put forth to the world on the **4th of July, 1776**, by the Continental Congress, composed of delegates from the old thirteen English Colonies, proclaimed the birth of the UNITED STATES. The Republic, therefore, is a little more than a **century** old.

A hundred years is a brief period in the life of a nation. Yet this century has witnessed a marvelous growth in the United States. Let us review some of the principal facts of American progress.

The century has seen the **thirteen states** grow to **forty-four**, more than three times as many.

The century has seen the **area** of the Republic expanding from the narrow strip of territory along the Atlantic coast till it has taken in the whole vast basin of the Mississippi and has spread out to the shores that face the morning-land of Asia. The area of the United States, at the formation of the Federal Union in 1789, was about eight hundred thousand square miles. It is now more than three and a half million square miles in extent.

The century has witnessed a growth of population more surprising than the increase of territory. It has seen the **three millions** of 1776 swelling to the **sixty-three millions** of 1890. This great growth is partly the result of natural increase, and partly of emigration from the Old World. Europe has given us her overflowing millions, attracted by the hospitality of the Republic, which offers to all civil liberty, equal rights, and a fair chance to get on in life.

The century has witnessed unparalleled **material progress**. This progress may be considered under the three heads of *invention, production, and distribution*.

The **inventive genius** of our countrymen has become proverbial, and some of the most important appliances of art and manufacture have come from the brains of ingenious Americans. Franklin's interesting experiments with lightning, by which he identified lightning and electricity, resulted in his invention of the **lightning-rod**. And this was one of the least of the applications of his discovery, as we shall soon see.

The **cotton-gin** is the invention of an American. It was constructed by Eli Whitney, while in Savannah, in 1792. This machine greatly stimulated the cultivation of cotton. Gradually this became almost the exclusive staple of the five or six Gulf States. By the year 1860, the yearly production of cotton amounted to over three million bales. The present production is quite as great. Previous to the war, the millions of English spindles in the great British manufacturing towns were dependent solely on the American supply; and though, during the war, other sources were drawn upon, America still controls the cotton supply of the world.

The first **steamboat** applied to practical uses was constructed by an American and sailed on American waters. This was the *Clermont*, built by Robert Fulton. She began her trips on the Hudson River, September 4, 1807, — a date far more memorable than that of any battle that was ever fought on earth. The first passage by steam to Europe was made in 1819, by the steamship *Savannah*, from New York to Liverpool. Now, as every scholar knows, the



ROBERT FULTON

rivers and lakes and seas of America float thousands of magnificent steamers, bearing the passengers and products of the continent.

Americans were the leaders in **railroad** construction, though the adaptation of the locomotive to iron roads belongs to Stephenson, an Englishman. The first railroad in the United States was at Quincy, Massachusetts. This was in 1827, during the presidency of John Quincy Adams. This, however, was a mere **tram** road to carry granite. The first real railroad was the Baltimore and Ohio, commenced in 1828. The first locomotive engine used on any American road was on the Baltimore and Ohio, in 1831. Another early railroad was the South Carolina, from Charleston to Hamburg (opposite Augusta), a distance of one hundred and thirty-five miles. It was opened in 1833, and at that time was the longest continuous line of railroad in the world. There are at present nearly **one hundred and seventy-five thousand miles** of railroad in the United States, about one half the railroad mileage of the world. The railroad from New York to San Francisco, completed in 1869, is a wonder far more striking than all the old "seven wonders of the world." The brief period of six days now serves to transport one from the Atlantic seaboard to the shores of the Pacific, a distance of thirty-six hundred miles.

The **electro-magnetic telegraph** is an American invention. It was invented by Samuel F. B. Morse. The first telegraph line ever built was stretched between Washington and Baltimore in 1844. It was a success, and the invention was soon imitated in all parts of the civilized world. There are at present more than two hundred thousand miles of telegraph line in the United States alone.

The most signal example of telegraphic appliance was the successful laying of the submarine **Atlantic Cable**, a triumph of

American skill. In the year 1857-8, a cable was laid between Newfoundland and Ireland by the Atlantic Telegraph Company, of which Cyrus W. Field was the president. The cable worked for a brief period and then failed. In 1866, another cable was laid under the superintendence of Mr. Field, and this has ever since been in perfect working order. The battles of Europe and the speeches of her statesmen are, by



LAYING THE FIRST ATLANTIC CABLE

this wonderful invention, reported in American journals from New York to San Francisco the next morning. And so also events that happen in the United States to-day are reported to-morrow morning in the newspapers of England and the continent of Europe.

It would be impossible to mention here the one-hundredth part of the remarkable inventions of American genius, — the sewing-machine, the telephone, the reaper, the steam-

plough, etc. The Patent Office at Washington, with its hundreds of thousands of models, is the best proof of American ingenuity and skill. About **fifteen thousand patents** a year are now issued, and they are constantly on the increase.

American **production** has during the century increased at an astonishing rate. In regard to production and manufacture, we may conveniently consider the United States as divided into three great zones.

In the center is the great agricultural zone of the Mississippi basin. This is the heart of the continent, whence the life-giving streams go forth. From those states is procured the greater part of the cereals, the wool, the cotton, the sugar, the tobacco, the hay, the pork, and the beef produced in the United States.

The Eastern zone is preëminently the land of the loom, the foundry, the mill, the workshop. Here are the great coal-fields which supply the power that carries on the vast manufacturing interests of the United States.

The region of the Rocky Mountains, the Sierra Nevada, and the Pacific coast, is the treasure-house of the precious metals. Here is what President Grant called the "strong box" of the United States. The United States furnishes the greater part of the gold and silver of the world.

We must now glance at the **distribution** of products. This is the business of commerce, and commerce is of two sorts, foreign and domestic.

In the three quarters of a century, from the formation of the government to the breaking out of the war in 1861, the United States had become the successful rival of the most powerful commercial nation in the world,—England. In 1860, the amount of American tonnage was nearly six millions. The value of exports and imports carried in American vessels, in

the year 1860, was over five hundred million dollars. One of the results of the war was to reduce the American commercial marine very much, and since 1861 English ships have done a large part of the American "carrying trade." Meantime the *domestic* trade of the United States has reached immense proportions, and is constantly increasing.

The century has witnessed remarkable **intellectual progress**. The sure foundation of this is the American common-school system, which is established in nearly all the states, and which, with the Prussian system, is the best and broadest educational organization in the world. There are now over thirteen million children attending the public schools of the United States. Our country has over four hundred colleges and universities.

During colonial times, Americans were almost entirely dependent on the mother country for intellectual food. This state of things continued for many years after the founding of the government. It used, accordingly, to be sneeringly asked, "Who reads an American book?" This question would not now be asked; or, if it were, it would be answered highly to the credit of the United States. During the past fifty years, **American authors** of great merit, in all branches of literature and science, have arisen, and their works are read and appreciated throughout the civilized world.

Among **historians** may be named Prescott, Bancroft, Parkman, Fiske, and Motley. Among **poets** may be named Bryant, Whittier, Poe, Lowell, Whitman, and Longfellow. Among **romance** and **miscellaneous writers** may be named Cooper, Hawthorne, Irving, Emerson, Holmes. Among **orators** may be named Webster, Clay, Calhoun, Benton, Everett, Phillips, Seward, Prentice, Stephens, Douglas, Choate. In the **fine arts**, also, the American school of painters and sculptors stands very high.

The **newspaper** is the **people's library**. Americans are pre-eminently a newspaper-reading people. It is reckoned that there are over seven thousand different newspapers and periodicals published in the United States. Some of these have an immense circulation. The "ten-cylinder" printing-press — another American invention — prints thirty thousand sheets an hour.

Nor has **moral progress** been behind intellectual growth. Thousands of churches minister to the spiritual wants of the people. Missionary and Bible societies do their work on a grand scale. Benevolent institutions of all kinds, as orphan asylums, hospitals, etc., are scattered throughout the length and breadth of the land.

The great **Civil War**, though terrible in its effects, has not been without some good results. The extinction of slavery is already proving a benefit to the people of the South, while it has taken away the long-standing subject of political dispute between the two great sections of the Union.

Another benefit of the war is, that it has brought the two sections, North and South, to understand each other better and respect each other more than they ever did before. The war has also made Americans less puffed up and sensational than formerly, and has given a more earnest and manly cast to the American character.

It must not be supposed, from what has been said, that American institutions and the American people are without faults. They have many, and these the young who are growing up to take the places of their fathers should endeavor to correct and reform. But, on the whole, it may be said that no people are more just, upright, prosperous, and happy than the Americans.

The century has seen the **Union** shaken by many storms, and

for a time, convulsed by a great civil war. But the Union has been preserved. And, whatever temporary dissatisfactions may exist, the love of the Union is in the very heart of the whole American people. This is the best assurance of its perpetuity.

The study of United States history should infuse into our minds the **American spirit**, which is as broad as the continent. It should inspire us with fraternal feelings toward all sections, with love for the Union, reverence for the Constitution, and faith in our country's destiny.



CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES AND DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE



For Reading and Reference :

CONSTITUTION¹

WE the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.²

ARTICLE I

Section 1. All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

Section 2. 1 The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors³ in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

2 No person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

3 Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years,⁴ and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other persons.⁵

¹ This copy of the Constitution follows literally, in text and punctuation, the Rolls in the Department of State at Washington.

² See page 191.

³ Voters.

⁴ *Persons bound to service* ; that is, apprentices.

⁵ *Three fifths of all other persons* ; this refers to slaves. See 13th Amendment, page 366.

The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct.¹ The number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

4 When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

5 The House of Representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.²

Section 3. 1 The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.³

2 Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one third may be chosen every second year; ⁴ and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the Legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

3 No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

4 The Vice President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

5 The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president *pro*

¹ The first general census of the United States was taken in the year 1790.

² To *impeach* a public officer is to formally accuse him of official misconduct. See the sixth paragraph of the next Section.

³ This provision for the equality of the states was copied from the practice of the States-General of Holland.

⁴ This was to prevent any but gradual changes in the membership and character of the Senate

tempore,¹ in the absence of the Vice President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

6 The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the chief-justice shall preside: and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two thirds of the members present.

7 Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend farther than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust or profit under the United States: but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment and punishment, according to law.

Section 4. 1 The times, places and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by law make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

2 The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

Section 5. 1 Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum² to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties as each house may provide.

2 Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two thirds, expel a member.

3 Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question shall, at the desire of one fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

4 Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

Section 6. 1 The senators and representatives shall receive a compensa-

¹ *pro tempore* = for the time being. The president *pro tempore* is chosen for reasons of precaution and convenience.

² *quorum* = the number necessary to the transaction of business.

tion for their services, to be ascertained by law,¹ and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall in all cases, except treason, felony and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

2 No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

Section 7. 1 All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

2 Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his objections to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such reconsideration two thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

3 Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

¹ *to be ascertained by law*; that is, by Congress, with the approval of the President.

Section 8. The Congress shall have power¹

1 To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States ; but all duties, imposts and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States ;

2 To borrow money on the credit of the United States ;

3 To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes ;

4 To establish an uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States ;

5 To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures ;

6 To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States ;

7 To establish post-offices and post-roads ;

8 To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries ;

9 To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court ;

10 To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations ;

11 To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water ;

12 To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years ;

13 To provide and maintain a navy ;

14 To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces ;

15 To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections and repel invasions ;

16 To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress ;

17 To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever, over such district² (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular

¹ This Section of eighteen paragraphs enumerates the specific powers that are granted to Congress.

² The District of Columbia is governed under these provisions.

States and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the Legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings ; and

18 To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

Section 9.¹ 1 The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.²

2 The privilege of the writ of *habeas corpus*³ shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

3 No bill of attainder⁴ or *ex post facto* law⁵ shall be passed.

4 No capitation, or other direct, tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

5 No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.

6 No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another: nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

7 No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law ; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

8 No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States : and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the con-

¹ This Section enumerates in eight paragraphs the specific powers that are denied to the United States.

² This refers to the slave trade. (See, also, Article V., page 361.)

³ The writ of *habeas corpus* is intended to guard against false imprisonment, and against trial before a prejudiced court.

⁴ A *bill of attainder* is an arbitrary procedure, inflicting death for treason, without trial. (See Article III., Section 3, page 360.)

⁵ An *ex post facto* law (literally, "by a thing done afterward") is one which makes an act punishable which was not punishable at the time it was committed.

sent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

Section 10.¹ 1 No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation ; grant letters of marque and reprisal ; coin money ; emit bills of credit ; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts ; pass any bill of attainder, *ex post facto* law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts ; or grant any title of nobility.

2 No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws : and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States ; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

3 No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops, or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II

Section 1. 1 The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows

2 Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress : but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

[The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each ; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President,

¹ This Section enumerates in three paragraphs the powers specifically denied to the states. (Compare Article X. of the Amendments, page 364.)

if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed ; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for President ; and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list the said House shall in like manner choose the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote ; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the Vice President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them by ballot the Vice President.]¹

3 The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes ; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

4 No person except a natural-born citizen, or a citizen of the United States, at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President ; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

5 In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice President, and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation or inability, both of the President and Vice President, declaring what officer shall then act as President, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

6 The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services, a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

7 Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation : —

“ I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States.”

Section 2. 1 The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and

¹ Superseded by the 12th Amendment. See p. 365.

navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

2 He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate,¹ to make treaties, provided two thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law: but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

3 The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

Section 3. He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

Section 4. The President, Vice President and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

ARTICLE III

Section 1. The judicial power of the United States, shall be vested in one supreme Court, and in such inferior Courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior Courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at

¹ This check upon the power of the executive was incorporated in the charters given by Penn to Pennsylvania and Delaware. He derived the idea from the system that had prevailed in Holland for more than two centuries.

stated times, receive for their services, a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

Section 2. 1 The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority ; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls ; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction ; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party ; to controversies between two or more States ; between a State and citizens of another State ;¹ between citizens of different States ; between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States ; and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens or subjects.

2 In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a State shall be party, the Supreme Court shall have original² jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate² jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

3 The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury ; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed ; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

Section 3. 1 Treason against the United States, shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

2 The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood,³ or forfeiture except during the life of the person attainted.

ARTICLE IV

Section 1. Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

Section 2. 1 The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

¹ Altered by the 11th Amendment. See page 365.

² *original jurisdiction . . . appellate jurisdiction.* See WEBSTER'S DICTIONARY.

³ *corruption of blood.* See WEBSTER'S DICTIONARY.

2 A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

3 No person held to service or labor¹ in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

Section 3. 1 New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union ; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State ; nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

2 The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States ; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

Section 4. The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion ; and on application of the Legislature, or of the executive (when the Legislature cannot be convened), against domestic violence.

ARTICLE V

The Congress, whenever two thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the Legislatures of two thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress ; provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first Article ; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

¹ This originally included fugitive slaves. See 13th Amendment, page 366.

ARTICLE VI

1 All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

2 This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

3 The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

ARTICLE VII

The ratification of the conventions of nine States, shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

Done in Convention by the unanimous consent of the States present the seventeenth day of September in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eight-seven and of the Independence of the United States of America the twelfth. In witness whereof we have hereunto subscribed our names.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, *President and Deputy from Virginia.*

New Hampshire. — John Langdon, Nicholas Gilman.

Massachusetts. — Nathaniel Gorham, Rufus King.

Connecticut. — William Samuel Johnson, Roger Sherman.

New York. — Alexander Hamilton.

New Jersey. — William Livingston, William Paterson, David Brearley, Jonathan Dayton.

Pennsylvania. — Benjamin Franklin, Robert Morris, Thomas Fitzsimons, James Wilson, Thomas Mifflin, George Clymer, Jared Ingersoll, Gouverneur Morris.

Delaware. — George Read, John Dickinson, Jacob Broom, Gunning Bedford, Jr., Richard Bassett.

Maryland. — James M'Henry, Daniel Carroll, Daniel of St. Thomas Jenifer.

Virginia. — John Blair, James Madison, Jr.

North Carolina. — William Blount, Hugh Williamson, Richard Dobbs Spaight.

South Carolina. — John Rutledge, Charles Pinckney, Charles Cotesworth Pinckney, Pierce Butler.

Georgia. — William Few, Abraham Baldwin.

Attest, WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

ARTICLES

*In addition to, and amendment of, the Constitution of the United States*¹

ARTICLE I

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof ; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press ; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

ARTICLE II

A well-regulated militia, being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms, shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE III

No soldier shall, in time of peace be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ARTICLE IV

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

¹ The first ten of these Amendments were adopted in the years 1789-1791. They were framed to satisfy those states—especially Massachusetts, New York, and Virginia—whose people thought that the Constitution had not sufficiently guaranteed certain primary rights.

ARTICLE V

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in active service in time of war or public danger ; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb ; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law ; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

ARTICLE VI

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation ; to be confronted with the witnesses against him ; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.¹

ARTICLE VII

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury, shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

ARTICLE VIII

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

ARTICLE IX

The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

ARTICLE X

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

¹ These guaranties of the rights of accused persons were modeled upon the similar clauses in the charters granted by Penn in 1701.

ARTICLE XI¹

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

ARTICLE XII²

The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate;—The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted;—The person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President.

The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice President, shall be the Vice President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice President;

¹ Adopted in 1798.

² This article, adopted in 1804, supersedes the second paragraph of Section 1, Article II. of the Constitution.

a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice President of the United States.

ARTICLE XIII¹

1 Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

2 Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

ARTICLE XIV²

1 All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

2 Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice President of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

3 No person shall be a senator or representative in Congress, or elector of President or Vice President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States,

¹ Adopted in 1865.

² Adopted in 1868.

shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two thirds of each house, remove such disability.

4 The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

5 The Congress shall have power to enforce by appropriate legislation the provisions of this article.

ARTICLE XV¹

1 The right of the citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or any State on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

2 The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE

IN CONGRESS, JULY 4, 1776.²

A DECLARATION BY THE REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, IN CONGRESS ASSEMBLED

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

¹ Adopted in 1870.

² More than one hundred successive anniversaries of this day have been celebrated by the American people with rejoicings and festivities. In the early years of our Republic, when the Revolutionary struggle was a living memory, when American liberties were new, and while the United States were feeble among the powers of the earth, the great fact of Independence was uppermost in the minds of all patriots on "Independence Day." Now that

We hold these truths to be self-evident:—That all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate, that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and accordingly all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these Colonies; and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world.

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature,—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfort-

we have become a cosmopolitan people, of twice England's numbers, and with a greater average of intelligence and wealth than any other nation, the celebration of Independence alone would be grotesque if it were not obsolete. The greater fact that we now commemorate with joyful demonstrations on the Fourth of July is the establishment here of a government "deriving its powers from the consent of the governed"—the first great democracy in the history of the world.

able, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large, for their exercise, the State remaining, in the mean time, exposed to all the dangers of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose, obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners, refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers, to harass our people, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislatures.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined with others¹ to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation, —

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States:

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world:

For imposing taxes on us without our consent:

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury:

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences:

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these Colonies:

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the forms of our governments:

¹ Referring, of course, to the British Parliament.

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries, to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections against us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity; and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace friends.

We, therefore, the Representatives of the United States of America, in General Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these Colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, con-

tract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent states may of right do. And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

JOHN HANCOCK.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

Josiah Bartlett,
William Whipple,
Matthew Thornton.

MASSACHUSETTS BAY.

Samuel Adams,
John Adams,
Robert Treat Paine,
Elbridge Gerry,
John Hart,
Abraham Clark.

PENNSYLVANIA.

Robert Morris,
Benjamin Rush,
Benjamin Franklin,
John Morton,
George Clymer,
James Smith,
George Taylor,
James Wilson,
George Ross.

DELAWARE.

Cesar Rodney,

George Read,
Thomas M'Kean.

RHODE ISLAND.

Stephen Hopkins,
William Ellery.

CONNECTICUT.

Roger Sherman,
Samuel Huntington,
William Williams,
Oliver Wolcott.

MARYLAND.

Samuel Chase,
William Paca,
Thomas Stone,
Charles Carroll, of Carrollton.

VIRGINIA.

George Wythe,
Richard Henry Lee,
Thomas Jefferson,
Benjamin Harrison,
Thomas Nelson, Jr.,
Francis Lightfoot Lee,
Carter Braxton.

NEW YORK.

William Floyd,
Philip Livingston,
Francis Lewis,
Lewis Morris.

NEW JERSEY.

Richard Stockton,
John Witherspoon,
Francis Hopkinson.

NORTH CAROLINA.

William Hooper,
Joseph Hewes,
John Penn.

SOUTH CAROLINA.

Edward Rutledge,
Thomas Heyward, Jr.,
Thomas Lynch, Jr.,
Arthur Middleton.

GEORGIA.

Button Gwinnett,
Lyman Hall,
George Walton.

AREAS, SETTLEMENT, AND ADMISSION OF THE STATES

States	Areas, Sq. Miles	When, Where, and by Whom Settled			Admitted	Population by Census of 1890
Virginia,	42,450	1607	Jamestown,	English,	The thirteen original states.	1,655,980
New York,	49,170	1614	New York,	Dutch,		5,997,853
Massachusetts,	8,315	1620	Plymouth,	English,		2,238,943
New Hampshire,	9,305	1623	Portsmouth,	English,		376,530
Connecticut,	4,990	1633	Windsor,	English,		746,258
Maryland,	12,210	1634	St. Marys,	English,		1,042,390
Rhode Island,	1,250	1636	Providence,	English,		345,506
Delaware,	2,050	1638	Wilmington,	Swedes,		168,493
North Carolina,	52,250	1663	Albemarle Sound,	English,		1,617,947
New Jersey,	7,815	1664	Elizabeth,	English,		1,444,933
South Carolina,	30,570	1670	Ashley River,	English,		1,151,149
Pennsylvania,	45,215	1682	Philadelphia,	English,		5,258,014
Georgia,	59,475	1733	Savannah,	English,		1,837,353
Vermont,	9,565	1724	Brattleboro,	English,		1791 332,422
Kentucky,	40,400	1774	Harrodsburg,	English,		1792 1,858,635
Tennessee,	42,050	1768	Watauga River,	English,		1796 1,767,518
Ohio,	41,060	1788	Marietta,	Americans,		1803 3,672,316
Louisiana,	48,720	1699	Biloxi,	French,		1812 1,118,587
Indiana,	36,350	1779	Vincennes,	French,		1816 2,192,404
Mississippi,	46,810	1699	Biloxi,	French,		1817 1,289,600
Illinois,	56,650	1693	Kaskaskia,	French,		1818 3,826,351
Alabama,	52,250	1702	Mobile Bay,	French,		1819 1,513,017
Maine,	33,040	1625	Bristol,	English,		1820 661,086
Missouri,	69,415	1755	St. Genevieve,	French,		1821 2,679,184
Arkansas,	53,850	1685	Arkansas Post,	French,		1836 1,128,179
Michigan,	58,915	1701	Detroit,	French,		1837 2,093,889
Florida,	58,680	1565	St. Augustine,	Spaniards,		1845 391,422
Texas,	265,780	1685	Matagorda Bay,	Spaniards,		1845 2,235,523
Iowa,	56,025	1833	Dubuque,	French,		1846 1,911,896
Wisconsin,	56,040	1745	Green Bay,	French,		1848 1,686,880
California,	158,360	1769	San Diego,	Spaniards,		1850 1,208,130
Minnesota,	83,365	1838	St. Paul,	Americans,		1858 1,301,826
Oregon,	96,030	1811	Astoria,	Americans,		1859 313,767
Kansas,	82,080	1854	Leavenworth,	Americans,		1861 1,427,096
West Virginia,	24,780	1764	Upshur Co.,	Americans,		1863 762,794
Nevada,	110,700	1850	Genoa,	Americans,	1864 45,761	
Nebraska,	77,510	1847	Bellevue,	Americans,	1867 1,058,910	
Colorado,	103,925	1859	Denver,	Americans,	1876 412,198	
North Dakota,	70,795	1812	Pembino,	English,	1889 182,719	
South Dakota,	77,650	1859	S. E. part,	Americans,	1889 328,808	
Washington,	69,180	1811	Columbia River,	Eng. & Am.,	1889 349,390	
Montana,	146,080	1809	Yellowstone Riv.,	Americans,	1889 132,159	
Idaho,	84,800	1842	Cœur de Alène,	Americans,	1890 84,385	
Wyoming,	97,890	1867	Cheyenne,	Americans,	1890 60,705	
Dist. of Columbia,	70					230,392

The territories of Utah, New Mexico, Arizona, Oklahoma, and Indian Territory have an area of 391,000 square miles. The area of Alaska is 577,390 square miles.

INDEX

The numbers refer to pages.

- Abercrombie, General, 126, 127.
Abolitionists, 244.
Acadia, 116, 117.
Adams, John, commissioner for U. S., 189.
 administration of, 200-202.
 death of, 221.
Adams, John Quincy, administration of, 221, 222.
Agriculture, establishment of Department of, 301.
Aix-la-Chapelle, treaty of, 119.
Alabama, Confederate cruiser, 279.
Alabama admitted into Union, 219.
 secession of, 244.
 readmission of, 291.
 history of, 323.
Alarcon, expedition of, 40.
Alaska, bought from Russia, 291.
Albany, founding of, 83.
Albemarle, destruction of, 280.
Albemarle Colony, 100.
Algiers, war with, 218.
Alien and sedition laws, 202, 203.
Allen, Ethau, 159.
Amendment to the Constitution, fourteenth, 289.
 thirteenth, 289.
 fifteenth, 292.
America, 400 years ago, condition of, 11.
 naming of, 34.
 first colony in, 36.
 poets, historians, orators, and writers of, 347.
Americus Vespucius, 34.
Amherst, General, 126.
Amidas and Barlow, expedition of, 45.
Amnesty, proclamation of, 288.
Anderson, Major Robert, 247.
André, Major, 186.
Andros, Governor, 68, 86.
Anniversaries, Columbian, 304, 305.
Antietam, battle of, 264, 265.
Anti-Federalists, 191.
Appomattox Court-House, surrender of General Lee at, 282.
Areas, settlement, and admission of states, 372.
Arkansas, admitted into Union, 225.
 secession of, 249.
 readmission of, 291.
 history of, 325.
Arnold, Benedict, 162, 185, 186.
Arthur, Chester A., administration of, 298, 299.
Articles of Confederation, 174, 190.
Astoria, settlement of, 228, 331, 335.
Atlanta, burning of, 278.
Atlantic Cable, 291, 344, 345.
Averysboro, battle near, 280.
Ayllon, de, voyage to South Carolina, 37.
Bacon's Rebellion, 60.
Balboa, discovery of Pacific Ocean by, 36.
Balls Bluff, battle of, 253.
Baltimore, attack on, 216, 217.
Bank of U. S., 198, 218.
Banks, General, 262, 271, 279.
Baum, Colonel, 172.
Beauregard, General, 247, 251, 253, 258.
Bell, presidential candidate in 1860, 243.

- Belmont, battle of, 253.
 Bemis Heights, battles of, 173.
 Bennington, battle of, 172.
 Bentonville, battle of, 280.
 Bering Sea, seal fisheries in, 303.
 Berkeley, Lord, 89.
 Beverly, battle of, 251.
 Big Bethel, battle of, 251.
 Biloxi, Miss., settled, 118.
 Black Hawk War, 223.
 Bladensburg, encounter at, 216.
 Block, A., Dutch navigator, 138, 139.
 Boone, Daniel, 320.
 Boonesboro, founding of, 320.
 Booth, John Wilkes, 283.
 Boston, settlement of, 67.
 great colonial center, 131-136.
 massacre at, 155.
 siege of, 163.
 Braddock, General, 122-124.
 Bragg, General, 259, 260, 269.
 Brandywine, battle of, 170.
 Breckinridge, presidential candidate
 in 1860, 243.
 Breeds Hill, battle of, 159.
 Brown, John, raid of, 242, 243.
 Buchanan, James, administration of,
 237.
 Buell, General, 257-260, 270.
 Buena Vista, battle of, 231.
 Bull Run, battles of, 251, 252, 264.
 Bunker Hill, battle of, 159, 160.
 Burgoyne, General, 159, 171-173.
 surrender of, 173.
 Burke, Edmund, 153.
 Burnside, General Ambrose E., 265,
 267.
 Burr, Aaron, 204.
 Butler, General, 249, 251, 254, 265,
 274.
 Cable, Atlantic, 291, 344, 345.
 Cabot, John, 33, 34.
 Sebastian, 33, 34.
 Cabrillo, explorations of, 40.
 Calhoun, John C., 221, 235.
 California, exploration of, 40 and n. 3.
 conquest of, 231, 232.
 discovery of gold in, 234.
 admitted into Union, 235.
 history of, 331-334.
 Calvert, Benedict, 99.
 Cecil, 97.
 Charles, 98.
 George, 97.
 Leonard, 97.
 Canada, French in, 113-117.
 invasion of, 162.
 Cape Breton, discovery of, 34.
 Carlisle, capture of, 269.
 Carolinas, the, 102.
 Carricks Ford, battle of, 251.
 Carteret, Sir George, 89.
 Carteret colony, 100.
 Carthage, battle of, 253.
 Cartier, explorations of, 41.
 Carver, John, 64.
 Cedar Creek, battle of, 276.
 Cedar Mountain, battle of, 264.
 Census, ninth, 293.
 tenth, 297.
 eleventh, 303.
 Centers, three colonial, 131-147.
 Central America, explorations in, 32.
 Century of progress, 342-349.
 Cerro Gordo, storming of, 233.
 Chads Ford, battle of, 170.
 Chambersburg, burning of, 275.
 Champlain, discoveries and settlements
 of, 43.
 Chancellorsville, battle of, 268.
 Chantilly, battle of, 264.
 Chapultepec, battle of, 233.
 Charleston, attack on, 104.
 siege of, 163, 164.
 British march against, 178.
 siege of, 181.
 evacuated by British, 189.
 evacuated by Confederates, 280.
 Charter Oak, 74, 75.
 Chattanooga, battle of, 259.
 Cherry Valley, massacre of, 177.
 Chesapeake Bay, British in, 214.
Chesapeake, capture of, 214.
 Chicago fire, 293.
 founding of, 311.
 Chickamauga, battle of, 271.
 Chinese immigration, 296.
 Chippewa, battle of, 215.
 Churubusco, battle of, 233.
 Cincinnati, founding of, 308.

- Civil Service Reform, extension of, 304.
 Civil War, English, 59.
 Civil War, 240-283.
 causes of, 240-244.
 events of 1861, 245-249.
 campaign of 1861, 249-255.
 campaign of 1862, 255-267.
 campaign of 1863, 267-272.
 campaign of 1864, 273-280.
 final campaign of, 280-282.
 end of, 282, 283.
 Clarendon Colony, 100.
 Clay, Henry, 222, 224, 235.
 Clayborne, rebellion of, 98.
 Cleveland, Grover, first administration of, 299-301.
 second administration of, 304, 305.
 Clinton, General, 159, 163, 165, 169, 172, 174, 176, 177, 178, 181, 182, 185, 186, 187.
 Cold Harbor, battle of, 273.
 Cognign, 42.
 Colonial centers, three, 131-147.
 governments, 109.
 progress, 111, 112.
 Colonial Congress, First, 152.
 Colonies, history of, 53-147.
 Colorado, admitted into Union, 294.
 history of, 337, 338.
 Columbia, burning of, 280.
 Columbian anniversaries, 304, 305.
 Exhibition, 305.
 Columbia River, exploration of, 228, 331, 335.
 Columbus, capture of, 257, 258.
 Columbus, Christopher, 25-32.
 Commerce, interstate, 301.
 Compromise Bill, 235.
 Missouri, 220, 236, 241, 242.
 Concord Bridge, battle of, 158.
 Confederation, Articles of, 174, 190.
 Confederate States of America, 245.
 Congress, First Colonial, 152.
 First Continental, 156, 157.
 Second Continental, 161.
 Connecticut, founding and settlement of, 71-76.
 kinds of government in, 110.
 Constitution of the U. S., 190, 191, 198, 351-367.
 Constitution, capture of *Java* by, 211.
 capture of *Guerrière* by, 211.
 Constitutional Convention, 190.
 period, 197-349.
 Continental Congress, First, 156, 157.
 Second, 161.
 Contreras, battle of, 233.
 Convention, Constitutional, 190.
 Hartford, 217.
 Conway Cabal, 174.
 Copyright law, international, 302.
 Cordova, voyage and explorations of, 37.
 Corinth, evacuation of, 258.
 Cornwallis, Lord, 166, 167, 168, 182, 183, 184, 187, 188.
 Coronado, explorations of, 39.
 Cortes, voyage to Mexico, 37.
 Cotton-gin, invention of, 343.
 Cowpens, battle of, 183.
 Creek and Seminole War, 213, 214.
 Crown Point, capture of, 127, 159, 172.
 Cuba, 39.
 Culpeper, Lord, 58.
 Da Gama, Vasco, 26 n.
 Dakotas, 317, 318.
 Dallas, battle of, 276.
 Davis, Jefferson, 245 and n. 1, 283.
 Deane, Silas, 175.
 De Ayllon, voyage to South Carolina, 37.
 Debt, public, 289.
 Declaration of Independence, 164, 367-371; at Mecklenburg, 162.
 of Rights, 152.
 D'Estaing, Count, 176, 177, 179.
 De Grasse, Count, 188.
 De Gourgues, 42.
 De Kalb, 176.
 Delaware, founding and people of, 96.
 kinds of government in, 111.
 Delaware River, crossing of, 166, 167.
 Democrats, 207, 222, 225, 228, 235, 237, 299, 304.
 De Monts, 42.
 Denys, explorations of, 41.
 De Soto, 38.
 De Ternay, Admiral, 185.
 Detroit, capture of, 210.
 recovery of, 212, 213.

- Dieskau, Baron, 125.
 Dinwiddie, Governor, 120.
 Discoveries, period of, 24-49.
 District of Columbia, 199.
 Dorr's Rebellion, 227.
 Douglas, presidential candidate in
 1860, 243.
 Dover, settlement of, 79.
 Draft riot, 272.
 Drake, Sir Francis, 44.
 Dred Scott decision, 242.
 Dutch, explorations of, 48.
 in Connecticut, 72.
 Dutch West India Company, 83.
 Early, General, 275.
 East India Company, 156.
 Edwards, Jonathan, 112.
 Emancipation proclamation, 267.
 Embargo Act, issued, 206.
 repealed, 207.
 Endicott, John, 66.
 English and Dutch discoveries, 43-49.
 English civil wars, 59.
 Ericsson, Captain, 266.
 Espejo, explorations and settlements
 of, 40.
Essex, capture of *Alert* by, 210.
 Eutaw Springs, battle of, 184.
 Exhibition, World's Columbian, 305.
 Exposition, International, 294.
 Fair Oaks, battle of, 262.
 Farragut, Admiral, 265, 266, 279.
 Federalists, 191, 199, 200, 206, 207.
 Fernandina, capture of, 267.
 Field, Cyrus W., 291, 345.
 Fillmore, Millard, administration of,
 235.
 First charter of Virginia, 55.
 Fishery question, 296, 301.
 Five Forks, battle of, 281.
 Five Nations, 88.
 Florida, discovery and naming of, 37.
 admitted into Union, 234.
 secedes from Union, 244.
 history of, 327, 328.
 Florida War, 224, 225.
 Foote, Commodore, 257.
 Fort Crown Point, 127, 159, 172.
 Fort Donelson, surrender of, 257.
 Fort Duquesne, battle near, 124.
 Fort Edward, battle of, 125.
 Fort Erie, capture of, 214, 215.
 Fort Fisher, capture of, 279.
 Fort Frontenac, capture of, 127.
 Fort George, capture of, 213.
 Fort Henry, surrender of, 257.
 Fort Macon, surrender of, 267.
 Fort McAllister, capture of, 278.
 Fort McHenry, attack on, 217.
 Fort Mercer, surrender of, 171.
 Fort Mifflin, surrender of, 171.
 Fort Mims, capture of, 213.
 Fort Moultrie, attack on, 163.
 Fort Necessity, surrender of, 122.
 Fort Niagara, capture of, 127.
 Fort Pillow, capture of, 259, 278.
 Fort Pulaski, surrender of, 267.
 Fort Schuyler, siege of, 173.
 Fort Steadman, capture of, 281.
 Fort Sumter, evacuation of, 247, 248.
 Fort Ticonderoga, 127, 159, 172.
 Fort Washington, capture of, 166.
 Fort William Henry, 126.
 Franklin, battle of, 277.
 Franklin, Benjamin, 112, 122, 147, 175,
 189.
 Fredericksburg, battle of, 265.
 Fremont, John C., 231, 232, 262, 263.
 Frenchtown, battle of, 211, 212.
 French and Indian War, 120-129.
 causes of, 120.
 Washington's first campaign, 121,
 122.
 treaty with Indians, 122.
 campaign of 1755, 122-125.
 attack on Acadia, 123.
 campaign of 1756-1757, 125, 126.
 campaign of 1758, 126-128.
 close of, 128.
 Pontiac's attack, 128.
 treaty of Paris, 129.
 French discoveries, 41-43.
 French possessions in the West, 118.
 settlements, 118.
 wars, 113-129.
Frolic, capture of, 211.
 Fugitive Slave Act, 242.
 Gadsden Purchase, 235, 236.
 Gage, General, 155-159.
 Gaines Mill, battle of, 263.

- Garfield, James A., administration of, 297, 298.
 assassination of, 297, 298.
 Gates, General, 173, 182.
 Georgia, founding of, 106, 107.
 kinds of government in, 111.
 secession of, 244.
 readmission of, 291.
 Germantown, battle of, 170.
 Gettysburg, battle of, 269.
 Ghent, treaty of, 218.
 Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 44.
 Glendale, battle of, 263.
 Gold, discovery of, in California, 234, 333.
 Gosnold, Bartholomew, 46.
 Grand Model, 101.
 Grant, General Ulysses S., 253, 257, 258, 260, 269-276, 280-282.
 administration of, 292-294.
 reëlection of, 293.
 Great Meadows, battle of, 121.
 Greene, General Nathanael, 182-184.
 Grijalva, expedition of, 37.
 Guadaloupe Hidalgo, treaty of, 233.
Guerrière, capture of, 211.
 Guilford Court-House, battle of, 183.
 Haiti, discovery of, 30.
 Hamilton, Alexander, 198, 204.
 Hancock, John, 154.
 Harpers Ferry, surrender of, 264.
 Harrison, Benjamin, administration of, 302-304.
 Harrison, William H., administration of, 226.
 Hartford, founding of, 72.
 Convention, 217.
 Hatteras Inlet, capture of forts at, 254.
 Hayes, Rutherford B., administration of, 295-297.
 Hennepin, Father, 114.
 Henry, Patrick, 151, 161.
 Hessians, 167 and n. 1.
 Historians of America, 347.
 History of the colonies, 53-147.
 Hobkirks Hill, battle of, 184.
 Hood, General, 276-278.
 Hooker, General Joseph, 267, 268, 271.
Hornet, capture of *Peacock* by, 214.
 Horseshoe Bend, battle of, 214.
 Howe, Admiral, 165.
 Howe, General, 159, 160, 163, 165, 166, 169, 170.
 Hudson, Henry, voyage to America, 48.
 Hudson River, discovery of, 48.
 Huguenots in South Carolina, 103.
 Hull, General, invades Canada, 210.
 surrender of, 210.
 Idaho, admitted into Union, 302.
 history of, 339, 340.
 Illinois, admitted into Union, 219.
 history of, 311.
 Independence, Declaration of, 164, 367-371.
 Indiana, admitted into Union, 218.
 history of, 310.
 Indians, early, 13.
 appearance, dress, occupations, character, weapons of, etc., 13-16.
 naming of, 30.
 divisions of, 48.
 relations with white people, 49.
 International American Conference, 303.
 copyright law, 302.
 Exposition, 294.
 Interstate Commerce Commission, 301.
 Introduction, 11-23.
 Inventions, 343-346.
 Iowa admitted into Union, 234.
 history of, 313.
 Isabella, queen of Spain, 28.
 Island No. 10, capture of, 259.
 Jackson, Andrew, administration of, 222-225.
 Jackson, "Stonewall," 262, 263, 264, 268.
 Jamaica, explored, 31.
 Jamestown, planting of, 47.
 settling of, 54.
 government of, 54, 55.
 first charter of, 55.
 second charter of, 56.
 Lord Delaware governor of, 56.
 starving time, 56.
 third charter of, 57.
 boroughs, 57.
 First Representative Assembly, 57.

- Java*, capture of, 211.
 Jay, John, 189.
 Jefferson, Thomas, Declaration of Independence written by, 164.
 administration of, 202-206.
 death of, 221.
 Jesuit missionaries, 114.
 Johnson, Andrew, administration of, 288, 291.
 impeachment of, 291.
 Johnston, General A. S., 255-258.
 Johnston, General J. E., 251, 261, 262, 270, 276, 280-282.
 Joliet, 114.
 Jones, Paul, 180.
 Kansas, admitted into Union, 287.
 struggle in, 242.
 history of, 315, 316.
 Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 236.
 Kearny, General, 229, 231, 264.
Kearsarge, sinking of *Alabama* by, 279.
 Kenesaw Mountain, battle of, 276.
 Kentucky, Bragg's invasion of, 259.
 admitted into Union, 199.
 history of, 319, 320.
 Kettle Creek, battle of, 178.
 Kieft, Governor, 139.
 King George's War, 113, 119.
 King Philip's War, 69, 70.
 King William's War, 113, 115, 116.
 Kings Mountain, battle of, 182.
 Knoxville, battle of, 272.
 Kosciusko, 176.
 Lafayette, 170, 187, 220.
 Lake Champlain, discovery of, 43.
 expedition against, 126.
 battle of, 215.
 Lake Erie, battle of, 212.
 Lake George, battle of, 125.
 La Salle, 114, 115.
 Laurens, Henry, 189.
 Lee, Charles, 166, 167.
 Richard Henry, 164.
 Robert E., 262-264, 267-269, 275, 281, 282.
 Lewis and Clarke, explorations of, 228, 331, 335.
 Lexington, skirmish at, 158, 159.
 Lincoln, Abraham, election of, 243, 244.
 Lincoln, Abraham, administration of, 246-282.
 reëlection of, 280.
 assassination of, 282, 283.
 Lincoln, General, 177-179.
 London Company, 46, 47, 54, 58.
 Long Island, battle of, 165.
 Longstreet, General, 272.
 Lookout Mountain, battle of, 271.
 Lord Baltimore, 97.
 Lord Delaware, 56.
 Louisburg captured by British, 119.
 expedition against, 126.
 Louisiana purchased from France, 203.
 admitted into Union, 211.
 secession of, 244.
 readmission of, 291.
 history of, 321, 322.
 Louisville, retreat to, 259.
 Lundys Lane, battle of, 215.
 Madison, James, administration of, 207-218.
 Magellan circumnavigates globe, 38.
 Magruder, General, 251.
 Maine, founding of, 81.
 admitted into Union, 220.
 settlement of boundary of, 227.
 Malvern Hill, battle of, 263.
 Manassas, first battle of, 252.
 second battle of, 264.
 Manhattan Island, settlement of, 83.
 Marion and Sumter, 182, 184.
 Marquette, Father, 114.
 Maryland, founding of, 97.
 troubles in, 98, 99.
 progress in, 99.
 kinds of government in, 110.
 Mason, John, 73.
 Mason and Dixon's line, 95.
 Mason and Slidell, 255.
 Massachusetts Bay Colony, charters and government of, 66-68.
 religious troubles in, 68, 69.
 united with Plymouth Colony, 69.
 Massachusetts, kinds of government in, 109.
 Matamoras, capture of, 229.
 Maximilian, 290.
Mayflower, voyage in, 64.

- McClellan, General G. B., 249, 251, 253, 261-265.
- McDowell, General Irvin, 252, 262, 263.
- Meade, General George G., 268.
- Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence, 162.
- Memphis, capture of, 259.
- Menendez in Florida, 40, 42.
- Merrimac* and *Monitor*, naval battle between, 266, 267.
- Mexican War, 229-233.
cause of, 228.
Taylor's campaign, 229-231.
Kearny's campaign, 231, 232.
Scott's campaign, 232, 233.
treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, 233.
- Mexico, exploration of, 37.
Spanish conquest of, 37.
surrender of, 233.
- Michigan admitted into Union, 225.
history of, 312.
- Milan Decree issued, 206.
repealed, 208.
- Mill Spring, encounter at, 257.
- Mills Bill, 301.
- Minnesota, admitted into Union, 237.
history of, 314, 315.
- Minuit, Peter, 84.
- Missionary Ridge, battle of, 272.
- Mississippi admitted into Union, 219.
secession of, 244.
history of, 322, 323.
- Mississippi Company, 118.
- Mississippi River, discovery of, 38.
opening of, 269, 270.
- Mississippi Valley and Gulf States, 306-329.
- Missouri, admitted into Union, 220.
history of, 324.
- Missouri Compromise, 220, 236, 241, 242.
- Modoc War, 293.
- Molino del Rey, battle of, 233.
- Monitor* and *Merrimac*, naval battle between, 266, 267.
- Monmouth, battle of, 176.
- Monocacy, battle of, 275.
- Monroe, James, administration of, 219, 220.
- Monroe Doctrine, 220.
- Montana, admitted into Union, 302.
history of, 338, 339.
- Montealm, General, 125-128.
- Monterey, siege of, 230.
- Montgomery, General, 162.
- Montreal, surrender of, 162.
expedition to, 213.
- Morgan, General, 183.
- Morris, Robert, 167 n. 2, 186.
- Morristown, Washington at, 186.
- Moultrie, Colonel, 163.
- Mound Builders, 18-20.
- Murfreesboro, battle of, 260.
- Narragansett Indians, 69.
- Narvaez, expedition of, 38.
- Nashville, capture of, 277.
- Navigation Acts, decree of, 60.
effects of, 70.
- Nebraska, admitted into Union, 291.
history of, 316, 317.
- Nevada, admitted into Union, 283.
history of, 336, 337.
- New Amsterdam, founding of, 83.
- Newbern, capture of, 267.
- New England, settlement of, 62-82.
Council for, 63, 65.
- New France, extent of, 113.
- New Hampshire, founding of, 79.
settlements in, 79, 80.
Indian troubles in, 79.
united with Massachusetts, 80.
changes of government in, 80.
kinds of government in, 109.
- New Haven Colony, founding of, 74.
- New Jersey, founding of, 89, 90.
division into East and West Jersey, 90.
government in, 90, 91.
kinds of government in, 110.
evacuated by English, 169.
- New Mexico, conquest of, 231, 232.
- New Netherlands, 48, 83, 84.
- New Orleans, settlement of, 118.
battle of, 217, 218.
surrender of, 266.
- Newport, settlement of, 77.
- New York State, founding of, 83.
New Amsterdam settlement of, 83.
Albany settlement of, 83.
governors of, 84.

- New York State (*continued*).
 English in, 85.
 changes of government in, 86-88.
 kinds of government in, 110.
- New York City — great colonial center,
 137-143.
 evacuated by British, 189.
- Non-Intercourse Act, 207.
- Norfolk, burning of, 161.
- Norsemen, 20-22.
- North Carolina, founding and settle-
 ment of, 100.
 Grand Model of, 101.
 Indian massacre in, 101.
 settlers of, 101.
 kinds of government of, 111.
 secession of, 249.
 readmission of, 291.
- North Dakota, admitted into Union,
 302.
 history of, 318.
- Northwestern States, 306-318.
- Nova Scotia, 117.
- Oglethorpe, James, 106.
- Ohio, admitted into Union, 203.
 history of, 308, 309.
- Okechobee, battle of Lake, 225.
- Oklahoma, settlement of, 302.
- Olustee, battle of, 278.
- Orators of America, 347.
- Oregon, settlement of boundary of,
 228.
 admitted into Union, 237.
 history of, 334-336.
- Osceola, 224.
- Oswego, battle of, 124, 125.
- Pacific Ocean, discovery and naming
 of, 36-38.
- Pacific States, 330-340.
- Palo Alto, battle of, 229.
- Panic of '37, 225, 226.
- Paris, treaty of, (1763) 129, (1783)
 189.
- Patterson, General, 249.
- Paulding, John, 186.
- Paulus Hook, 179.
- Peacock*, capture of, 214.
- Pea Ridge, battle of, 260.
- Peninsula campaign, 261-263.
- Penn, William, 90, 92, 93, 144-146.
- Pennsylvania, founding of, 92.
 treaty with Indians, 93.
 Philadelphia settled, 93.
 government of, 93-95.
 troubles in, 94.
 kinds of government in, 110, 111.
- Pequot War, 73.
- Period of discoveries, 24-49.
 Constitutional, 197-349.
- Perry, Commodore, 212.
- Perryville, battle of, 259.
- Petersburg, siege of, 275.
 evacuation of, 282.
- Philadelphia, settlement of, 93.
 great colonial center, 144-147.
 entered by British, 170.
 evacuation of, 176.
- Philippi, battle of, 251.
- Pierce, Franklin, administration of,
 235-237.
- Pilgrims, 63-65.
- Pitt, William, 126, 153.
- Plains of Abraham, battle of, 128.
- Plattsburg, battle of, 216.
- Pleasant Hill, battle of, 279.
- Plymouth, landing of Pilgrims at, 64.
- Plymouth Colony, founding of, 63.
 government and growth of, 64, 65.
 union with Massachusetts Bay Col-
 ony, 65, 69.
- Plymouth Company, 46, 47, 63.
- Pocahontas, 55 n. 1.
- Poets of America, 347.
- Political campaign of 1856, 242.
- Polk, James K., administration of,
 228-234.
- Ponce de Leon, 37.
- Port Bill, 156.
- Port Hudson, surrender of, 271.
- Port Royal, N.S., settlement of, 42.
 capture of, 116, 117.
- Port Royal, S.C., settlement of, 42.
 capture of, 254.
- Portsmouth, New Hampshire, settle-
 ment of, 79.
- Portsmouth, Rhode Island, settlement
 of, 77.
- Potomac, Army of the, 251, 252, 261,
 262, 264, 267, 269.
- Powhatan, 55 n. 1.

- Prescott, 160.
 Presidential succession, law regard-
 ing, 301.
 Princeton, battle of, 168.
 Proclamation of war against England,
 209.
 of Lincoln, 248.
 of neutrality, 254.
 of emancipation, 267.
 of amnesty, 288.
 Progress, colonial, 111, 112.
 century of, 342-349.
 Providence, settlement of, 77.
 Public debt, 289.
 Pueblos, 16, 17.
 Pulaski, Count, 176, 179.
 Puritans, 65, 68.
 Putnam, General, 165.
 Quakers, 92-95.
 Quebec, conquest of, 127, 128.
 assault on, 162.
 Queen Anne's War, 113-117.
 Queenston Heights, battle of, 210.
 Raleigh, battle of, 282.
 Raleigh, Sir Walter, 44, 45.
 Reconstruction Act, 290.
 Reform, extension of Civil Service, 304.
 Representative Assembly, First, 57.
 Republicans, 199, 200, 202, 206, 207,
 237, 242, 295, 297, 302.
 Resaca, battle of, 276.
 Resaca de la Palma, battle of, 229.
 Review, Topical, see Topical Review.
 Revolution, the, 148-195.
 causes of, 148-155.
 Port Bill, 156.
 campaign of 1775, 158-162.
 campaigns of 1776, 163-168.
 campaign in New York and New
 Jersey, 165-168.
 Declaration of Independence, 164.
 campaign of 1777, 169-174.
 campaigns of 1778-1780, 175-180.
 aid from France, 175.
 conciliatory proposal from England,
 176.
 campaign in the Carolinas, 181-184.
 final campaign, 185-188.
 close of war and treaty of Paris,
 188, 189.
 Rhode Island, founding of, 68.
 settlement and government of, 76-78.
 religious freedom in, 77, 78.
 kinds of government in, 110.
 capture of, 168.
 trouble in, 227.
 Richmond, capital of Confederacy, 249.
 siege of, 275.
 evacuation of, 282.
 Rich Mountain, battle of, 251.
 Right of search, 205.
 Roanoke Island, colonies on, 45.
 capture of, 267.
 Rosecrans, General, 259, 260, 269, 271.
 Ryswick, treaty of, 116.
 Sabine Cross Roads, battle of, 279.
 St. Augustine, founding of, 40.
 capture of, 267.
 St. Johns, capture of, 162.
 St. Johns River, settled by Huguenots,
 42.
 St. Lawrence River, exploration of,
 41.
 Salem, settlement of, 66.
 witchcraft, 70, 71.
 Sanders Creek, battle of, 182.
 San Diego, settlement of, 40.
 San Domingo, founding of, 31.
 San Salvador, discovery of, 30.
 Santa Anna, General, 231.
 Santa Fé, settlement of, 40.
 Saratoga, battles of, 173 n. 1.
 Savage Station, battle of, 263.
 Savannah, settlement of, 106.
 capture of, 177.
 siege of, 179.
 capture of, 278.
 Saybrook Colony, 73, 74.
 Schuyler, General, 162, 172.
 Scott, General, 232, 233, 249, 252.
 Search, right of, 205.
 Secession, War of, see *Civil War*.
 Secessionists, 244.
 Semmes, Captain, 254, 279.
 Seminole Indians, 219.
 Separatists, 63.
 Shannon, capture of *Chesapeake* by,
 214.
 Shays's Rebellion, 190.
 Shenandoah Valley, Sheridan in, 281.

- Sheridan, General P. H., 273, 275, 276, 281.
- Sherman, General William T., 270-271, 273, 276-278, 280, 282, 283.
- Shiloh, battle of, 258.
- Sigel, General, 274.
- Silver Purchase Law, 302.
- Sioux Indians, trouble with, 303.
war with, 294.
- Slavery, introduced into Virginia, 59, 61.
Civil War, 240-283.
emancipation proclamation, 267.
abolished, 283.
- Slidell, Mason and, 255.
- Smith, Captain John, 55, 56, 62.
- Smith, General Kirby, 259.
- South America, discovery of, 31.
- South Carolina, founding of, 100-105.
kinds of government in, 111.
threatened secession of, 223.
secession of, 244.
readmission of, 291.
- South Dakota admitted into Union, 302.
history of, 318.
- South Mountain, battle of, 264.
- Southwestern States, 319-328.
- Spain, treaty with, 220.
- Spanish discoveries and explorations, 25-40.
- Spottsylvania, attack on, 273, 274.
- Stamp Act, 150-153.
- Starving time, 56.
- States, areas, settlements, and admission of, 372.
Mississippi Valley and Gulf, 306-328.
Northwestern, 306-318.
Pacific, 330-340.
Southwestern, 319-328.
- Steamboat, first, 343.
- Steuben, 176.
- Stillwater, battles of, 173 n. 1.
- "Stonewall" Jackson, 262, 264, 268.
- Stony Point, capture of, 179.
- Stringham, Commodore, 254.
- Stuyvesant, Peter, 84, 140.
- Sub-Treasury Bill, 226.
- Sumter*, Confederate cruiser, 254.
- Sumter, Marion and, 182, 184.
- Swedes, 93.
- Tariff, American system of, 221, 222.
Bill, 223, 224.
new laws in regard to, 302.
reform, 304.
- Taylor, Zachary, campaign of, 229-231.
administration of, 234, 235.
- Telegraph, invention of, 344.
- Tennessee, admitted into Union, 199.
secession of, 249.
capture of, 279.
history of, 321.
- Tenure of Office Bill, 290.
- Ternay, Admiral de, 185.
- Texas, annexation of, 227.
admission of, 228.
secession of, 244.
history of, 326.
- Thomas, General G. H., 271, 277, 278, 281.
- Ticonderoga, 127, 159, 172.
- Tippecanoe, battle of, 207.
- Tobacco, cultivation of, 59.
- Topical review of period of discovery and settlement, 49-52.
of history of colonies, 108-112.
of French wars, 129, 130.
of Revolution, 191-195.
of the Presidents, 238, 239.
of Civil War, 283-287.
of the Mississippi Valley and Gulf States, 328, 329.
of the Pacific States, 340, 341.
- Tories, 162.
- Trent* affair, 255.
- Trenton, battle of, 167, 168.
- Tripoli, war with, 204.
- Tuscaroras, 101.
- Tyler, John, administration of, 226, 227.
- United Colonies of New England, 69.
- United States Bank, 222, 223, 227.
- United States, Constitution of, 351-367.
- Utrecht, treaty of, 117.
- Valley Forge, Washington at, 174.
- Van Buren, Martin, administration of, 225, 226.
- Van Twiller, 139.
- Van Wert, Isaac, 186.
- Vera Cruz, siege of, 232, 233.
- Vermont, founding of, 81, 82.
admitted into Union, 199.

- Verrazano, explorations of, 41.
 Vespuccius, Americus, 34.
 Vicksburg, siege of, 270, 271.*
 Vinland, 23.
 Virginia, founding, settlement, and government of, 53-59.
 charters of, 55-57.
 first representative assembly of, 57.
 Indian troubles in, 58, 59.
 introduction of slaves into, 59.
 Bacon's Rebellion, 60.
 progress of, 60, 61.
 kinds of government in, 109.
 secession of, 249.
 Walloons, 139.
 War of 1812, 208-218.
 causes of, 208, 209.
 proclamation of war, 209.
 military events of 1812, 209, 210.
 naval operations of 1812, 210, 211.
 military events of 1813, 211, 212.
 land and naval operations of 1813, 212-214.
 sea-fights of 1813, 214.
 military operations of 1814, 214-216.
 sea-fights of 1814, 217, 218.
 treaty of peace signed, 218.
 Washington, siege of, 275.
 treaty of, 293.
 Washington admitted into Union, 302.
 history of, 338.
 Washington, George, account of, 121
 n. 1.
 messenger to French, 120, 121.
 elected commander-in-chief of Continental army, 161.
 campaign of 1776, 165-168.
 campaign of 1777, 169-174.
 at Valley Forge, 174.
 Washington (*continued*).
 final campaign of, 188-190.
 resigns his commission, 190.
 elected President, 191.
 administration of, 197-200.
 farewell address of, 200.
 death of, 201.
Wasp, capture of *Frolic* by, 211.
 Wayne, General Anthony, 179.
 Webster, Daniel, 235.
 Wesley, Charles, 106.
 John, 106.
 West Indies, discovery of, 31.
 settlement by Spanish, 35.
 West Virginia, admitted into Union, 283.
 Wethersfield, founding of, 72.
 Whigs, 221, 225, 226, 234.
 Whiskey Insurrection, 200.
 Whitefield, George, 106.
 White Plains, battle of, 166.
 Wilderness, battle of, 273.
 Williams, David, 186.
 Roger, 68, 76-78.
 Wilsons Creek, battle of, 253.
 Winchester, battle of, 275.
 Windsor, founding of, 72.
 Winthrop, John, 66, 67.
 Wisconsin, admitted into Union, 234.
 history of, 314.
 Wolfe, General, 126-128.
 Writers of America, 347.
 Wyoming, admitted into Union, 302.
 history of, 340.
 Wyoming, Pa., massacre at, 177.
 Yamassee Indians, 104.
 Yorktown, siege and surrender of, 188.
 Zuñi Indians, 17, 18.



